

THE
MOHAMMADAN
DYNASTIES

CHRONOLOGICAL AND GENEALOGICAL
TABLES WITH HISTORICAL
INTRODUCTIONS

9506

BY

STANLEY LANE-POOLE

C 254

929.79995

1000*

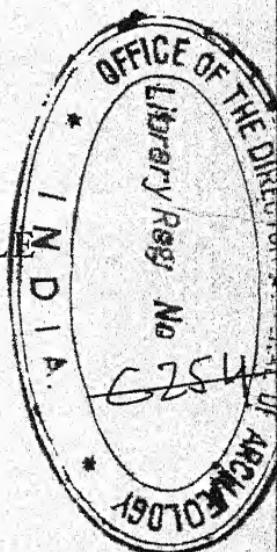
Westminster

ARCHIBALD CONSTABLE AND COMPANY
PUBLISHERS TO THE INDIA OFFICE

14 PARLIAMENT STREET

MDCCXCIV

1894



**CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.**

Acc. No. 95.06

Date 8. 10. 57

Call No. 929.79995

Lan

HERTFORD

PRINTED BY STEPHEN AUSTIN AND SONS.

PREFACE

THE following Tables of Mohammadan Dynasties have grown naturally out of my twenty years' work upon the Arabic coins in the British Museum. In preparing the thirteen volumes of the *Catalogue of Oriental and Indian Coins* I was frequently at a loss for chronological lists. Prinsep's *Useful Tables*, edited by Edward Thomas, was the only trustworthy English authority I could refer to, and it was often at fault. I generally found it necessary to search for correct names and dates in the Arabic historians, and the lists of dynasties prefixed to the descriptions of their coins in my Catalogue were usually the result of my own researches in many Oriental authorities. It has often been suggested to me that a reprint of these lists would be useful to students, and now that the entire Catalogue is published I have collected the tables and genealogical trees in the present volume.

The work is, however, much more than a reprint of these tables. I have not only verified the dates and pedigrees by reference to the Arabic sources and added a number of dynasties which were not represented in the Catalogue of Coins, but I have endeavoured to make the lists more intelligible by prefixing to each a brief historical introduction. These introductions do not attempt to relate the internal history of each dynasty: they merely show its place in relation to other dynasties, and trace its origin, its principal extensions, and its downfall; they seek to define the boundaries of its dominions, and to describe the chief steps in its aggrandisement and in its decline. In the space at my command these facts could only be stated with the utmost brevity, but in the absence of any similar attempt to arrange, define, and explain the relative positions and succession of all the Mohammadan Dynasties in every part of the Muslim world, I hope the manual may be useful to students of history. To the collector of Arabic coins and

Saracenic antiquities I know, from personal experience, that it will be practically indispensable.

The plan I have followed is to arrange the dynasties in geographical order, beginning with Spain, which first threw off the control of the Caliphs of Baghdād. From the extreme west of the kingdoms of Islām I gradually work eastwards, till the end is reached in India and Afghānistān. Certain deviations from the strict geographical order are explained as they arise (see p. 107). Each dynasty has its historical introduction, a chronological list of its princes, and (when necessary) a genealogical

. The years of the Christian era are given as well as those of the Hijra,* and when the latter occur in introductory notices they are distinguished by italic u.

(The Hijra date is of course the more exact, as it is derived from the historians; whilst the date A.D. is merely *the year in which that year began*, and does not necessarily correspond with it for more than a few months. The correspondence is near enough, however, for practical purposes; and a reference to the conversion tables in my *Catalogue of Indian Coins* will render it more precise. When the Hijra year began at the close of the Christian year the following year A.D. is given.

type. Beneath each chronological list is given [in square brackets] the name of the succeeding dynasty.

The two synoptic Tables of the Mohammadan Dynasties, (1) during and (2) after the Caliphate, will give a general idea of their relative positions, and roughly indicate the comparative extent of their dominions. The numismatist will find almost all the coin striking dynasties within the limits of time assigned; and the Oriental student in general may find this map of the Mohammadan Empire instructive in its rough delineation of the relative territorial extent of the various dynasties, its assignment of each dynasty to its proper geographical position in the Muslim world, and its attempt to indicate the interweaving of the several houses and the supplanting of one by another in the various kingdoms and provinces of the East. It is interesting to trace the gradual absorption of the vast empire of the Caliphs from the opposite quarters of Africa and the Oxus provinces. We see how the

Omayyads of Cordova were the first to divide the authority of the head of the religion, and then how the Idrīsids, Aghlabids, Tūlūnids, Ikhshīdids, Fātimids, and many others, destroyed the supremacy of the ‘Abbāsid Caliphs of Baghdād in their Western provinces; and how, meanwhile, the Persian dynasties of Tāhirids, Saffārids, Sāmānids, Ziyārids, and Buwayhids gradually advanced from the Oxus nearer and nearer to the City of Peace, until, when the Buwayhids entered Baghdād on Dec. 19, 945, the Caliph ruled little more than his own palace, and often could not even rule there. Then a fresh change comes over the scene. The Turkish tribes begin to overrun the Mohammadan Empire. The Ghaznawids establish themselves in Afghānistān, and the Seljūks begin their course of conquest, which carries them from Herāt to the Mediterranean, and from Bukhārā to the borders of Egypt. When the Seljūk rule comes to be divided among many branches of the family, and division brings its invariable con-

sequence of weakness, we find several dynasties of Atābegs, or generals of Seljūkian armies, springing up in the more western provinces of Syria and Diyār-Bakr and Al-‘Irāk, whilst the Shāh of Khwārizm founds further East a wide empire, which increases with extraordinary rapidity, and eventually includes the greater part of the countries conquered by the Seljūks as well as that portion of Afghānistān which the Ghaznawids, and after them the Ghōrids, had subdued to their rule. And then comes the greatest change of all. The Mongols come down from their deserts and carry fire and sword over the whole eastern Mohammadan Empire; the Turkish slaves, or Mamlūks, of Saladin found their famous dynasty in Egypt; the Berber houses of Marīn and Ziyān and Hafs are established along the north coast of Africa; and the Christians are rapidly recovering Andalusia from the Moors, who had given it so much of its beauty and renown. And here the epoch is chosen for beginning the second table, which begins at

the Mongol invasion and brings the history down to the present day.

Vertically the tables are divided under the headings of the chief divisions of the Mohammadan Empire. The various dynasties have been placed as nearly as possible, not only under their proper geographical head, but in the proper portion of the space allotted to that head: but the difficulties of arrangement and the necessity of economizing space have brought about a certain number of exceptions. The Turkish and Mongol tribes who wandered in Siberia, Turkistān, Kipchak, etc., are altogether omitted, because no exercise of ingenuity availed to provide a convenient place for them.

Horizontally the tables are divided, though the lines are not ruled through, into centuries, an inch representing one hundred years. The date of the beginning is taken at A.H. 41, the year of the foundation of the Omayyad Caliphate, because the Mohammadan Empire

was scarcely organized until this house came into power, and it would have been very difficult to indicate in any satisfactory manner the tide of Muslim conquest with its flow and ebb. Where space permits the names of a few leading kings and caliphs are inserted in the space allotted to their dynasty, especially when such names are familiar to European students.

In the orthography of Oriental names I have thought it best to be precise and consistent, except in some instances of names which have been adopted into the English language and cannot now be amended. Every letter of the Arabic and Persian alphabet is represented as a rule by one character, as shown in the table on p xix. The final *h*, which has an inflexional use, is omitted, since it serves no purpose in Roman writing: but it must be remembered that every name ending in short *a* (as *Baṣra*, but not *a* as *Şan'ā*) has a final *h* in Arabic. To indicate the elision of the *l* in the article *al* before certain letters, (as *d*, *s*, *r*),

the *l* is printed in italic type: thus 'Abd-al-Rahmān is to be pronounced 'Abd-ar-Rahmān.* The *l* is retained (though not pronounced) because it is so written in Arabic. On the other hand I omit the article altogether *before* a name. All the Caliphs and a multitude of other dynasts have names with the prefixed *al*, and a considerable saving of space and some added clearness is gained by omitting it. To show, however, that the article is to be used in the original I retain the hyphen: thus -Hākim stands for Al-Hākim. The only sign not generally employed by Orientalists is the Greek colon (:) which I use to denote the quiescent *hamza* in the middle of a word: as -Ma:mūn, where there is a catch in the breath between the *a* and *m*.

To students who are not Orientalists, and who wish to be accurate without elaboration in the orthography of

* If the inflexion of the Arabic is to be reproduced the name would be 'Abdu-r-Rahmān, and would require to be modified in accordance with its government in the sentence; but this would be carrying accuracy to an extreme of pedantry.

Eastern names, I would recommend the omission of all the diacritical points and the prefixed hyphen, and the assimilation of the italic *l* to the letter which follows it: thus for popular purposes one might write Abd-ar-Rahman instead of 'Abd-al-Rahmān, Hakim instead of Al-Hākim. No system of transliteration can possibly represent the pronunciation of all parts of the Mohammadan world: what would suit the accent of Fez would not fit the mouth of an Egyptian, still less of a Panjābi. One simple suggestion may, however, be made. Whereas for consistency I have adopted the *a* throughout to represent the Arabic vowel *fath*, an *e* may advantageously be substituted for the *a* in spelling Egyptian or Algerian names, where *el* is nearer the native pronunciation than *al*, and Shems-ed-din than Shams-al-dīn.

The European reader when confronted with the long string of names and titles commonly affected by Oriental potentates is naturally puzzled to select the name by which a Mohammadan ruler may be called 'for short.'

In the early days of Isālm a great man was content to be known by a single or at most a double name. There would be his proper name, or what we should call his 'Christian name,' such as Mohammad, Ahmād, 'Omar; and to this would sometimes be added a patronymic (or rather hyronymic), as Abū-l-Hasan, 'the father of Hasan,' or the name of his father as b. Tūlūn or ibn Tūlūn, 'the son of Tūlūn.' The patronymics beginning with *Abū* may always be omitted (except Abū-Bakr) in shortening the name, and so may the sonship prefixed by the abbreviation *b.* They are necessary in the dynastic lists for purposes of identification, but Ahmād the Tūlūnid is a sufficient designation for Ahmād b. Tūlūn, and the Ziyānid Mūsā ı is adequately defined without his patronymic Abū-Hammū.

But very soon other titles of an honorific or theocratic character began to be added. Such epithets (*lakab*) as Nūr-al-dīn, 'Light of the Faith,' Nāṣir-al-dīn, 'Succourer of the Faith,' Sayf-al-dīn, 'Sword

of the Faith,' were prefixed to the proper name; and adjectives or participles such as *Al-Manṣūr* 'the victorious,' *Al-Sa'īd* 'the Fortunate,' *Al-Rashīd* 'the Orthodox,' were appended to the title *Khalīfa* (caliph) or *Malik* (king). Thus we find the caliph *Hārūn al-Rashīd*, 'the Orthodox,' or 'rightly-directed,' caliph Aaron; and Saladin's full title was *Al-Malik Al-Nāṣir Salāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf b. Ayyūb*, 'The Victorious* King, Redresser of the Faith, Joseph son of Job.' In the case of compound names such as these, the owner is generally called either by the participial title *Al-Nāṣir*, *Al-Manṣūr*, *Al-Rashīd*, etc., or by the *lakab* with the termination *al-dīn* ('of the Faith') or *al-dawla* ('of the State'), etc. Thus the brother of Saladin is known both as *Al-Ādil*, 'the Just [King]' and as *Sayf-al-dīn*, 'Sword of the Faith.' On the other hand the *Atābegs* of *Al-Moṣil* are generally cited by both

* Lit. 'Helping': one who helps the religion of Islām by his victories.

the proper name and the epithet, as 'Imād-al-dīn Zangi, 'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd; though the epithet by itself is sufficient. As a general rule the first name given in the chronological lists (omitting the patronymic Abū-such an one) may be used to designate the ruler, to the exclusion of the rest. When there are several similar titles it is better to add the proper name: for instance there are eight Al-Manṣūrs among the Mamlük Sultāns, and it is necessary to distinguish them as Al-Manṣūr Kalā'ün, Al-Manṣūr Lājīn, etc.

To give a list of the authorities I have used in compiling the lists of dynasties and historical notices would involve publishing a catalogue of an Orientalist's library. I have referred to all the leading Arabic historians, consulted special histories, and derived considerable help from articles in the Asiatic and numismatic journals. Where I am specially indebted to a particular author I refer to his work in a footnote. The coins, however, are the backbone of the book and the

historian's surest documents, and upon them I have relied throughout.

In a work abounding in names and figures it would be strange if misprints and mistakes did not occur. I shall be grateful to any scholar who will convict me of error; for those who 'serve tables' know the danger and annoyance of even slight inaccuracy.

S. L.-P.

THE ATHENÆUM,
1st October, 1893.

600

MELAKA

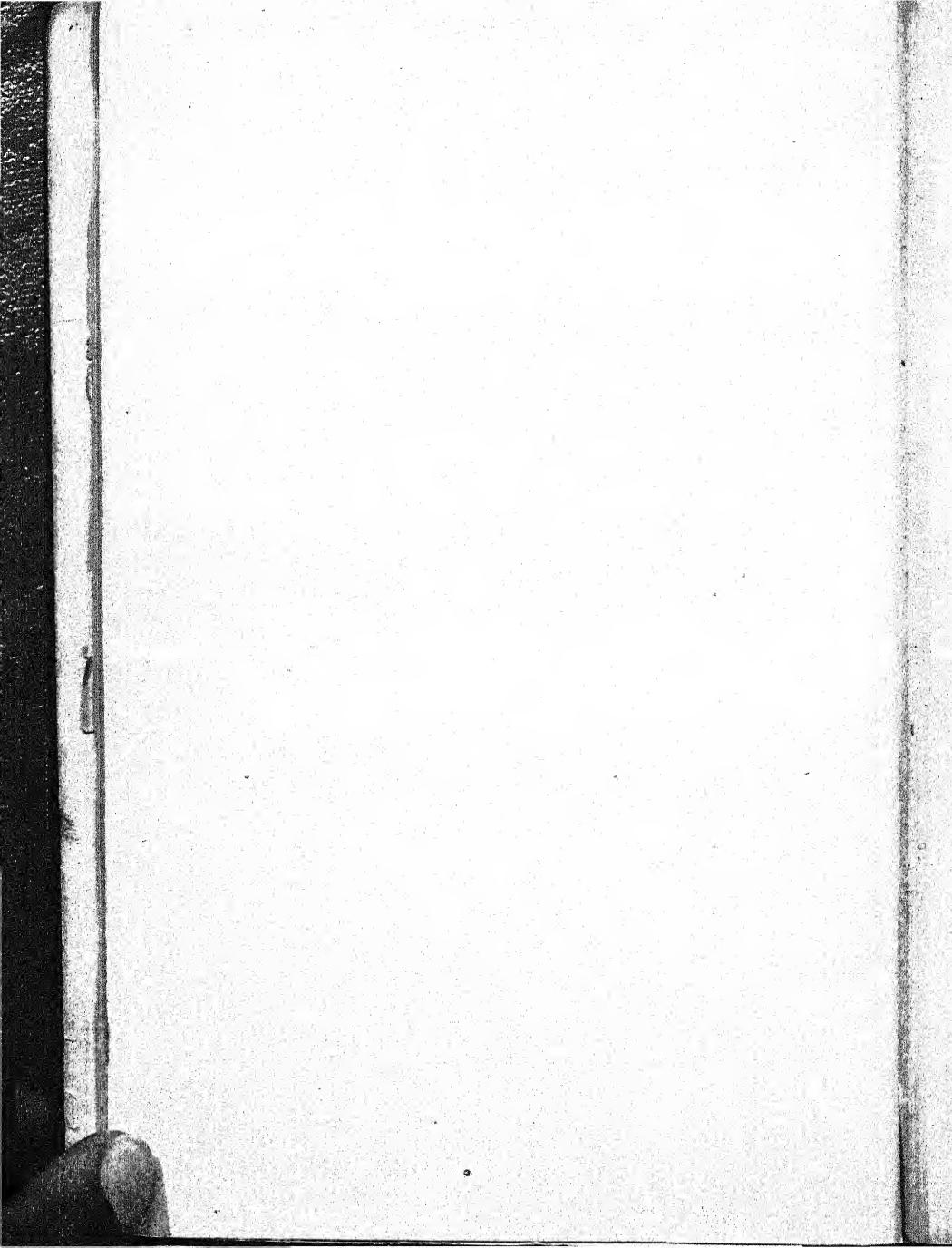


TABLE OF TRANSLITERATION

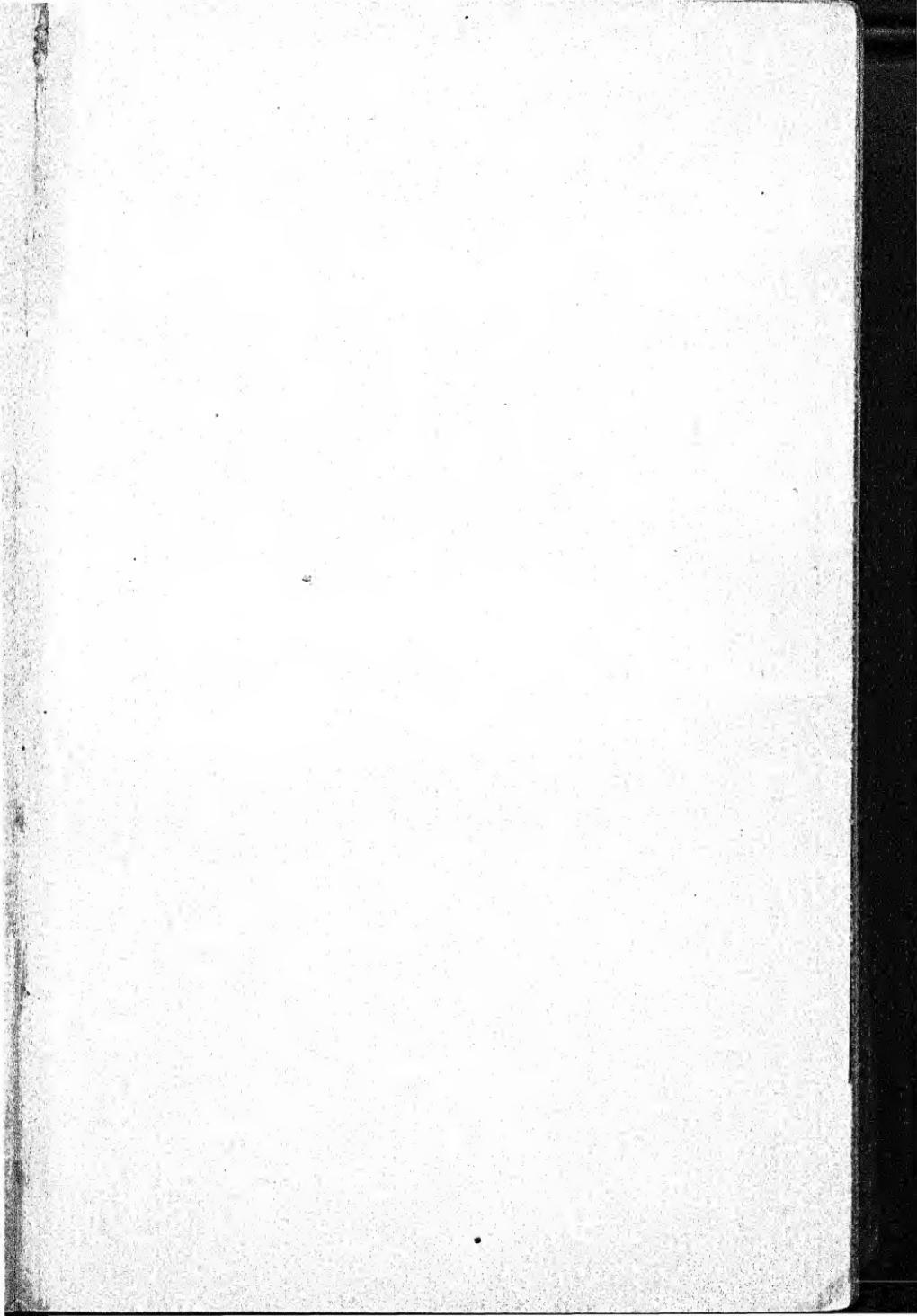
أ	.	ض	d
ب	b	ط	t̪
پ	p	ظ	z
ت	t	ع	'
ٿ	th	غ	gh
ج	j	ف	f
چ	ch	ق	k̪
ح	h	ڪ	k
خ	kh	ڱ	g
د	d	ل	l
ڏ	dh	م	m
ر	r	ن	n
ڙ	z	ڦ	h
س	s	و	w
ش	sh	ي	y
ص	š		

VOWELS

ا	a (rarely e)	ا	ā	و	aw (rarely o)
ء	u (rarely o)	ء	ū	ئ	ay
ي	i	ئ	ī		

CORRIGENDA

- Page 46 line 3 for Hammūdīd read Hammādīd
,, 71 lines 2, 5 for Ḳayruwān read Ḳayrawān
,, 78 for [Tatars] read [Mongols]
,, 79 line 7 from bottom, for Tughtakīn read Tughtigīn
,, 157, 172 for FĀRIS read FĀRS
,, 168 heading B. for 712, 1312, read 811, 1408



S
AH.
700
800
900
1000
1100
1200
1300
1311
MELAC

CONTENTS

PREFACE	v
<i>Table of Dynasties during the Caliphate</i>	<i>face xviii</i>
<i>Table of Dynasties after the Caliphate</i>	<i>face xx</i>
THE CALIPHES SEC. VII—XIII	1
Orthodox	9
Omayyads	9
<i>Table of Connexion of lines of Caliphs</i>	10
<i>Genealogy of Omayyads</i>	11
'Abbāsids	12
<i>Genealogy of 'Abbāsids</i>	14
SPAIN SEC. VIII—XV	16
Omayyads of Cordova	21
<i>Genealogy</i>	22
MINOR SPANISH DYNASTIES (REYES DE TAIFAS)	23
Hammūdids (Malaga)	23
<i>Genealogy</i>	24

Hammūdids (Algeciras)	25	
'Abbādids (Seville)	25	
Zayrids (Granada)	25	
Jahwarids (Cordova)	25	
Dhū- <i>I</i> -Nūnids (Toledo)	25	
'Āmirids (Valencia)	26	
Tojibids (Zaragoza)	26	
Hūdids (Zaragoza)	26	
Denia, Kings of	26	
Naṣrids (Granada)	28	
<i>Genealogy</i>	29	
NORTH AFRICA SEC. VIII—XIX		31
Idrīsids (Morocco)	35	
Aghlabids (Tunis)	36	
<i>Genealogy</i>	38	
Zayrids (Tunis)	40	
Hammādids (Algiers)	40	
Almoravides (Morocco, Algiers, Spain)	41	
<i>Genealogy</i>	44	
Almohades (North Africa, Spain)	45	
<i>Genealogy</i>	48	
Hafṣids (Tunis)	49	
<i>Genealogy</i>	52	
Ziyāndids (Algiers)	51	
<i>Genealogy</i>	54	
Corsairs	55	
Marīnids (Morocco)	57	
<i>Genealogy</i>	59	
Sharīfs (Morocco)	60	
<i>Genealogy</i>	62	

CONTENTS

xxiii

EGYPT AND SYRIA	S.E.C. IX—XIX	
Tūlūnids	65	
Ikhshidids	68	
Fātimids	69	
<i>Genealogy</i>	70	
Ayyūbids	72	
<i>Genealogy</i>	74	
Mamlūks	76 <i>face</i>	
<i>Genealogy</i>	80	
Khedives	82	
<i>Genealogy</i>	84	
	85	
ARABIA FELIX (YAMAN)	S.E.C. IX—XVIII	87
Ziyādids (Zabīd)	90	
Ya'furids (Ṣan'ā and Janad)	91	
Najāhids (Zabīd)	92	
<i>Genealogy</i>	93	
Ṣulayhids (Ṣan'ā)	94	
<i>Genealogy</i>	94	
Hamdānids (Ṣan'ā)	95	
Mahdids (Zabīd)	96	
Zuray'ids ('Aden)	97	
<i>Genealogy</i>	97	
Ayyūbids	98	
Rasūlids	99	
<i>Genealogy</i>	100	
Tāhirids	101	
<i>Genealogy</i>	101	
Rassid Imāms (Sa'da)	102	
<i>Genealogy</i>	102	
Imāms of Ṣan'ā	103	

SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA (Arab Period)	S.E.C. X—XII	105
<i>Classification of Asiatic Dynasties</i>		107
<i>Arab tribes</i>		109
Hamdānids (-Mōšil, Aleppo)		111
<i>Genealogy</i>		113
Mirdāsids (Aleppo)		114
<i>Genealogy</i>		115
‘Okaylids (-Mōšil, etc.)		116
<i>Genealogy</i>	face	116
Marwānids (Diyār-Bakr)		118
<i>Genealogy</i>		118
Mazyadids (-Hilla)		119
<i>Genealogy</i>		120
PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA (Persian Period)	S.E.C. IX—XI	121
Dulafids (Kurdistān)		125
<i>Genealogy</i>		125
Sājids (Adharbījān)		126
‘Alids (Tabaristān)		127
Tāhirids (Khurāsān)		128
<i>Genealogy</i>		128
Saffārids (Persia)		129
Sāmānid(s) (Transoxiana and Persia)		131
<i>Genealogy</i>		133
Īlak Khāns (Turkistān)		134
Ziyārids (Jorjān)		136
<i>Genealogy</i>		137
Hasanwayhids (Kurdistān)		138
Buwayhids (S. Persia and -Irāk)		139
<i>Geographical distribution</i>		143
<i>Genealogy</i>		144
Kākwayhids (Kurdistān)		145
<i>Genealogy</i>		145

CONTENTS

xxv

THE SELJŪKS (Western Asia)	SÆC. XI—XII	147
<i>Genealogy</i>		face 152
Great Seljūks		153
Seljūks of Kirmān		153
Seljūks of Syria		154
Seljūks of -Irāk and Kurdistān		154
Seljūks of -Rūm (Asia Minor)		155
Dānishmandids (Asia Minor)		156
THE ATĀBEGS (Seljūk Officers)	SÆC. XII—XIII	157
Bürids (Damascus)		161
<i>Genealogy</i>		161
Zangids (Mesopotamia and Syria)		162
<i>Genealogy</i>		164
Begtinginids (Arbela)		165
Ortuķids (Diyār-Bakr)		166
<i>Genealogy</i>		169
Armenia, Shāhs		170
<i>Genealogy</i>		170
Adharbijān, Atābegs.		171
<i>Genealogy</i>		171
Salgharids (Fārs)		172
<i>Genealogy</i>		173
Hazāraspids (Lūristān)		174
<i>Genealogy</i>		175
Khwārizm Shāhs		176
<i>Genealogy</i>		178
Ḵutlugh Khāns (Kirmān)		179
<i>Genealogy</i>		180

THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪKS IN THE WEST

S.EC. XIV—XIX	181
Amīrs of Asia Minor	<i>face</i> 184
‘Othmānlī Sultāns	186
<i>Table of growth and decay of the Ottoman Empire</i>	190
<i>Genealogy</i>	196
THE MONGOLS S.EC. XIII—XVIII	199
<i>Sketch-tree of Mongol Dynasties</i>	206
Great Khāns	207
Ogotāy’s line	207
Tulūy’s line	211
<i>Genealogy of Great Khāns</i>	<i>face</i> 216
Mongols of Persia	217
<i>Genealogy</i>	221
Golden Horde	222
Bātū’s line (Blue Horde)	224
Orda’s line (White Horde)	226
Rival Families	229
<i>Table</i>	232
Khāns of the Krim (Crimea)	233
Shaybān’s line (Czars of Tiumen, etc.)	238
<i>Genealogy of the House of Jājī</i>	<i>face</i> 240
Chagatāy Khāns (Transoxiana)	241
<i>Genealogy</i>	<i>face</i> 242
PERSIA S.EC. XIV—XIX	243
Jalayts (-‘Irāk, etc.)	246
<i>Genealogy</i>	248
Mużaffaridz (Fārs, etc.)	249
<i>Genealogy</i>	250

Sarbadārīds (Khurāsān)	251
Karts (Herāt)	252
<i>Genealogy</i>	252
Ḳarā-Ḳuyunlī (Black Sheep Turkomāns)	253
Āk-Ḳuyunlī (White Sheep Turkomāns)	254
Shāhs of Persia	255
Ṣafavids	259
Afghāns	259
Afshārids	259
Zands	260
Kājārs	260
<i>Genealogies</i>	261-2
 TRANSOXIANA SÆC. XIV-XIX	263
Timūrids	265
<i>Table of the descendants of Timūr</i>	face 268
<i>Table of connexion of the Transoxiane Khānates</i>	269
Shaybānidz	270
Sub-dynasties of Bukhārā and Samarkand	272
<i>Genealogy</i>	273
Jānidz	274
<i>Genealogy</i>	276
Mangitz	277
Khiva, Khāns of	278
Khoḳand, Khāns of	280
 INDIA AND AFGHĀNISTĀN SÆC. X-XIX	281
Ghaznawids (Afghānistān and Panjāb)	285
<i>Genealogy</i>	290
Ghōrids (Afghānistān, Hindūstān)	291
<i>Genealogy</i>	face 294

Sultāns of Dehlī (Hindūstān)	295
Slave Kings	299
Khāljīs	299
Taghlaqīds	300
Sayyids	300
Lōdīs	300
Afghāns	300
<i>Genealogies</i>	301-3
 PROVINCIAL DYNASTIES OF INDIA	304
Governors and Kings of Bengal	305
Sharķī Kings of Jaunpūr	309
Kings of Mālwā	310
Kings of Gujarāt	312
<i>Genealogy</i>	314
Kings of Khāndesh	315
Bahmanīs (Kulbarga, etc.)	316
<i>Genealogy</i>	319
‘Imād Shāhs (Berār)	320
Nīzām Shāhs (Ahmadnagar)	320
Barīd Shāhs (Bīdar)	321
‘Ādil Shāhs (Bijāpūr)	321
Kutb Shāhs (Golkonda)	321
Mogul Emperors of Hindūstān	322
<i>Genealogy</i>	329
Amīrs of Afghānistān	330
Durrānīs	334
Bārakzais	334
<i>Genealogy</i>	335
Index to Rulers	337

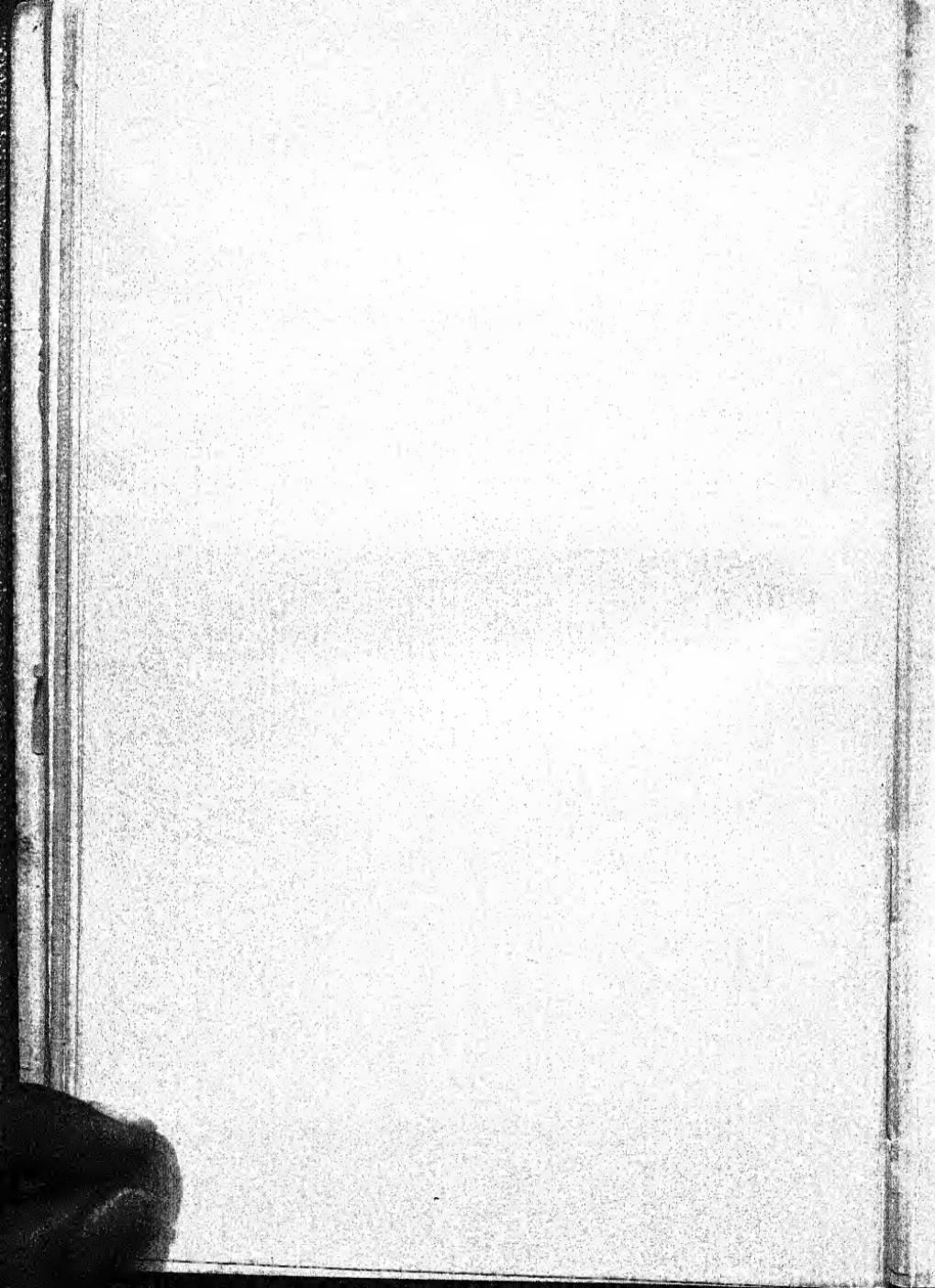
I. THE CALIPHS

SÆC. VII—XIII

1. ORTHODOX

2. OMAYYADS

3. 'ABBĀSIDS



I. THE CALIPHS

SÆC. VII—XIII

ON the death of the Prophet Moḥammad in A.D. 632, in the eleventh year after his Flight (*Hijra*, 622) from Mecca to Medina, his father-in-law Abū-Bakr was elected head of the Muslims, with the title of *Khalifa* or Caliph ('successor'). Three other Caliphs, 'Omar, 'Othmān, and 'Alī, were similarly elected in turn, without founding dynasties, and these first four successors are known as the Orthodox Caliphs (*Al-Khulafā Al-Rāshidūn*). On the murder of 'Alī in 661 (A.H. 40), Moāwiya, a descendant of Omayya of the Prophet's tribe of the Kuraysh, assumed the Caliphate, and founded the dynasty of the *Omayyad Caliphs*, fourteen in number, whose capital was Damascus. In 750 (132) this dynasty was supplanted (except in Spain) by that of the *'Abbāsid Caliphs*, numbering thirty-seven, descended from 'Abbās, an uncle of the Prophet, and having Baghdād (founded 762, 145) as their capital. The *'Abbāsid Caliphate* at Baghdād was exterminated by the Mongol Hūlāgū in 1258 (656). A line of their descendants, the *'Abbāsid Caliphs of Egypt*, held a shadowy spiritual dignity

at Cairo, until the last of the house was carried to Constantinople by the Ottoman Sultān Salīm I., after the conquest of Egypt in 1517, and surrendered his title of Caliph to the conqueror.

At the accession of the first Caliph, Abū-Bakr, the rule of Islām comprised no territory outside Arabia; but during his brief reign of two years the tide of Moḥammadan conquest had already begun to swell. In 633 (12) the Battle of the Chains, followed by other victories, admitted the Muslims into Chaldaea (-Irāk -'Arabī), and gave them the city of -Hira. In 634 (13) the Battle of the Yarmuk opened Syria to their arms; Damascus fell in 635 (14); Emesa, Antioch, and Jerusalem in 636; and the conquest of Caesarea completed the subjugation of Syria in 638 (17). Meanwhile the victory of Kādisiyya in 635 (14) was followed by the conquest of Madā'in (Seleucia-Ctesiphon), the old double capital of Chaldaea, 637 (16); Mesopotamia was subdued, and the cities of -Basra and -Kūfa founded; and Khuzistān and Tustar were annexed in 638-40. The decisive Battle of Nahawand in 642 (21) put an end to the Sāsānid dynasty, and gave all Persia to the Muslims. By 661 (41) they were at Herāt, and soon carried their arms throughout Afghānistān and as far as the Indus, where they established a government in

Sind. In 674 (54) they occupied Bukhārā, and two years later Samarkand, but these early raids in Transoxiana were not converted into settled conquests until 711 (93). On the East the Caliphate had reached its utmost limits in little more than forty years after the Muslims first led a campaign outside Arabia.

On the West their progress was slower. In 641 (20) Egypt was conquered, and by 647 (26) the Barbary coast was overrun up to the gates of Roman Carthage; but the wild Berber population was more difficult to subdue than the luxurious subjects of the Sāsānids of Persia or the Greeks of Syria and Egypt. Kāyrawān was founded as the African capital in 670 (50); Carthage fell in 693 (74), and the Arabs pushed their arms as far as the Atlantic. From Tangier they crossed into Spain in 710 (91), and the conquest of the Gothic kingdom was complete on the fall of Toledo in 712. Southern France was overrun in 725, and in spite of Charles the Hammer's victory near Tours in 732 (114), the Muslims continued to hold Narbonne and to ravage Burgundy and the Dauphiné. Thus in the West the Caliphate attained its widest extent within a century after its commencement.

To the North, the Greeks retained Anatolia, which

never belonged to the Caliphate, but the Muslims invaded Armenia, and reached Erzerûm about 700. Cyprus had been annexed as early as 649 (28), and Constantinople was several times besieged from 670 (50) onwards.

Thus the empire of the Caliphs at its widest extended from the Atlantic to the Indus, and from the Caspian to the cataracts of the Nile. So vast a dominion could not long be held together. The first step towards its disintegration began in Spain, where 'Abd-al-Rahmān, a member of the suppressed Omayyad family, was acknowledged as an independent sovereign in 755 (138), and the 'Abbāsid Caliphate was renounced for ever. Thirty years later Idrīs, a great-grandson of the Caliph 'Alī, and therefore equally at variance with 'Abbāsids and Omayyads, founded an 'Alid dynasty in Morocco, with Tūdgha for its capital, 788 (172). The rest of the North African coast was practically lost to the Caliphate when the Aghlabid governor established his authority at Kairawān in 800 (184). In the following century, Egypt, together with Syria, attained independence under the rule of Ibn-Tūlūn, by the year 877 (264). It is true that after the collapse of the Tūlūnids, governors were again appointed over Syria and Egypt by the 'Abbāsid Caliphs for thirty years; but in 934 (323) -Ikhshid founded

his dynasty, and thenceforward no country west of the Euphrates ever recognized the temporal authority of the Caliphs of Baghdād, though their spiritual title was generally acknowledged on the coins and in the public prayer (*khuṭba*), except in Spain and Morocco.

In the East, the disintegration of the 'Abbāsid empire proceeded with equal rapidity. The famous general of -Ma'mūn, Tāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn, on being appointed Viceroy of the East in 819 (204), became to most intents independent; and his house, and the succeeding dynasties of the Saffārids, Sāmānid, and Ghaznawids, whilst admitting the spiritual lordship of the Caliphs, reserved to themselves all the power and wealth of the eastern provinces of Persia and Transoxiana. From the middle of the ninth century the 'Abbāsids had fallen more and more under the baneful influence of mercenary Turkish bodyguards and servile *maires du palais*; and the absorption of the whole of their remaining territory by the Buwayhids, who occupied even the 'City of Peace,' Baghdād itself, in 945 (334), was little more than a change in their alien tyrants. From this date the Caliphs merely held a court, but governed no empire, until their extinction by the Mongols in 1258 (656). Occasionally, however, as in the Caliphate of -Nāṣir, they

extended their authority outside the palace walls, and even ruled the whole province of Arabian 'Irāk (Chaldaea).

In classifying the dynasties which thus absorbed the 'Abbāsid empire, a geographical system is both natural and convenient. Beginning with the earliest secession, Spain, the dynasties of Andalusia and North Africa are placed first; those of Egypt and Syria come next; then follow the Persian and Transoxine dynasties; whilst those of India, which spread over a dominion never subdued to the Caliphate, are placed last. In dealing with the Persian and Syrian sections, however, the geographical arrangement is necessarily modified, since the wide sweep of the Seljūks and Mongols temporarily obliterated the older divisions and formed fresh starting points in the dynastic history. The relative positions, both geographical and chronological, of the various dynasties are shown in the table prefixed to the volume.

THE CALIPHS

9

A.H.	1. ORTHODOX CALIPHS	A.D.
11—40		632—661
11	Abū-Bakr	632
13	‘Omar	634
23	‘Othmān	644
35	‘Alī	656
—40		—661

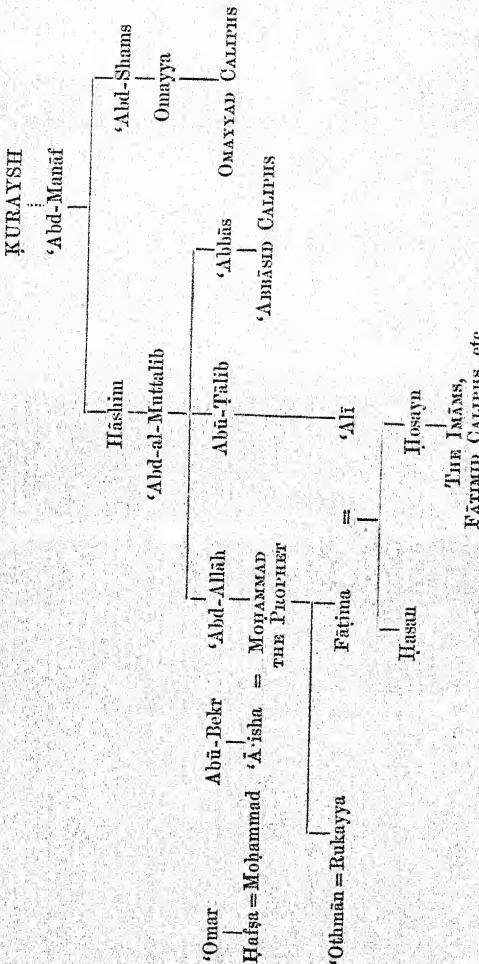
[*Succeeded by Omayyads.*]

A.H.	2. OMAYYAD CALIPHS	A.H.
41—132		661—750
41	Mo‘āwiya I	661
60	Yazid I	680
64	Mo‘āwiya II	683
64	Marwān I	683
65	‘Abd-al-Malik	685
86	-Walid	705
96	Sulaymān	715
99	‘Omar	717
101	Yazid II	720
105	Hishām	724
125	-Walid II	743
126	Yazid III	744
126	Ibrāhīm	744
127	Marwān II	744
—132		—750

[*Abbāsids; Omayyads of Cordova*]

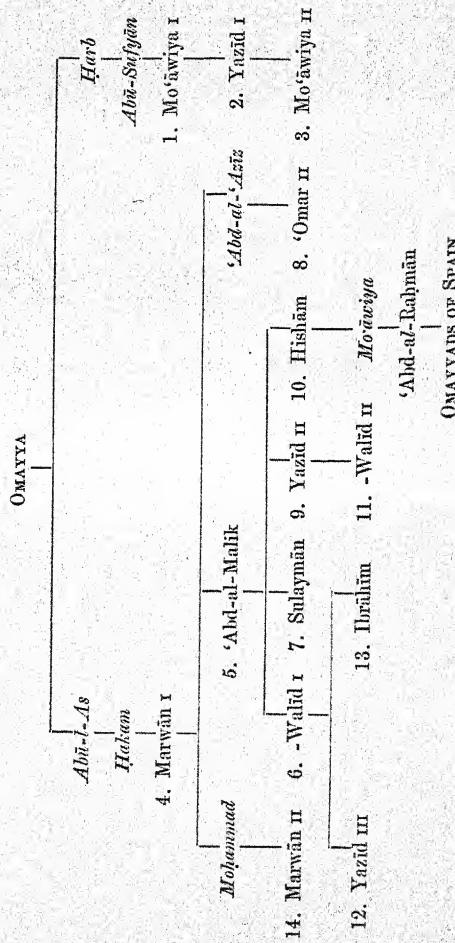
THE CALIFHS

CONNEXION OF THE LINES OF CALIPHS



OMAYYADS

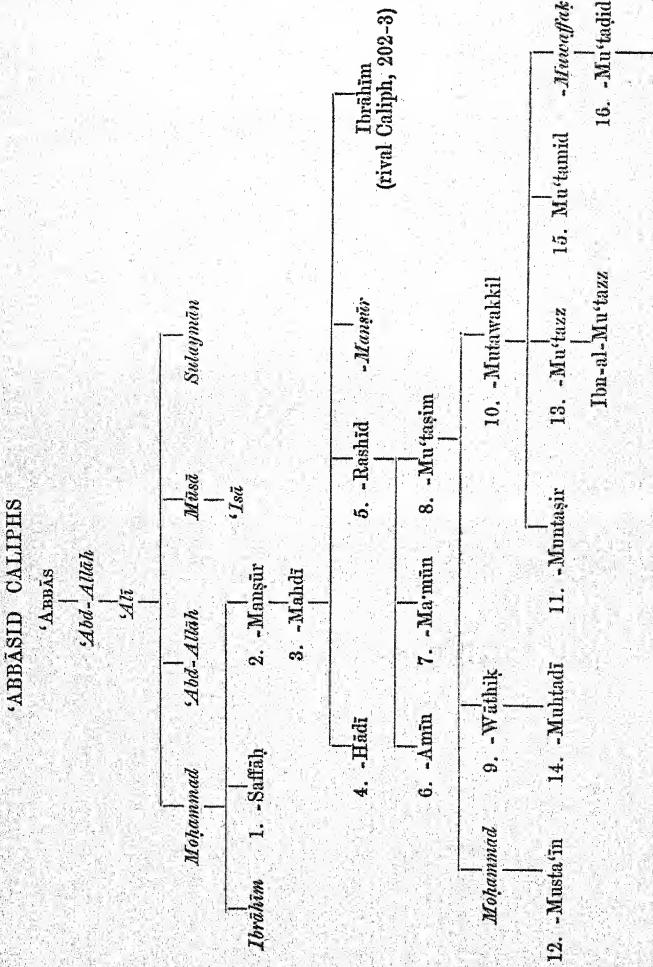
OMAYYAD CALIPHS



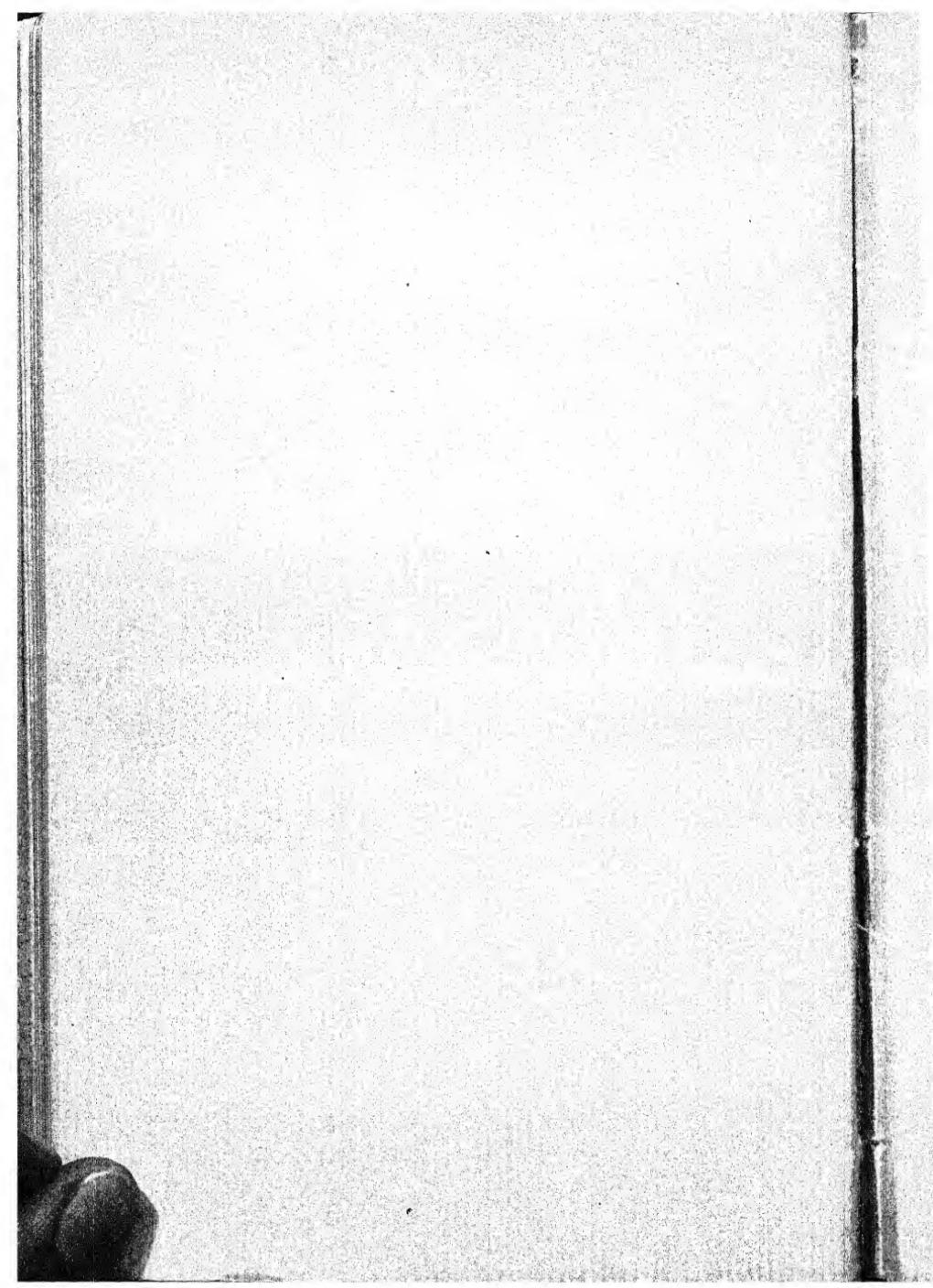
A.H.			A.D.
132—656	3. 'ABBĀSID CALIPHS		750—1258
132	-Saffāḥ .	.	750
136	-Mānṣūr .	.	754
158	-Māhdī .	.	775
169	-Hādī .	.	785
170	-Rashīd .	.	786
193	-Amin .	.	809
198	-Ma'mūn .	.	813
218	-Mu'taşim .	.	823
227	-Wāthīk .	.	842
232	-Mutawakkil .	.	847
247	-Muntaşir .	.	861
248	-Musta'in .	.	862
251	-Mu'tazz .	.	866
255	-Muhtadī .	.	869
256	-Mu'tamid .	.	870
279	-Mu'tadid .	.	892
289	-Muktafi .	.	902
295	-Muktađir .	.	908
320	-Kāhir .	.	932
322	-Rādī .	.	934
329	-Muttaķī .	.	940
333	-Mustakfi .	.	944
334	-Muṭī' .	.	946
363	-Tā'i' .	.	974
381	-Kādir .	.	991
422	-Kā'im .	.	1031
467	-Muktadī .	.	1075
487	-Musta'z̄hir .	.	1094
512	-Mustarshid .	.	1118
529	-Rāshid .	.	1135

530	-Muqtāfi	.	.	.	.	.	1136
555	-Mustanjid	.	.	.	.	.	1160
566	-Mustadī	.	.	.	.	.	1170
575	-Nāṣir	.	.	.	.	.	1180
622	-Zāhir	.	.	.	.	.	1225
623	-Mustanṣir	.	.	.	.	.	1226
640	-Musta'sim	.	.	.	.	.	1242
—656							—1258

[*Idrisids, Aghlabids, Tūlānids, Tāhirids, Ṣaffārids, Buwayhids,
Hamdānids, Ghaznawids.*]]



17. -Muktafi		18. -Muktadir		19. -Kahir
22. -Mustakfi	20. -Rādi	21. -Muftaki		23. -Mu'ī*
		25. -Kādir		24. -Tā'i*
		26. -Kā'im		
				<i>Jāhirat-al-dīn</i>
		27. -Muktadī		
		28. -Mustaqīl		
29. -Mustarshid	31. -Muṣṭafī			
30. -Rashid	32. -Mustanjid			
		33. -Mustaqī		
		34. -Nasir		
		35. -Zāhir		
		36. -Mustansir		-Mustansir*
		37. -Musta'sim		'Abbasid Caliph of Egypt



II. SPAIN

SÆC. VIII—XV

4. OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA

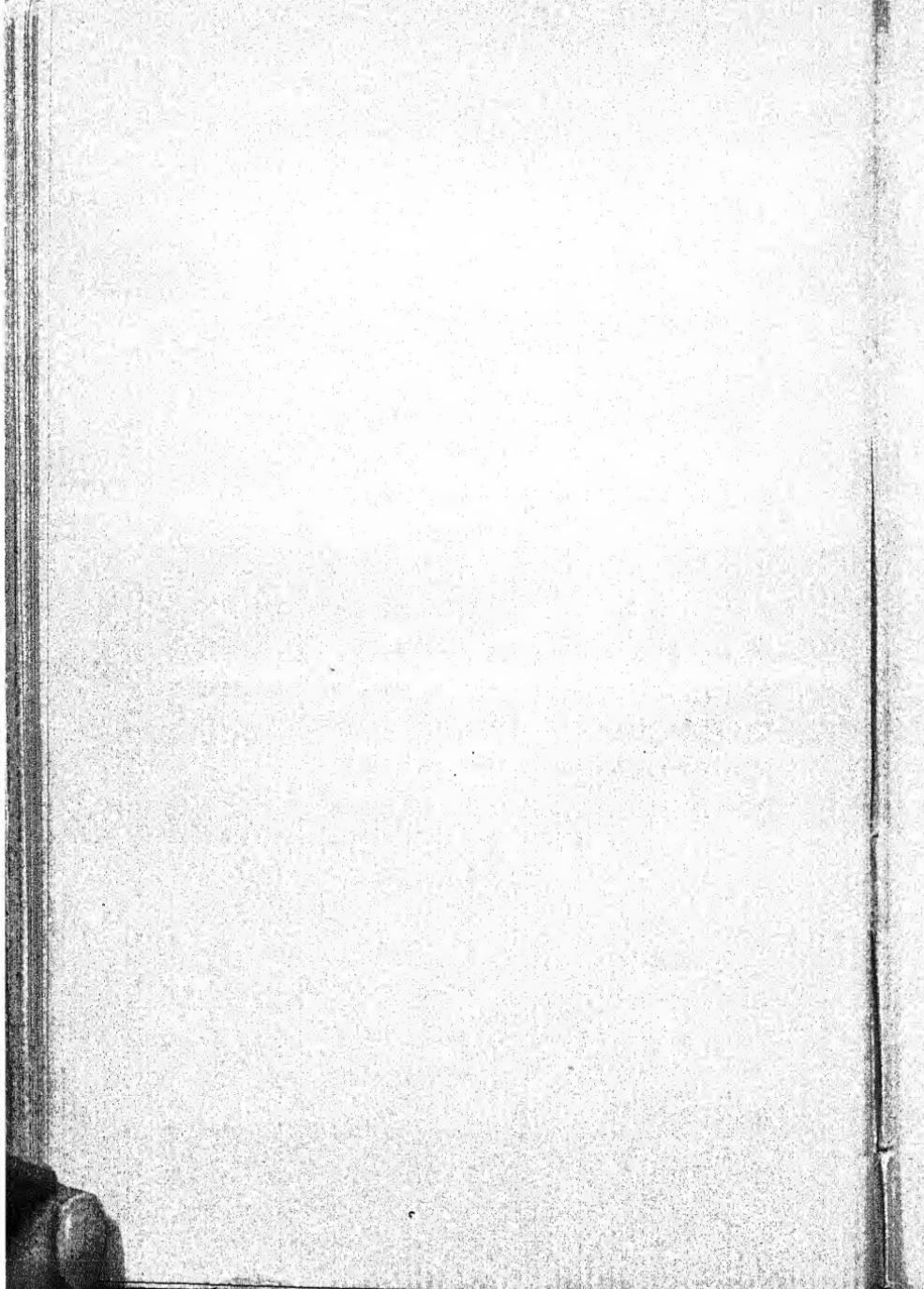
MINOR DYNASTIES

5. HAMMŪDIDS (MALAGA)
6. HAMMŪDIDS (ALGECIRAS)
7. 'ABBĀDIDS (SEVILLE)
8. ZAYRIDIS (GRANADA)
9. JAHWARIDS (CORDOVA)
10. DHU-Z-NŪNIDS (TOLEDO)
11. 'ĀMIRIDS (VALENCIA)
12. TOJIBIDS AND HŪDIDS (ZARAGOZA)
13. KINGS OF DENIA

ALMORAVIDES (*See NORTH AFRICA*)

ALMOHADES " " "

14. NASRIDES (GRANADA)



II. SPAIN

SÆC. VIII—XV

Spain was conquered by the Muslims in 710–12 (91–3), and ruled, like the other provinces of the Mohammadan empire, by a series of governors appointed by the Omayyad Caliphs, until 756 (138). Among the few members of the Omayyad family who escaped from the general massacre which signalized the accession of the 'Abbāsids was 'Abd-al-Rahmān, a grandson of Hishām, the tenth Omayyad Caliph. After some years of wandering, he took advantage of the disordered state of Spain, which was divided by the jealousies of the Berbers and the various Arab tribes, to offer himself as king. He met with an encouraging response, and landed in Andulasia at the close of 755. In the following year (138) he received the homage of most of Mohammadan Spain, and successfully repelled an invasion of 'Abbāsid troops. His successors maintained themselves on the throne of Cordova with varying success against the encroachments of the Christians of the north, and the insurrections of the many factions among their own

subjects, for two centuries and a half. They contented themselves with the titles of *Amīr* and *Sultān*, until 'Abd-al-Rahmān III adopted that of Caliph in 929 (317). He was the greatest of the line, and not only exercised absolute sway over his subjects and kept the Christian kings of Leon, Castile and Navarre in check, but warded off the chief danger of Moorish Spain, invasion from Africa, and maintained his authority on the Mediterranean by powerful fleets. After his death, no great Omayyad carried on his work, but the famous minister and general, Almanzor (Al-Mansūr), preserved the unity of the kingdom. After this, at the beginning of the eleventh century, Moorish Spain became a prey to factions and adventurers, and a number of petty dynasties arose, who are known in Spanish history as the *Reyes de Taifas* or Party Kings. Most of these were absorbed by the most distinguished of their number, the cultured house of the 'Abbādids of Seville, who were the leaders of the Spanish Moors against the encroachments of the Christians, until they were forced to summon the *Almoravides* to their aid, and discovered that they had invited a master instead of an ally.

A.H.		A.D.
138—422	4. OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA	756—1031
138	‘Abd-al-Rahmān I	756
172	Hishām I	788
180	-Hakam I	796
206	‘Abd-al-Rahmān II	822
238	Mohammad I	852
273	-Mundhir	886
275	‘Abd-Allāh	888
300	‘Abd-al-Rahmān III. (Al-Khalifa Al-Nāṣir)	912
350	-Hakam II -Mustansīr	961
366	Hishām II -Mu‘ayyad	976
399	Mohammad II -Mahdī	1009
400	Sulaymān -Musta‘īn	1009
400	Mohammad II (again)	1010
400	Hishām II (again)	1010
403	Sulaymān (again)	1013
407	‘Alī b. Hammūd *	1016
408	‘Abd-al-Rahmān IV -Murtadā	1018
408	-Kāsim b. Hammūd	1018
412	Yahyā b. ‘Alī	1021
413	-Kāsim (again)	1022
414	‘Abd-al-Rahmān V -Mustazhir	1023
414	Mohammad III -Mustakfī	1024
416	Yahyā (again)	1025
418	Hishām III -Mu‘tadd	1027
—422		—1031

[*Minor Dynasties*]

* Of the dynasty of Hammūdis. See Table 5.

OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA

*Hishām, 10th Omayyad Caliph**Moāwiya*

1. 'Abd-al-Rahmān I

2. Hishām I

3. -Hakam I

3. 'Abd-al-Rahmān II

5. Muhammad I

6. Mundhir

7. 'Abd-Allah

Muhammad

8. 'Abd-al-Rahmān III

9. -Hakam II 'Abd-al-Jabbar
 10. Hishām II Hishām Sulaymān 'Abd-al-Malik
 | | | 'Obayd-Allāh
 | | |
 11. Muhammad II 14. 'Abd-al-Rahmān V -Hakam Muhammad 'Abd-al-Rahmān
 | | |
 12. Sulaymān 13. 'Abd-al-Rahmān IV 15. Mohammad III
 |
 16. Hishām III

MINOR SPANISH DYNASTIES *

(REYES DE TAIFAS)

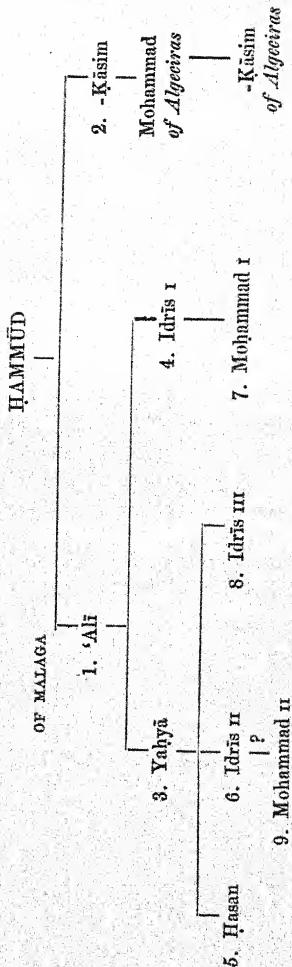
A.H.		5. HAMMÜDIDS †	(MALAGA)	A.D.
407—449				1016—1057
407	'Ali -Nāṣir	.	.	1016
408	-Kāsim -Ma'mūn	.	.	1018
412	Yahyā Mu'talī	.	.	1021
413	-Kāsim (again)	.	.	1022
416	Yahyā (again)	.	.	1025
427	Idris I -Muta'ayyad	.	.	1035
431	Hasan -Mustansır	.	.	1039
434	Idris II -'Alī	.	.	1042
438	Mohammad I -Mahdī	.	.	1046
444	Idris III -Muwaffak	.	.	1052
445	Idris II (again)	.	.	1053
446	Mohammad II -Musta'lī	.	.	1054—
—449				1057

[Almoravides]

* In the tables and trees of these dynasties Codera's *Tratado de Numismática Arábigo-Española* (1879) has been generally followed; which see for lists of various petty rulers here omitted.

† The Hammüdids took the title of Caliph or 'Prince of the Faithful.'

HAMMÜIDS



A.H.

431—450 6. HAMMŪDIDS (ALGECIRAS)

		A.D.
431	Mohammad -Mahdi	1039
440	-Kāsim -Wāthīk	1048
—450		—1058

[*'Abbādids of Seville'*]

414—484 7. 'ABBĀDIDS (SEVILLE)

414	Abū-l-Kāsim Mohammad I. b. Ismā'il	1023
434	Abū-'Amr 'Abbād -Mu'taqid b. Mohammad I	1042
461—	Abū-l-Kāsim Mohammad II -Mu'tamid b. 'Abbād	1068—
484		1091

[*Almoravides*]

403—483 8. ZAYRIDS (GRANADA)

403	Zāwī b. Zayrī	1012
410	Ḥabbūs	1019
430	Bādis b. Ḥabbūs -Muẓaffar -Nāṣir	1038
466	'Abd-Allāh b. Sayf-al-dawla Bulukkīn b. Bādis	1073
483	Tamīm b. Bulukkīn	1090

[*Almoravides*]

422—461 9. JAHWARIDS (CORDOVA)

422	Abū-l-Hazam Jahwar	1031
435	Abū-l-Walid Mohammad b. Jahwar	1043
450—	'Abd-al-Malik b. Mohammad	1058—
461		1068

[*'Abbādids of Seville'*]

427—478 10. DHU-L-NŪNIDS (TOLEDO)

427	Ismā'il -Zāfir	1035
429	Yahyā -Ma'mūn b. Ismā'il	1037
467—	Yahyā -Kādir b. Ismā'il b.-Ma'mūn	1074—
478		1085

[*Alfonso VI of Leon*]

A.H.		A.D.
412—478	11. 'ĀMIRIDS (VALENCIA)	1021—1085
412	'Abd-al-'Aziz -Mansūr	1021
453	'Abd-al-Malik -Muzaaffar	1061
457	-Ma'mūn of Toledo	1065
467	-Kādir " "	1074
468	Abū-Bakr b. 'Abd-al-Malik	1075
478	-Kādi 'Othmān b. Abū-Bakr	1085
"	-Kādir of Toledo	"

[Christians (the *Cid*): then *Almoravides*]

410—536	12. TOJIBIDS & HŪDIDS (ZARAGOZA)	1019—1141
410	Mundhir -Mansūr b. Yaḥyā -Tojibī	1019
414	Yaḥyā -Muzaaffar b. Mundhir	1023
420	Mundhir b. Yaḥyā	1029
431	Sulaymān -Musta'in b. Hūd	1039
438	Aḥmad Sayf-al-dawla -Muqtadir b. Sulaymān	1046
474	Yūsuf -Mu'taman b. Aḥmad	1081
478	Aḥmad -Musta'in b. Yūsuf	1085
503	'Abd-al-Malik 'Imād-al-dawla b. Aḥmad	1109
513—	Aḥmad Sayf-al-dawla b. 'Abd-al-Malik	1119—
536		1141

[Christians]

408—468	13. KINGS OF DENIA	1017—1075
408	Mujāhid b. Yūsuf	1017
436	'Ali Ikbāl-al-dawla b. Mujāhid	1044—
—468		1075

[Hūdids of Zaragoza]

In 1086 the *Almoravides* came to Spain, summoned by the 'Abbādids to help them against Alfonso of Leon. In 1090 they came again, and this time they conquered the whole of Moorish Spain, and made it a province of their African empire (see Table 19). Their successors in Africa, the *Almohades*, similarly annexed the Spanish province in 1145-50 (see Table 20). A few petty dynasties sprang up at Valencia and Murcia between these two invasions, and during the decline of the *Almohades'* power; but the only important line was that of the Nasrids or Banū-Naṣr of Granada, whose cultivated Court and beautiful palace, Alhambra, for a time revived the splendour and distinction of Moorish Spain as it had been in the days of the great Caliph 'Abd-al-Raḥmān III. Their long struggle against the advancing Christians, however, ended in the fall of Granada before the assaults of Ferdinand and Isabella in 1492, and with the flight of Boabdil the last remnant of Mohammadan rule vanished from the Peninsula.

A.H.		A.D.
629—897	14. NASRIDS	1232—1492
	(GRANADA)	
629	Mohammad I -Għalib	1232
671	Mohammad II -Fakīh	1273
701	Mohammad III	1302
708	Naṣr Abū-l-Juyūsh	1309
713	Ismā'īl I Abū-l-Walid	1314
725	Mohammad IV	1325
733	Yūsuf Abū-l-Hajjāj	1333
755	Mohammad V -Għānī	1354
760	Ismā'īl II	1359
761	Mohammad VI Abū-Sa'īd	1360
763	Mohammad VII (again)	1362
793	Yūsuf II	1391
794	Mohammad VII	1392
810	Yūsuf III Abū-l-Hajjāj -Nāṣir	1407
820	Mohammad VIII -Mutamaṣṣik	1417
831	Mohammad IX -Ṣaghīr	1427
833	Mohammad VIII (again)	1429
835	Yūsuf IV	1432
835	Mohammad VIII (third time)	1432
848	Mohammad X	1444
849	Sa'd -Musta'in	1445
850	Mohammad XI (again)	1446
857	Sa'd (again)	1453
866	'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan	1461
887	Mohammad XII (Boabdil)	1482
888	'Alī Abū-l-Ḥasan (again)	1483
890	Mohammad XIII (Zagal)	1485
892	Mohammad XIV (Boabdil, again)	1486
—897		—1492

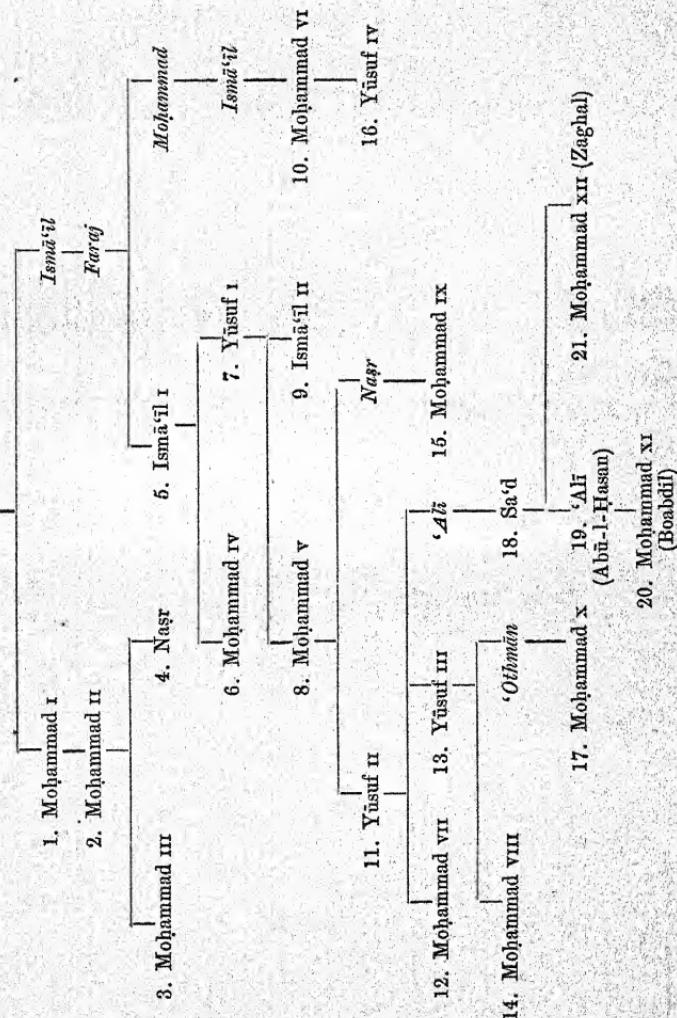
[Ferdinand and Isabella of Castile]

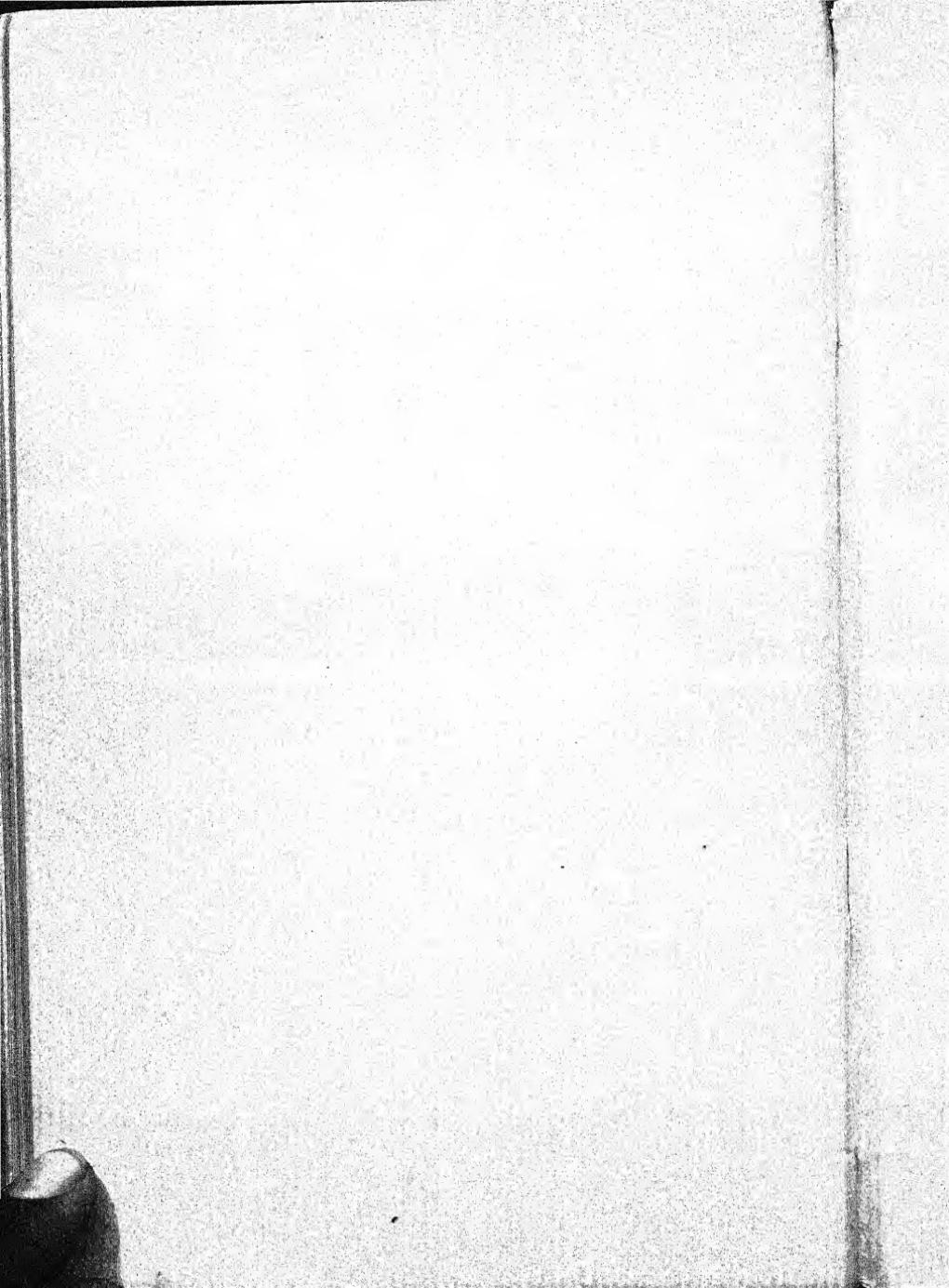
NAŞRIDS OF GRANADA

Yüsuf b. NAŞR

NAŞRIDS OF GRANADA

29

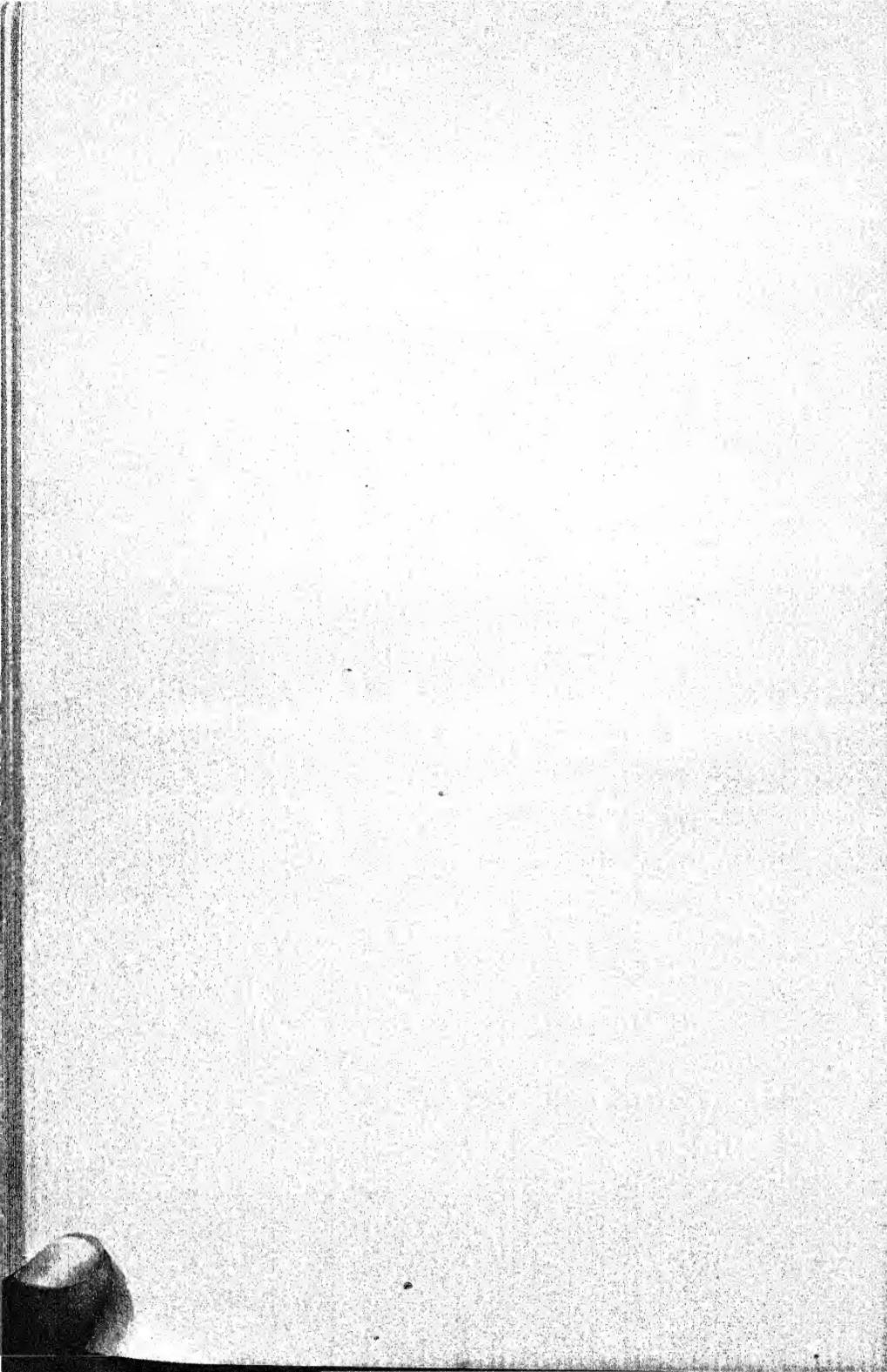




III. NORTH AFRICA

SÆC. VIII—XIX

15. IDRĪSIDS (MOROCCO)
16. AGHLABIDS (TUNIS, ETC.)
FĀTIMIDS (*See EGYPT*)
17. ZAYRIDIS (TUNIS)
18. HAMMĀDIDS (ALGIERS)
19. ALMORAVIDES (MOROCCO, ALGIERS, SPAIN)
20. ALMOHADES (NORTH AFRICA, SPAIN)
21. MARĪNIDS (MOROCCO)
22. ZIYĀNIDS (ALGIERS)
23. HAFSIDES (TUNIS)
24. SHARĪFS (MOROCCO)



III. NORTH AFRICA

SÆC. VIII—XIX

The narrow strip of habitable land between the great African desert and the Mediterranean Sea was always the nursery of schismatics. The superstitious and credulous Berbers offered a favourable soil for the germination of all varieties of Mohammadan heresy. Any prophet who found himself without honour in his own country had only to go to the Berbers of North Africa to be sure of a welcome and an enthusiastic following; whilst the distance from the centre of the Caliphate and the natural turbulence and warlike character of the population predisposed the 'Abbāsids to ignore the disloyalty of provinces which profited them little and cost them ceaseless energy and expense to control. Hence the success of such strange developments of Islām as the Almoravides and Almohades, the establishment of 'Alid dynasties such as the Idrisids and Fātimids, and in our own time the widespread authority of the Prophet-Sanūsī.

North Africa had been subdued by the Arabs with difficulty between the years 647 (26) and 700, and had since been ruled with varying success by the lieutenants of the Caliphs. So long as Yazid b. Hātim, the popular and energetic governor of *Kayrawān* for the 'Abbāsids, lived, the tendency of the Berbers to foster rebellion and schism was held in check, but on his death in 787 (170) North Africa became a prey to anarchy, which was only suppressed by allowing the local dynasties, which then sprang up, to exercise independent authority. After the year 800 the 'Abbāsid Caliphs had no influence whatever west of the frontier of Egypt.

A.H. A.D.
 172—375 15. IDRISIDS 788—985
 (MOROCCO)

In the year 785 (168) an insurrection of the partisans of the family of 'Ali took place at -Medīna. Among those who took part in it was Idrīs b. 'Abd-Allāh b. Ḥasan b. Ḥasan b. 'Alī b. Abū-Ṭālib. On the suppression of the revolt Idrīs fled to Egypt, and thence to Morocco where he founded an 'Alid dynasty in the region about Ceuta. His coins bear the names of the towns of Tudgha and -Walila. The Idrisid dominions reached their greatest extent about 860, and gradually dwindled until the extinction of the dynasty in 985 (375). Some of the dates are not recorded by Ibn-Khaldūn.

172	Idrīs i	788
177	Idrīs ii b. Idrīs i	793
213	Mohammad b. Idrīs ii	828
221	'Alī i b. Mohammad	836
234	Yahyā i b. Mohammad	849
	Yahyā ii b. Yahyā	
	'Alī ii b. 'Omar b. Idrīs ii	
	Yahyā iii b. -Kāsim b. Idrīs ii	
292	Yahyā iv b. Idrīs b. 'Omar	904
310	-Hasan	922

[*Miknasa Berbers*]

A.H.

184—296

A.D.

800—909

16. AGHLABIDS

(TUNIS, ETC.)

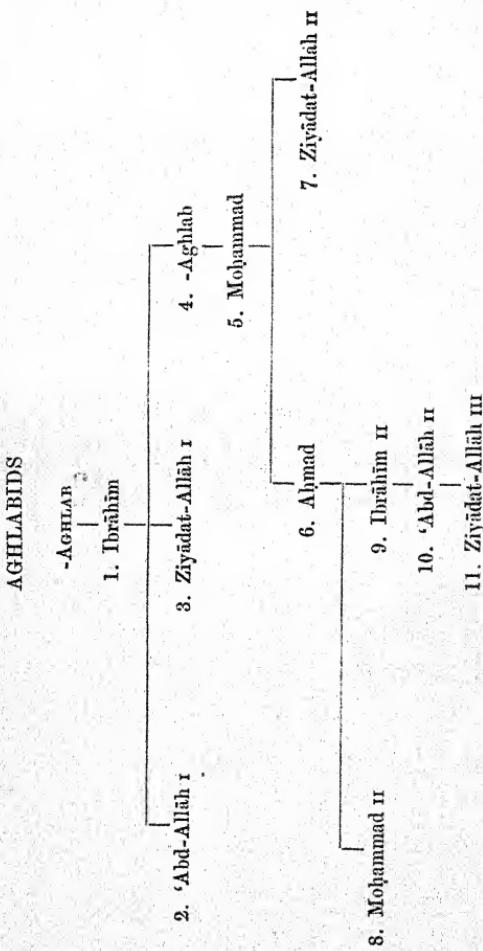
Ibrāhīm b. -Aghlab was governor of the province of Zāb for the Caliph at the time of confusion which followed upon the death of Yazīd the 'Abbāsid governor-general of 'Africa' (Afrikiya, *i.e.* Tunis) in 787 (170), and was appointed to the government of the whole African province by the Caliph Hārūn -Rashīd in 800 (184); but did not interfere with the authority of the Idrīsids in the far west. His dynasty was practically independent, and the Aghlabids seldom troubled to put the Caliphs' names on their coins in token even of spiritual suzerainty. They were not only enlightened and energetic rulers on land, but employed large fleets on the Mediterranean, harried the coasts of Italy, France, Corsica, and Sardinia, and conquered Sicily in 827–78; which island remained in Moḥammadan hands until the conquest by the Normans. The Aghlabid domination in Africa when at its best was indeed the period of the greatest ascendancy of the Arabs in the Mediterranean: their

corsairs were the terror of the seas, and besides Sicily they took Malta and Sardinia, and even invaded the suburbs of Rome. The incapacity of the later Aghlabid princes, however, and the growth of sectarian disaffection under the fostering influence of the Shī'ite Idrīsids in the west, paved the way for the Fātimid triumph in 909 (296).

184	Ibrāhīm i	.	.	.	.	.	800
196	'Abd-Allāh i	.	.	.	.	.	811
201	Ziyādat-Allāh i	.	.	.	.	.	816
223	Abū-'Aķāl -Aghlab	.	.	.	.	.	837
226	Mohammad i	.	.	.	.	.	840
242	Alḥmad	.	.	.	.	.	856
249	Ziyādat-Allāh ii	.	.	.	.	.	863
250	Mohammad ii	.	.	.	.	.	864
261	Ibrāhīm ii	.	.	.	.	.	874
289	'Abd-Allāh ii.	.	.	.	.	.	902
290	Ziyādat-Allāh iii	.	.	.	.	.	903
—296							—909

[Fātimids]





The Aghlabids were succeeded by the *Fatimids*, who, however, belong more particularly to the series of Egyptian Dynasties (see Table 27). Their empire, which at one time included the whole north African coast from Egypt to the Atlantic, together with Sicily and Sardinia, became split up into various kingdoms as soon as their removal of their seat of government to Cairo in 972 (362) weakened their control of the more western provinces. Their lieutenant over Africa, Yūsuf Bulukkīn, chief of the Sanhaja Berbers, soon declared himself independent and founded the dynasty of the *Zayrids*, whilst another dynasty, the *Hammādids*, established themselves at Bougie (Bujāya) in Algeria and restricted the Zayrids' authority to little more than the province of Tunis. Further west in Morocco various tribes of Berbers, -Miknasa, Maghrawa, etc., acquired independence, and occupied the site of the Idrīsids' kingdom, but hardly attained to the dignity of dynasties. These were in turn subdued by the *Almoravides*, who also took a large part of the territory of the Hammādids of Algeria; but it was reserved for the *Almohades* to reign in the capitals of Hammād and Zayrī.

A.H. A.D.

362—543 17. ZAYRIDES 972—1148

(TUNIS)

362	Yüsuf Bulukkīn b. Zayrī	.	.	.	972
373	Manşūr b. Yüsuf	.	.	.	983
386	Bādīs b. Manşūr	.	.	.	996
406	-Mu'izz b. Bādīs	.	.	.	1015
453	Tamīm b. -Mu'izz	.	.	.	1061
501	Yahyā b. Tamīm	.	.	.	1107
509	'Alī b. Yahyā	.	.	.	1115
515	-Hasan b. 'Alī	.	.	.	1121
—543					—1148

[Roger of Sicily; then Almohades]

398—547 HAMMĀDIDS 1007—1152

(ALGERIA)

398	Hammād	.	.	.	1007
419	-Kāid b. Hammād	.	.	.	1028
446	Muḥassin b. -Kāid	.	.	.	1054
447	Bulukkīn b. Muḥammad b. Hammād	.	.	.	1055
454?	-Nāṣir b. 'Alnās b. Muḥammad	.	.	.	1062?
481	-Manşūr b. -Nāṣir	.	.	.	1088
498	Bādīs	.	.	.	1104
500	-'Azīz	.	.	.	1106
?	Yahyā b. -'Azīz	.	.	.	—
—547					—1152

[Almohades]

A.H.

A.D.

448—541 19. ALMORAVIDES (-MURĀBITS) 1056—1147

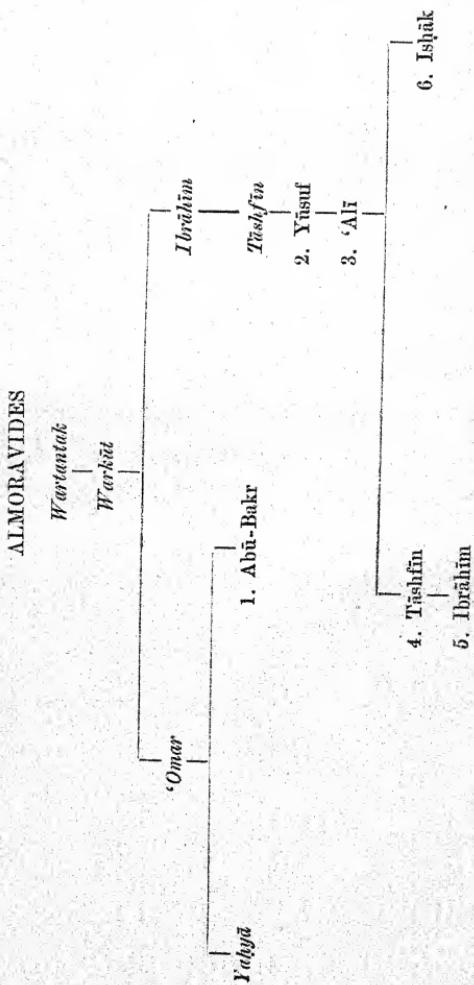
(MOROCCO, PART OF ALGERIA, SPAIN)

In the middle of the eleventh century the successes of the Christians in Spain, the energy of the Genoese and Pisans in recovering for Christendom the islands of Corsica and Sardinia, and the valour of the Normans in Southern Italy, had thoroughly humbled the power of the Muslims in the Mediterranean. The Fātimids of Egypt alone maintained the ancient prestige of the Saracens. The Zayrids of Tunis were incapable even of repressing the frequent revolts which disturbed their restricted dominion; and the rivalry between Zayrids, Hammādids, and Fātimids prevented any collective action against the Christians. It was time for a Mohammadan revival, and among a people so easily excited to religious exaltation as the Berbers a revival was always possible if a prophet could be found. The prophet appeared among the tribe of Lamtuna in the person of 'Abd-Allāh b. Tāshfīn. This man preached a holy war for the glory of Islām, and the Berbers were not slow to follow him. His adherents called themselves *Al-Murābiṭin*, which means literally 'pickets who have hobbled their horses on the enemy's frontier,' and hence 'Protagonists for the Faith.'

The Spaniards corrupted the name into Almoravides, and the French *marabout*, or devotee, is another perversion of it. The Almoravides acknowledged the supremacy of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs. The Lamtuna Berbers under 'Abd-Allāh were joined by the great clan of the Masmuda, and led by Abū-Bakr and his second cousin Yūsuf b. Tāshfin, reduced Sijilmāsa and Aghmāt by 1068 (460), founded the city of Morocco (Marrākush), and in the course of the next fifteen years spread over Fez, Mequinez (Miknasa), Ceuta (Sabta), Tangier (Tanjah), Salee, and the west of Morocco. In 1086 Yūsuf b. Tāshfin, whose great qualities both as general and as administrator had secured the devotion of the Protagonists, was entreated by the 'Abbādids of Spain to come over and help them against the assaults of Alfonso VI. and Sancho of Aragon and the invincible valour of the Cid Campeador Rodrigo Diaz de Bivar. Yūsuf utterly crushed the Castilian army at the battle of Zallāka, or, as the Spaniards call it, Sacralias, near Badajoz, October 23, 1086; but he did not follow up his victory. Leaving 3000 Berbers to support the Andalusians he returned to Africa. But in 1090 the King of Seville again prayed him to come and help him against the Christians, and this time Yūsuf annexed the whole of Moorish Spain, with the exception of

Toledo, which remained in the possession of the Christians, and Zaragosa, where the Hūdids were suffered to subsist. The success of the Almoravides, however, was fleeting. Their hardy warriors soon became enervated in soft Andalusia, and offered no adequate resistance to the steady advance of the Christians. They made no attempt to recover the command of the Mediterranean, and were content to leave the Hammādids and Zayrids in possession of most of Algeria, Tunis, and Tripoli. The Almoravide dynasty had lasted less than a century when the fanatical rush of the *Almohades* swept over the whole of north Africa and southern Spain, and left no rival house standing.

A.H.		A.D.
448	Abū-Bakr	1056
480	Yūsuf	1087
500	‘Ali	1106
537	Tashfīn	1143
541	Ibrāhīm	1146
541	Ishāk	1147



A.D.

524—667 20. ALMOHADES (-MUWAHHIDS) 1130—1269

(ALL NORTH AFRICA)

The Muwaḥḥids (in Spanish, Almohades) or Unitarians were so called because their doctrine was a protest against the realistic anthropomorphism of orthodox Islām. Their prophet Abū-'Abd-Allāh Mūhammad b. Tūmart, a Berber of the Masmuda tribe, began to preach the doctrine of the Unity of God (*-Tawḥīd*) and took the symbolic title of the Mahdi, at the beginning of the 12th century. Dying in 1128 (522) he left the command of the Unitarians to his friend and general 'Abd-al-Mu'min, who formally accepted the chief authority over the Masmuda Muwaḥḥids in 1130. In 1140 (534) 'Abd-al-Mu'min began a long career of conquest. He annihilated the army of the Almoravides in 1144, captured Oran, Tilimsān, Fez, Ceuta, Aghmāt, and Salee in two years, and by the successful siege of Morocco in 1146 (541) put an end to the Almoravide dynasty. Meanwhile he had sent an army into Spain (1145) and in the course of five years reduced the whole Moorish part of

the Peninsula to his sway. Master of Morocco and Spain, he next carried his conquests eastwards, and in 1152 (547) abolished the Hammūid rule in Algeria; in 1158 (553) he drove the Norman successors of the Zayrids out of Tunis, and by the annexation of Tripoli united the whole coast from the frontier of Egypt to the Atlantic together with Moorish Spain under his sceptre. The Holy War with the Christians in Spain was the chief anxiety of his successors, and the disastrous defeat at Las Navas in 1235 (632) was the signal for the expulsion of the Almohades from the Peninsula, which was then divided between the ever-encroaching Christians and the local Mohammadan dynasties, among whom the Naṣrids of Granada (Table 14) offered the most stubborn resistance to the enemy, and held out until the fall of their city in 1492 delivered the whole of Spain over to Ferdinand and Isabella the Catholic. The loss of Spain was quickly followed by the undermining of the Almohades' power in Africa. Tripoli had long before been annexed by Saladin (1172). Their lieutenants in Tunis, the *Hafṣids*, threw off their allegiance and founded an independent dynasty in 1228; whose example was followed by the *Ziyānids* of Tlemçen (Tilimsān) in western Algeria, in 1235; while, amidst the confusion created by many pretenders to

the throne of Morocco, the chiefs of the mountain tribe of the *Marinids* pushed their way to the front and put an end to the dynasty of the Almohades by the conquest of their capital, Morocco, in 1269 (667).

A.H.		A.D.
524	'Abd-al-Mu'min	1130
558	Abū-Ya'kūb Yūsuf I	1163
580	Abū-Yūsuf Ya'kūb -Mansūr	1184
595	Muhammad -Nāṣir	1199
611	Abū-Ya'kūb Yūsuf II -Mustansır	1214
620	'Abd-al-Wāhid -Makhlū'	1223
621	Abū-Muhammad 'Abd-Allāh -'Ādil	1224
624	Yahyā -Mu'tasim	1227
626	Abū-l-'Ulā Idrīs -Ma'mūn	1229
630	'Abd-al-Wāhid -Rashid	1232
640	Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī -Sa'id	1242
646	Abū-Ḥafṣ 'Omar -Murtadā	1248
665	Abū-l-'Ulā -Wāthīk	1266
—667		—1269

[*Marinids, Ziyānids, Ḥafsids*]

ALMOHADES

'Aīs

1. 'Abd-al-Mu'min

2. Abū-Ya'kūb Yūsuf I

*Abū-Hāfiṣ 'Omar*3. Abū-Yūsuf Ya'kūb
-Mansur*Muhammad*6. 'Abd-al-Wāhid
-Makhlū'*Ishāk*4. Muhammad
-Naṣir7. 'Abd-Allāh
-Ādil9. Idrīs
-Ma'nūn12. 'Omar
-Mu'tadī13. Abū-Ja'far 'Uthmān
-Wāthik5. Abū-Ya'kūb Yūsuf II
-Mustansir8. Yahyā
-Mu'tasim10. 'Abd-al-Wāhid
-Rashīd11. Abū-Ja'far 'Alī
-Sā'id

A.H.		A.D.
625—941	21. HAFSIDS	1228—1534
	(TUNIS)	

The Hafṣids were at first lieutenants of the Almohades in their province of Tunis. The government passed from father to son, and the dynasty became independent. For three centuries the Hafṣids governed Tunis with justice and mildness, and cultivated friendly commercial relations with the trading republics of Italy. The Corsair Khayr-al-din Barbarossa conquered Tunis in the name of the Ottoman Sultan in 1534, and though the Emperor Charles v. restored the Hafṣid king in 1535 and placed a Spanish garrison at the Goletta of Tunis, the province remained chiefly in the hands of the Corsairs, who re-took Tunis itself in 1568 and the Goletta in 1574;* since when, it has been a province of the Ottoman Empire, but in 1881 became practically a possession of France. Tripoli, which had been taken from the kingdom of Tunis by the Spaniards in 1510, was added to the Ottoman Empire by the Corsairs in 1551.

* See my *Barbary Corsairs* (1890), ch. viii, xii, xiv, xv.

A.H.		A.D.
625	Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā i	1228
647	Abū-'Abd-Allāh Mōhammad i -Mustansir	1249
675	Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā ii	1277
678	Abū-Ishāk Ibrāhīm i	1279
683	Abū-Hafṣ 'Omar i	1284
694	Abū-'Abd-Allāh Mōhammad ii -Mustansir	1295
709	Abū-Bakr i -Shadid	1309
709	Abū-l-Baḳā Khālid i	1309
711	Abū-Yahyā Zakaryā	1311
717	Abū-Ḍarba Mōhammad iii -Mustansir	1317
718	Abū-Yahyā Abū-Bakr ii -Mutawakkil	1318
747	Abū-Hafṣ 'Omar ii	1346
[747]	<i>Morinid occupation</i>	1346
750	Abū-l-'Abbās Alḥmad i -Faḍl	1349
751	Abū-Ishāk Ibrāhīm ii -Mustansir	1350
770	Abū-l-Baḳā Khālid ii	1368
772	Abū-l-'Abbās Alḥmad ii -Mustansir	1370
796	Abū-FAris 'Abd-al-'Azīz	1394
837	Mōhammad iv -Muntaṣir	1433
839	Abū-'Amr 'Othmān	1435
893	Abū-Zakaryā Yahyā iii	1488
899	Abū-'Abd-Allāh Mōhammad v	1493
932	-Hasan	1525
—941		—1534

[Corsair Pashas, and Beys, under the Ottoman Sultans]

A.H.	22. ZIYĀNIDS	A.D.
633—796		1235—1393

(ALGERIA)

The Ziyānids, lieutenants of the Almohades in Algeria, followed the example of their neighbours the Hafṣids to make themselves independent as soon as their masters began to grow feeble. Their capital was Tlemçen (Tilimsān). In their turn the Ziyānids succumbed to the power of the Marīnids of Morocco in 1393.

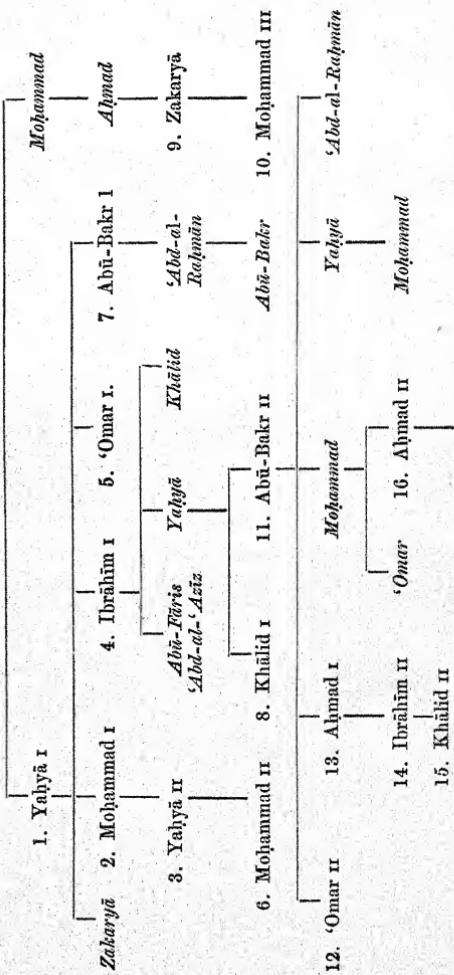
633	Yagmorasan b. Ziyān	1235
681	‘Othmān I	1282
703	Abū-Ziyān I	1303
707	Abū-Hammū Mūsā I	1307
718	Abū-Tāshfīn ‘Abd-al-Rahmān I	1318
749	{ Abū-Sa‘īd ‘Othmān II { Abū-Thābit -Zā‘īm	1348
753	Abū-Hammū Mūsā II	1352
788	Abū-Tāshfīn ‘Abd-al-Rahmān II	1386
796	Abū-Ziyān II	1393

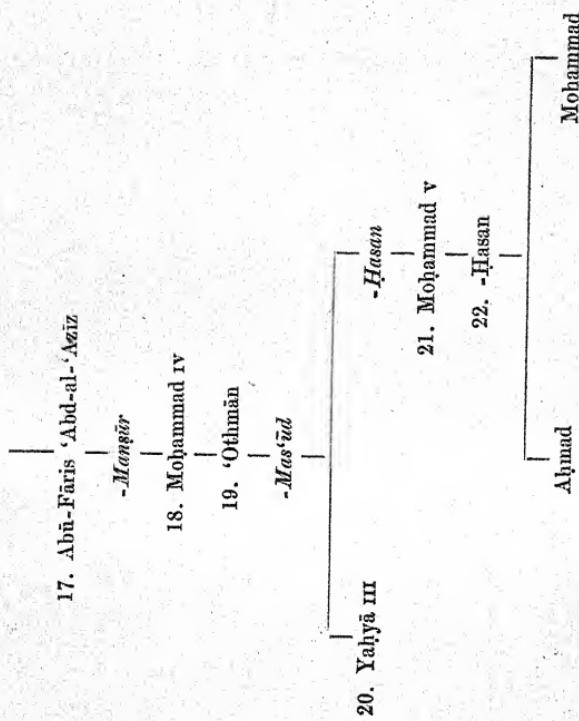
[Marīnids of Morocco]

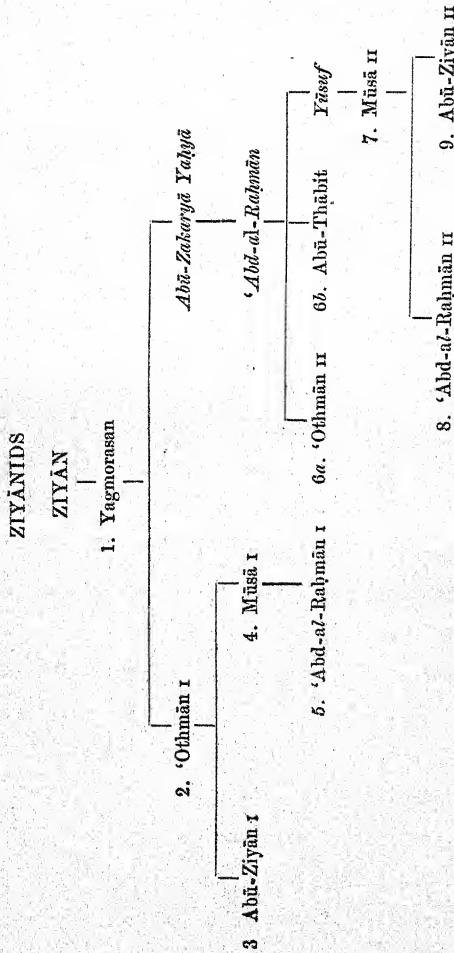
HAFSID

Abū-Wāhid b. Abū-Hafs

— 1 —







From the 16th to the present century the North African provinces of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli were in the possession, more or less nominal, of the '*Othmānlī*' or Ottoman Sultāns of Turkey. The annexation of these provinces was due to the energy of the Barbary Corsairs. Previously to the arrival of Barbarossa, the Spaniards under Don Pedro Navarro had established several strong positions on the African coast, at the Peñon de Alger, Bougie (Bujāya), Oran (Wahrān), Tripoli, etc., with a view to overawing the petty pirates of Algiers. In 1509 Urūj Barbarossa, a Lesbian adventurer, occupied the island of Jarba, off the coast of Tripoli, and began his operations against the Spaniards. He took Jijil in 1514, Algiers in 1516, Tinnis and Tlemçen (Tilimsān) from the Marīnids in 1517; and in 1519 his brother Khayr-al-dīn Barbarossa was recognised by the Ottoman Sultān as Beglerbeg or Governor-General of the province of Algiers, which corresponded very nearly to the Algeria of to-day, though the Spaniards kept their hold on the fortress or Peñon de Alger until 1530 and held Oran till 1706. In 1534 Khayr-al-dīn took Tunis from the Hafṣids, but the city was retaken by the Emperor Charles V. in the following year, and not restored to the Corsairs of Algiers till 1568. It was again captured for the moment

by Don John of Austria in 1573, but finally annexed by Ochiali (Uluj 'Ali) in 1574. Meanwhile another Corsair, Dragut (Torghūd), reduced Tripoli to the authority of the Porte in 1551, and drove out the Knights of St. John, who had held it since their expulsion from Rhodes in 1522.

The three provinces of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli were thus annexed to the Turkish Empire in 1519, 1568, and 1551, respectively. Algiers was governed first by a series of twenty-six Pashas, appointed from Constantinople; but in 1671 the janissary garrison of Algiers elected a *Dey* from amongst themselves, whose power soon eclipsed that of the Pasha, and in 1710 the two offices were united in that of Dey, which subsisted until the French conquest in 1830. Tunis was governed until 1705 by *Dey*s appointed by the Porte, after which the Turkish soldiery elected their own *Bey*s, one of whom still affects to reign, though Tunis has been occupied by France since 1881. Tripoli is still a Turkish province governed by a Pasha appointed by the Sultān. Morocco alone of the North African provinces has never owned Christian rule, though the Spaniards held various forts on the coast, and still retain Ceuta; and the English once owned Tangier, but neglected to keep it.*

* See my *Barbary Corsairs* (1890).

A.H.		A.D.
591—875	23. MARĪNIDS	1195—1470
	(MOROCCO)	

The Marīnids traced their dynasty from 1195 (591), as rulers in the highlands of Morocco; but they did not succeed to the capital of the Almohades till 1269 (667). Soon after 1393 (796) they added to their kingdom the territory of the Ziyānids in western Algeria. They were superseded by their kinsmen the Wat'asids in 1470.

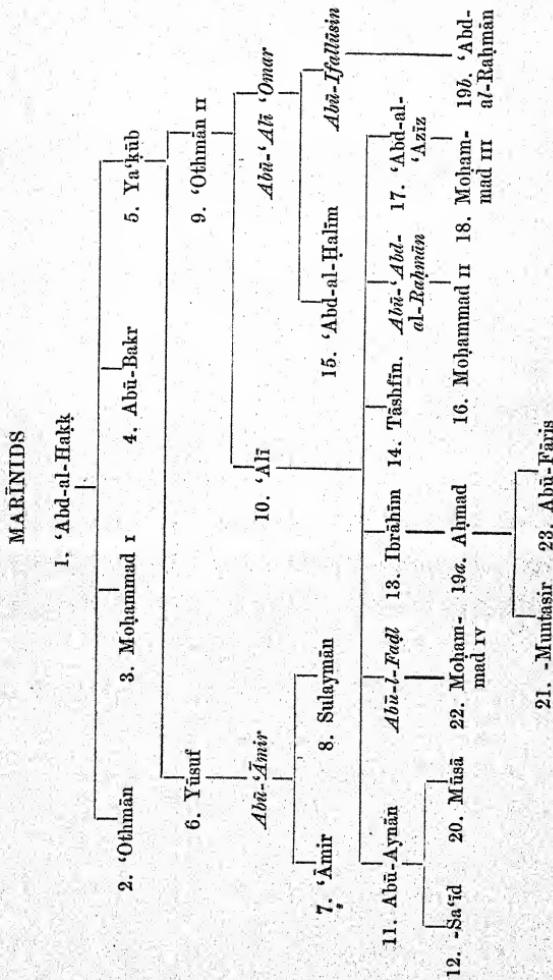
591	‘Abd-al-Hakk	1195
614	‘Othmān i	1217
637	Mōhammad i	1239
642	Abū-Yaḥyā Abū-Bakr	1244
656	Abū-Yūsuf Ya‘kūb	1258
685	Abū-Ya‘kūb Yūsuf	1286
706	Abū-Thābit ‘Āmir	1306
708	Abū-l-Rabī‘ Sulaymān	1308
710	Abū-Sa‘id ‘Othmān ii	1310
731	Abū-l-Ḥasan ‘Alī	1331
749	Abū-Aynān	1348
759	-Sa‘id	1358
760	Abū-Sālim Ibrāhīm	1359
762	Abū-‘Omar Tāshfīn	1361
763	‘Abd-al-Halīm	1361
763	Abū-Ziyān Mōhammad ii	1361
768	‘Abd-al-‘Azīz	1366

774	Mohammad III -Sa'īd	1372
776	{ Abū-l-'Abbās Ahmād -Mustanṣir ‘Abd-al-Rahmān }	1374
786	Mūsā	1384
786	-Muntaṣir	1384
788	Mohammad IV -Wathik̄	1386
789	Abū-l-'Abbās Ahmād -Mustanṣir (again)	1387
796	Abū-Fāris	1393
?	Fāris -Mutawakkil	?
811	Abū-Sa'īd	1408
819	{ Sa'īd Ya'kūb }	1416
827	‘Abd-Allāh	1424
875	Sharīf	1470

WAT'ASIDS

875	Sa'īd, Shaykh Wat'as	1470
906	Mohammad I b. Sa'īd	1500
936	Aḥmad b. Mohammad	1530
957	Mohammad II b. Aḥmad	1550

[*Sharīfs of Morocco*]



A.H.	24. SHARIFS	A.D.
951—1311 reigning	(MOROCCO)	1544—1893 reigning

The title *Sharif* (lit. ‘noble’) implies descent from the Prophet Mohammad, from whom the Sharifs of Morocco trace their lineage through Hasan the elder son of Fātima by ‘Ali. The Sharifs possessed themselves of Tarudant in 1515, and Morocco and Fez soon afterwards, but their formal assumption of sovereignty dates from 1544 (951). The series falls into two divisions, Hasani and Filali Sharifs, and a period of anarchy for six years occurred between the two. Their boundaries have always remained much as they are in the present day, but there has frequently been a rival Sharif at Fez in opposition to the Sharif of Morocco. The Sharifs claim to be inheritors of the title of Caliph and Prince of the Faithful.

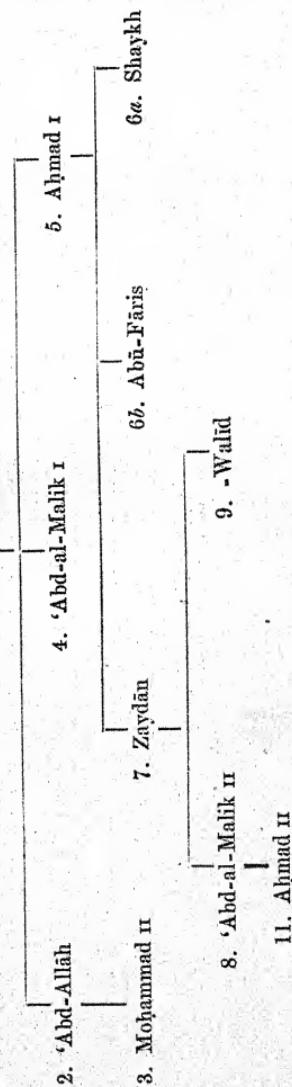
A.H.		A.D.
951—1069	A. HASANI SHARIFS	1544—1658
951	Mohammad I -Shaykh	1544
965	'Abd-Allâh	1557
981	Mohammad II	1573
983	Abû-Marwân 'Abd-al-Malik I . . .	1575
986	Abû-l-'Abbâs Ahmâd I -Mansoor . .	1578
	Shaykh	
1012	{ Abû-Fâris } rivals	1603
	Zaydân	
1016	Zaydân (alone)	1608
1038	Abû-Marwân 'Abd-al-Malik II . . .	1628
1040	Walîd	1630
1045	Mohammad III	1635
1064	Ahmâd II	1654
—1069		—1658
1075—1311	B. FILALI SHARIFS	1664—1893
1075	-Rashid b. -Sharîf b. 'Ali	1664
1083	Ismâ'il -Samîn	1672
1139	Ahmâd -Dhahâbî	1727
1141	'Abd-Allâh*	1729
1171	Mohammad I	1757
1204	-Yazîd	1789
1206	Hishâm	1792
1209	Sulaymân	1795
1238	'Abd-al-Râhîman	1822
1276	Mohammad II	1859
1290	Hasan (now reigning)	1873

* Interrupted by 'Ali b. Ismâ'il, 1147-9; -Mustâdî b. Ismâ'il, 1151-3, and Zayn-al-'Abidîn, 1158.

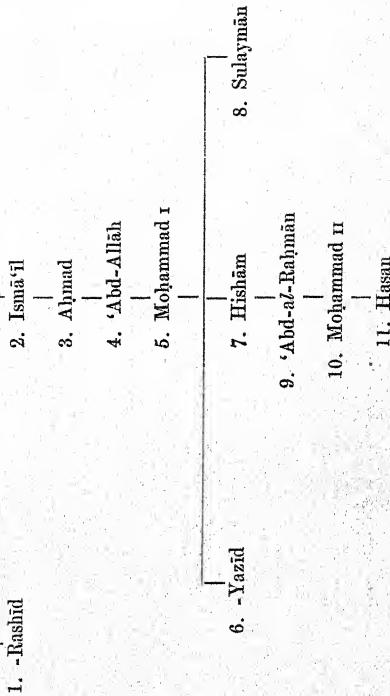
HASANI SHARIFS

-HASAN

1. Mohammad i



FILIALI SHARIFS

Sharif b. 'Ali



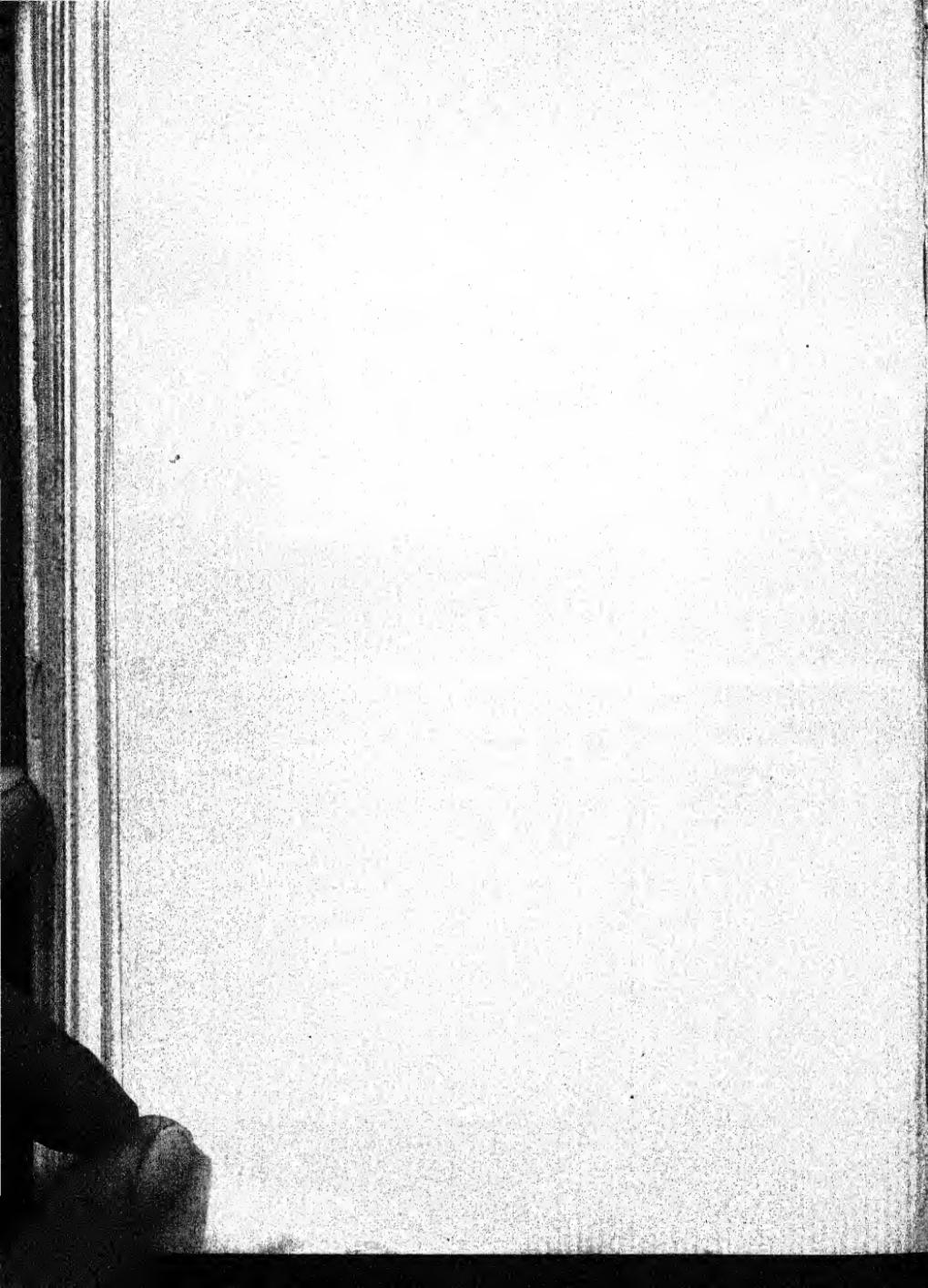
IV. EGYPT AND SYRIA

SÆC. IX—XIX.

25. TŪLŪNIDS
26. IKHSHĪDIDS
27. FĀTĪMIDS
28. AYYŪBIDS
29. MAMLUKS

'OTHMĀNLIS (*See X*)

30. KHEDIVES



IV. EGYPT AND SYRIA

SÆC. IX—XIX

Egypt and Syria have generally formed one government in Mohammadan history. Syria was conquered by the Arabs in 635–638 (14–17), and Egypt in 641 (21). From the time of the conquest to 868 (254) Egypt was ruled as a separate province by 98 governors appointed by the Omayyad and 'Abbāsid Caliphs; but the new governor in 868, Ahmad b. Tūlūn, founded a dynasty which lasted 37 years. This was succeeded after an interval by the Ikhshīdids, who in turn gave place to the greatest of mediæval Egyptian dynasties, that of the Fātimid Caliphs. Under these last, however, Syria became the seat of independent dynasties (Mirdāsids, Būrids, Zangids), but was again united to Egypt by Saladin, the founder of the Ayyūbid dynasty, and so continued until both became separate provinces of the Ottoman Empire. In 1831 Ibrāhīm Pasha, eldest son of Mohammad 'Alī, again joined Syria to the dominions of the ruler of Egypt, but it was restored to the Porte in 1841 by the intervention of the European Powers, and has ever since been a Turkish vilāyat.

A.H.	TŪLŪNIDS	A.D.
254—292		868—905

Tūlūn was a Turkish slave, who was sent by the Sāmānid ruler of Bukhārā as a present to the Caliph -Ma'mūn, and attained high rank in the court at Baghdād and Surraman-rā. His son Aḥmad succeeded to his father's dignity in 240, and was appointed deputy-governor of Egypt in 868 (254), where he soon made himself practically independent. In 877 (264) he was allowed to incorporate Syria in his government, and the two countries remained in the possession of his dynasty until its extinction in 905 (292). The Tūlūnids were renowned for the wealth and luxury of their capital -Kaṭā'i' (between -Fusṭāt and the later Cairo) and for their public works.

A.H.	A.D.
254	Aḥmad b. Tūlūn 868
270	Khumārawayh b. Aḥmad 883
282	Jaysh Abū-l-Asākir b. Khumārawayh 895
283	Hārūn b. Khumārawayh 896
292	Shaybān b. Aḥmad 904
	—905

[Governors under the 'Abbāsid Caliphs']

A.H.
323—358

IKHSHIDIDS

A.D.
935—969

After a brief interval, during which the governors of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs again held precarious sway in Egypt and Syria, Moḥammad -Ikhshīd established another quasi-independent dynasty. -Ikhshīd was the generic title of the rulers of Farghāna, beyond the Oxus, and Tughj, the father of Moḥammad, was the son of a Farghāna officer in the service of the Caliph of Baghdađ. Tughj rose to be governor of Damascus, but was disgraced and died in prison. Moḥammad retrieved his father's misfortune and became in turn governor of Damascus in 318, and in 321 governor of Egypt. He did not take over the office, however, till 935 (323). In 938 (327) he assumed the title of -Ikhshīd, and in 941 (330) Syria was added to his dominions, together with Mecca and Medina in the following year.

A.H.

323	Moḥammad -Ikhshīd b. Tughj	.	.
334	Abū-l-Kāsim Üngür b. -Ikhshīd	.	.
349	Abū-l-Hasan 'Ali b. -Ikhshīd	.	.
355	Abū-l-Misk Kāfūr [a eunuch]	.	.
357	Abū-l-Fawāris Ahmad b. 'Alī	.	.

—358

A.D.

935	
946	
960	
966	
961	

—969

[Fāṭimids]

A.H.
297—567

27. FĀTIMIDS

A.D.
909—1171

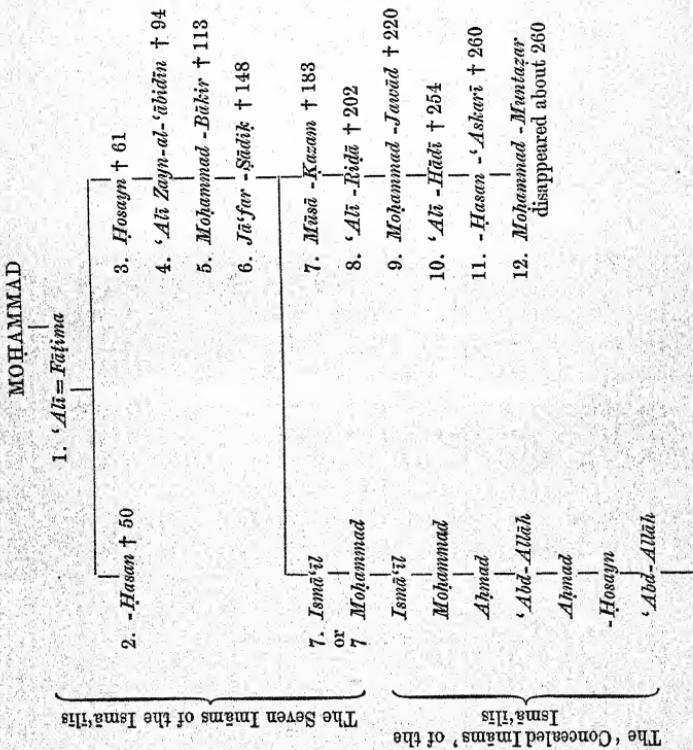
The Fātimids, like the Idrīsids, were (or pretended to be) descendants of Fātīma the daughter of the Prophet (see the genealogical table, p. 72). The Idrīsids had prepared the way for them, and numerous *dā'īs* or missionaries had impregnated the Berbers with Shi'ite doctrine, until the task of the new Prophet 'Obayd Allāh, who took the title of Al-Mahdī, and claimed to be Caliph and Prince of the Faithful, became simple: in 909 (297) he suppressed the effete remnant of the Aghlabids and soon made himself master of all North Africa, with the exception of the Idrīsid kingdom in Morocco. The Fātimid capital was the city of -Mahdiya (the 'Africa' of Froissart) near Tunis. Half a century later they added Egypt and Syria to their dominions. Jawhar the Fātimid general conquered the former country from the boy-king of the Ikhshidid dynasty in 969 (350), and founded the fortified palace of -Kāhira, which developed into the city of Cairo. Southern Syria was taken at the same time, and Aleppo was incorporated in 991 (381) in the Fātimid Empire, which now stretched from the Syrian desert and the Orontes to the

borders of Morocco. The removal of the seat of government from Қayruwān and -Mahdiya to Cairo, however, cost the Fātimids the loss of their western provinces (see p. 39); and the Normans gained Sicily in 1071, Malta in 1098, Tripoli in 1146 and -Mahdiya and Қayruwān in 1148: but the power of the Fātimid Caliphs in Egypt and Syria long continued undiminished and their wealth and commerce spread throughout the Mediterranean lands. Saladin uprooted the last Fātimid Caliph in 1171 (567).

A.H.		A.D.
297	-Mahdī Abū-Muhammad 'Obayd-Allāh . . .	909
322	-Kā'im Abū-l-Kāsim Muḥammad . . .	934
334	-Mansūr Abū-Tāhir Ismā'īl . . .	945
341	-Mu'izz Abū-Tamīm Ma'add . . .	952
365	-'Azīz Abū-Mansūr Nazār . . .	975
386	-Hākim Abū-'Alī -Mansūr . . .	996
411	-Zāhir Abū-l-Hasan 'Alī . . .	1020
427	-Mustaṣir Abū-Tamīm Ma'add . . .	1035
487	-Musta'lī Abū-l-Kāsim Aḥmad . . .	1094
495	-Āmir Abū-'Alī -Mansūr . . .	1101
524	-Hāfiẓ Abū-l-Maymūn 'Abd-al-Majīd . . .	1130
544	-Zāfir Abū-l-Mansūr Ismā'īl . . .	1149
549	-Fāiz Abū-l-Kāsim 'Isā . . .	1154
555	-Āqīd Abū-Muhammad 'Abd-Allāh . . .	1160
—567		—1171

[*Ayyūbids*]

The Twelve Imāms of the Imāmī Sect



FĀTIMIDS

- | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------------|-----------------|-----------|------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. -Mahdī | 2. -Kāim | 3. -Mansūr | 4. -Mu'izz | 5. -'Azīz | 6. -Hakim | 7. -Zāhir | 8. -Mustansır | 9. Musta'īī | 10. -Amīr | 11. -Hāfiẓ | 12. -Zāfir | 13. -Faiz | 14. -'Adid |
| | | | | | | | | <i>Mohammed</i> | | | | | |

A.H.		A.D.
564—648	28. AYYŪBIDS	1169—1250

Şalāh-al-dīn, or Saladin, the son of Ayyūb (Job), was of Kurdish extraction, and served under Nūr-al-dīn (Nouredin) Maḥmūd b. Zangī, who had lately made himself king of Syria (see IX.). By him Saladin and his uncle Shirkūh were sent to Egypt, where a civil war invited interference. Friendly assistance developed into annexation, and after the death of Shirkūh Saladin became virtual master of Egypt in 1169 (564), though the last Fātimid Caliph did not die till three years later. In the first month of 567 (Sept. 1171) Saladin caused the *Khutba* or public prayer to be said at Cairo in the name of the contemporary 'Abbāsid Caliph Muṣṭadī, instead of the Fātimid -'Āḍid, who lay on his death-bed. The change was effected without disturbance, and Egypt became once more Sunnite instead of Shi'ite. The Holy Cities of the Hijāz generally formed part of the dominion of the ruler of Egypt; and in 1173 (569) Saladin sent his brother Tūrān-Shāh to govern the Yaman (see

V.). Tripoli was taken from the Normans in 1172 (568). The death of his former master Nūr-al-dīn in the same year laid Syria open to invasion, and in 1174 (570) Saladin entered Damascus and swept over Syria (570-572) up to the Euphrates in spite of the opposition of the Zangids. He did not annex Aleppo until 1183 (579), after the death of Nūr-al-dīn's son, -Şālih. He reduced -Mōṣil and made the various princes of Mesopotamia his vassals in 1185-6 (581). He was now master of the country from the Euphrates to the Nile, except where the Crusaders retained their strongholds. The battle of Hittin, 4 July, 1187, destroyed the Christian kingdom of Jerusalem; the Holy City was occupied by Saladin within three months; and hardly a castle, save Tyre, held out against him. The fall of Jerusalem roused Europe to undertake the Third Crusade. Richard I. of England and Philip Augustus of France set out for the Holy Land in 1190, and joined in the siege of Acre in 1191. After a year and a half's fighting, peace was concluded in 1192 for three years without any advantage having been gained by the Crusaders. In March 1193 (589) Saladin died.

On his death, his brothers, sons, and nephews, divided the

various provinces of his wide kingdom, but one amongst them, his brother Sayf-al-dīn -'Ādil, the Saphadin of the Crusader chroniclers, gradually acquired the supreme authority. At first Saladin's sons naturally succeeded to their father's crowns in the various divisions of the kingdom:—-Afḍal at Damascus, -'Azīz at Cairo, -Zāhir at Aleppo. But in 1196 (592) -Afḍal was succeeded by -'Ādil at Damascus; in 1199 (596) -Mansūr the successor of -'Azīz was supplanted by -'Ādil at Cairo; and Aleppo alone remained to the direct descendants of Saladin until 1260 (648).

Having acquired the sovereignty of Egypt and most of Syria in 1196-9, and appointed one of his sons to the government of Mesopotamia about 1200 (597), -'Ādil enjoyed the supreme authority in the Ayyūbid kingdom till his death in 1218 (615). His descendants carried on his rule in the several countries; and we find separate branches reigning in Egypt, Damascus, and Mesopotamia, all sprung from -'Ādil. Those who reigned at Ḥamāh, Emesa, and in the Yaman, were descended from other members of the Ayyūbid family.

In 1250 (648) the -'Ādili Ayyūbids of Egypt, the chief branch of the family, who also frequently held Syria,

Najm-al-din AYYÜB
† 568

-Nâṣir Ṣalâḥ-al-dîn Yûsuf
(SALADIN) † 589

-Ādil Sayf-al-dîn Abû
(SAPHADIN)
(M. 589, D. 592
E. 596-†615)

-Afḍal
'Alî
(D. 582-92
+ 622)
'Azîz
'Othmân
(E. 589-
† 595)

-Zâhir
Ghâzi
(A. 582-
† 613)

Khiḍr
(Baṣra)

Mu'ayyad
Mas'ûd
(† 606)

-Kâmil
Muḥammad
(E. 615-
† 635)

-Sâliḥ
Ismâ'il
(D. 635
637-43)

-Fâiz
Ibrâhîm

Mu'azzam
Isâ
(D. 615-
† 624)

D.

-Mânsûr
Muḥammad
(E. 595-6)
-'Azîz
Muḥammad
(A. 613-
† 634)
-Sâliḥ
Ahmad

'Adil II
Abû-Bakr
(E. D. 635-7)

-Sâliḥ
Ayyub
(E. 637-
† 647
D. 648-7)

-Mas'ûd
Yûsuf
(Y. 612-
25)

-Nâṣir
Dâwûd
(D. 624-6)

-Nâṣir
Yûsuf
(A. 634-58
D. 648-58
† 659)

-Mu'azzam
Tûrân-Shâh
(E. D. 647-8)

-Ashraf
Mûsa
(E. 648-50)
-'Azîz
Muḥammad

[A. = Aleppo; B. = Ba'albakk; D. = Damascus;



made way for the Bahri Mamlūks or Slave Kings. The Damascus branch, after contesting the sovereignty of Syria with the Egyptian and Aleppo branches, was incorporated with Aleppo, and both were swept away in the Tatar avalanche of Chingiz Khān in 1260 (658). The same fate had overtaken the Mesopotamian successors of -'Ādil in 1245 (643). The Mamlūks absorbed Emesa in 1262 (661). The Ayyūbids had given place to the Rasūlids in Arabia as early as 1228 (625). But at Hamāh a branch of the family of Saladin continued to rule with slight intermission until 1341 (742), and numbered in their line the well-known historian Abū-l-Fidā.

A.H.

A. EGYPT

A.D.

564	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf (<i>Saladin</i>) . . .	1169
589	-'Azīz 'Imād-al-dīn 'Othmān . . .	1193
595	-Mansūr Muḥammad . . .	1198
596	-'Ādil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr* (<i>Saphadin</i>) . . .	1199
615	-Kāmil Muḥammad* . . .	1218
635	-'Ādil II Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr* . . .	1238
637	-Sāliḥ Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb* . . .	1240
647	-Mu'azzam Tūrān-Shāh* . . .	1249
648	-Ashraf Mūsā . . .	1250
—650		—1252

[*Mamlūk*s]

* These Sultāns also ruled at Damascus.

A.H.

A.D.

B. DAMASCUS

582	-Afḍal Nūr-al-dīn ‘Alī	1186
592	-‘Ādil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr (<i>see Egypt</i>) .	1196
615	-Mu‘azzam Sharaf-al-dīn ‘Īsā	1218
624	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Dāwūd	1227
626	-Ashraf Mūsā (<i>of Mesopotamia</i>)	1228
635	-Ṣalīḥ Ismā‘il.	1237
635	-Kāmil (<i>of Egypt</i>)	1237
635	-‘Ādil (,,).	1238
637	-Ṣalīḥ (,,).	1240
637	-Ṣalīḥ Ismā‘il (restored)	1240
643	-Ṣalīḥ (<i>of Egypt</i>)	1245
647	-Mu‘azzam (<i>of Egypt</i>)	1249
648	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf (<i>of Aleppo</i>) .	1250
—658		—1260

[Tatars]

C. ALEPPO

582	-Zāhir Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ghāzī	1186
613	-‘Azīz Ghiyāth-al-dīn Muḥammad	1216
634	-Nāṣir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf (<i>see Damascus</i>)	1236
—658		—1260

[Tatars]

D. MESOPOTAMIA

597?	-Awḥad Najm-al-dīn Ayyūb	1200?
607	-Ashraf Muẓaffar-al-dīn Mūsā (<i>see Damascus</i>)	1210
628	-Muẓaffar Ghāzī	1230
—643		—1245

[Tatars]

A.H.

A.D.

E. HAMĀH

574	-Muẓaffar ı Taḳī-al-dīn ‘Omar	1178
587	-Mansūr ı Muḥammad	1191
617	-Nāṣir Kılıç-Aṛslān. . . .	1220
626	-Muẓaffar ıI Taḳī-al-dīn Maḥmūd	1229
642	-Mansūr ıI Muḥammad	1244
683	-Muẓaffar ıII Maḥmūd	1284
—698		—1298

[Governors under the Mamlūk Sultāns]

710	-Mu‘ayyad Abū-l-Fidā Ismā‘il (the historian)	1310
733	-Afdal Muḥammad	1332
—742		—1341

[Mamlūks]

F. EMESA (HIMS)

574	-Muḥammad b. Shirkūh	1178
581	-Mujāhid Shirkūh	1185
637	-Manṣūr Ibrāhīm	1239
644	-Ashraf Muẓaffar-al-dīn Mūsā	1245
—661		—1262

[Mamlūks]

G. ARABIA

569	-Mu‘azzam Tūrān-Shāh b. Ayyūb	1173
577	-Sayf-al-Islām Tuḡṭakīn b. Ayyūb	1181
593	-Mu‘izz-al-dīn Ismā‘il	1196
598	-Nāṣir Ayyūb. . . .	1201
611	-Muẓaffar Sulaymān	1214
612	-Mas‘ūd Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn Yūsuf	1215
—625 or 626		—1228

[Rasūlide]

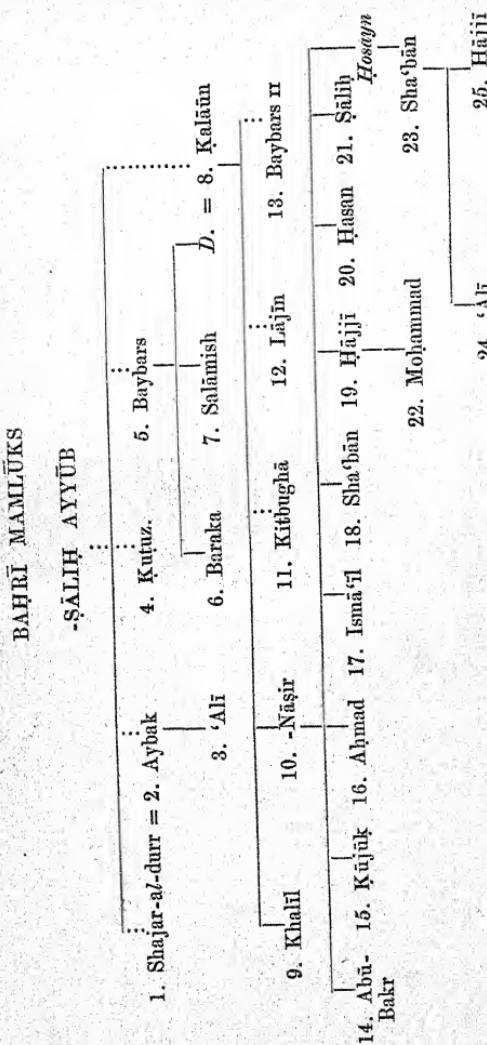
A.H. A.D.
650—922 29. MAMLUK SULTANS 1252—1517

Mamlük means 'owned,' and was generally applied to a white slave. The Mamlük Sultāns of Egypt were Turkish and Circassian slaves, and had their origin in the purchased body-guard of the Ayyūbid Sultān -Şālih Ayyūb. The first of their line was a woman, Queen Shajar-al-durr, widow of -Şālih; but a representative of the Ayyūbid family (Mūsā) was accorded the nominal dignity of joint sovereignty for a few years. Then followed a succession of slave kings, divided into two dynasties, the Bahri ('of the River') and the Burjī ('of the Fort') who ruled Egypt and Syria down to the beginning of the 16th century. In spite of their short reigns and frequent civil wars and assassinations, they maintained as a rule a well-organized government, and Cairo is still full of proofs of their appreciation of art and their love of building.* Their warlike qualities were no less conspicuous in their successful resistance to the Crusaders, and to the Tatar hordes that overran Asia and menaced Egypt in the 13th century.

* See my *Cairo* (1892) chap. iii, and *Art of the Saracens of Egypt* (1886) chap. i.

A.H.	A. BAHRI MAMLŪKS	A.D.
648—792		1250—1390
648	Shajar-al-durr	1250
648	-Mu'izz 'Izz-al-din Aybak	1250
655	-Manṣūr Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī	1257
657	-Muẓaffar Sayf-al-dīn Kuṭuz	1259
658	-Zāhir Rukn-al-dīn Baybars -Bundukdārī	1260
676	-Sa'id Nāṣir-al-dīn Baraka Khān	1277
678	-'Ādil Badr-al-dīn Salāmīsh	1279
678	-Manṣūr Sayf-al-dīn Kalāūn	1279
689	-Ashraf Ṣalāh-al-dīn Khalīl	1290
693	-Nāṣir Nāṣir-al-dīn Muḥammad	1293
694	-'Ādil Zayn-al-dīn Kitbūghā	1294
696	-Manṣūr Ḫusām-al-dīn Lājīn	1296
698	-Nāṣir Muḥammad (again)	1298
708	-Muẓaffar Rukn-al-dīn Baybars -Jāshankīr	1308
709	-Nāṣir Muḥammad (third time)	1309
741	-Manṣūr Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr	1340
742	-Ashraf 'Alā-al-dīn Küjük	1341
742	-Nāṣir Shihāb-al-dīn Aḥmad	1342
743	-Ṣalīḥ 'Imād-al-dīn Ismā'il	1342
746	-Kāmil Sayf-al-dīn Sha'bān	1345
747	-Muẓaffar Sayf-al-dīn Hājjī	1346
748	-Nāṣir Nāṣir-al-dīn Ḥasan	1347
752	-Ṣalīḥ Ṣalāh-al-dīn Ṣalīḥ	1351
755	-Nāṣir Ḥasan (again)	1354
762	-Manṣūr Ṣalāh-al-dīn Muḥammad	1361
764	-Ashraf Nāṣir-al-dīn Sha'bān	1363
778	-Manṣūr 'Alā-al-dīn 'Alī	1376
783	-Ṣalīḥ Ṣalāh-al-dīn Hājjī	1381
784	<i>Barkūk</i> (see <i>Burjis</i>)	1382
791	Hājjī again, with title of -Muẓaffar	1389
—792		—1390

[*Burji Mamlūks*]



* * *Dotted* lines indicate the relation between master and slave.

A.H.	B. BURJĪ MAMLUKS	A.D.
784—922		1382—1517
784	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Barķūk	1382
	[Interrupted by Hājjī 791-2.]	
801	-Nāṣir Nāṣir-al-dīn Faraj	1398
808	-Mansūr ‘Izz-al-dīn ‘Abd-al-‘Azīz	1405
809	-Nāṣir Faraj (again)	1406
815	-‘Ādil -Musta‘īn ('Abbāsid Caliph)	1412
815	-Mu‘ayyad Shaykh	1412
824	-Mu‘affar Aḥmad	1421
824	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Taṭār	1421
824	-Sāliḥ Nāṣir-al-dīn Muḥammad	1421
825	-Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Bars-bey	1422
842	-‘Aziz Jamāl-al-dīn Yūsuf	1438
842	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Jaḳmaḳ	1438
857	-Mansūr Fakhr-al-dīn ‘Othmān	1453
857	-Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Ināl	1453
865	-Mu‘ayyad Shihāb-al-dīn Aḥmad	1460
865	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Khūshkādam	1461
872	-Zāhir Sayf-al-dīn Bilbey	1467
872	-Zāhir Timurbughā	1468
873	-Ashraf Sayf-al-dīn Kālt-Bey	1468
901	-Nāṣir Muḥammad	1495
904	-Zāhir Kānsūh	1498
905	-Ashraf Jānbalāt	1499
906	-Ashraf Kānsūh -Ghūrī	1500
922	-Ashraf Tūmān-Bey	1516
		—1517

[Ottoman Sultāns.]

As there are seldom more than two kings of a family in the above list a genealogical table is unnecessary.

A.H.

1220—1311

30. KHEDIVES

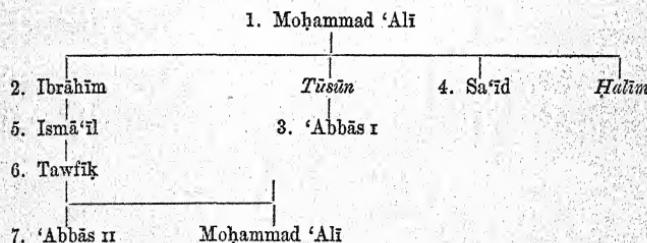
A.D.

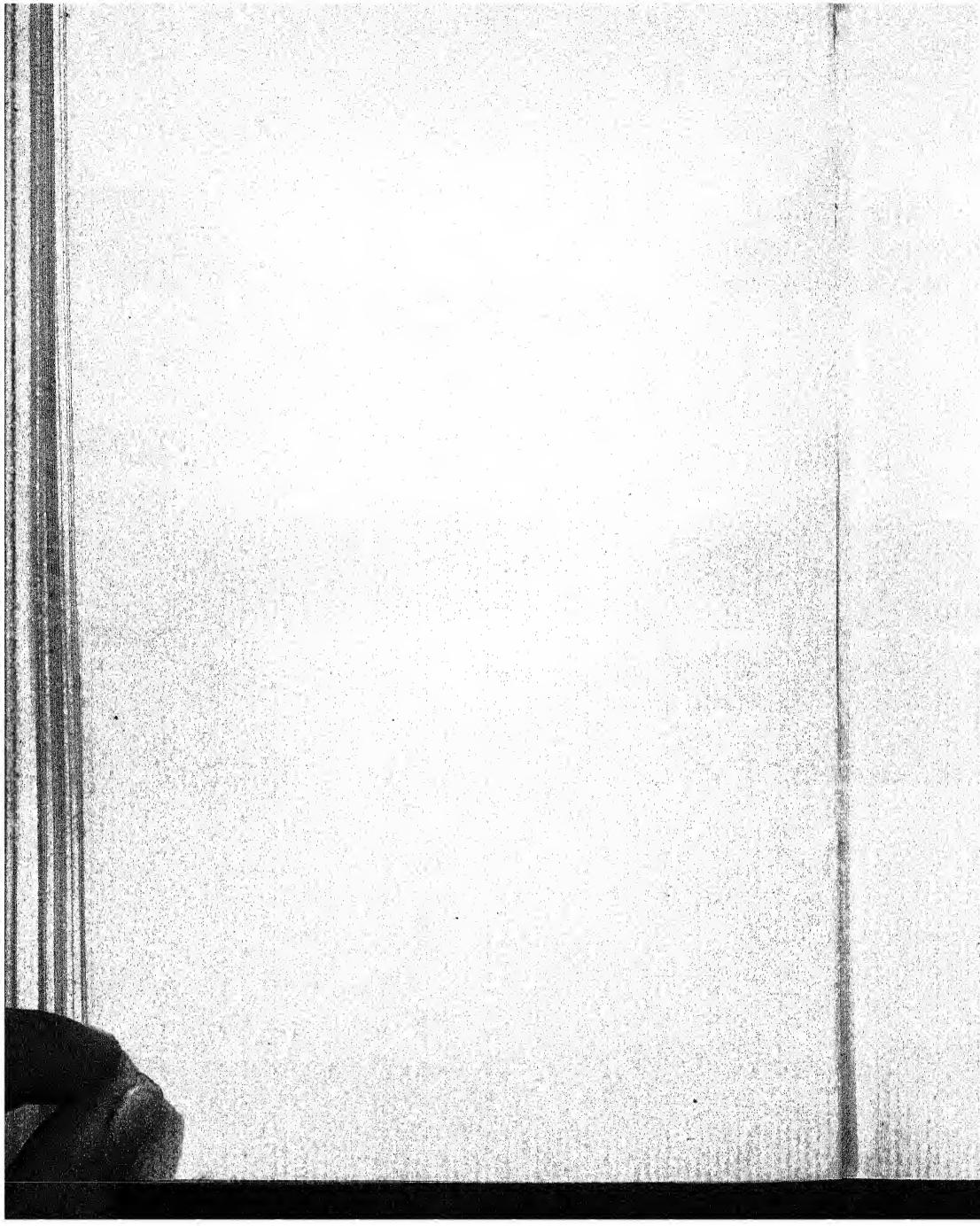
1805—1893

After the conquest by Salim I in 1517 (922) Egypt remained for three centuries a Turkish Pāshālik, where, however, the authority of the Pasha sent from Constantinople was minimized by a council of Mamlūk Beys. The arrival of Napoleon in 1798 put an end to this divided system; but after the victories of England at Abū-kīr and Alexandria and the consequent retreat of the French in 1801, the old dissensions revived. In 1805, however, Muḥammad ‘Alī, the commander of an Albanian regiment in the Turkish army of Egypt, after massacring a number of the Mamlūk chiefs, made himself master of Cairo. A second massacre in 1811 completed the work, and henceforward Egypt has been governed, in nominal subordination to the Porte, by the dynasty of Muḥammad ‘Alī, whose fourth successor, Ismā‘il Pasha, in 1866, adopted the official title of Khedive. Syria was annexed in 1831, but restored to Turkey under pressure of England in 1841. The Sūdān was conquered in successive expeditions, down to the time of Ismā‘il, but abandoned after

the death of General Gordon in 1885. The southern boundary of Egypt is now drawn near the second cataract of the Nile, and since the suppression of 'Arābī's military revolt by English troops in 1883, the administration of Egypt has been conducted under the advice of English officials.

	A.H.		A.D.
1220	Mohammad 'Ali		1805
1264	Ibrāhīm		1848
1264	'Abbās I		1848
1270	Sa'īd		1854
1280	Ismā'īl		1863
1300	Tawfīk		1882
1309	'Abbās II (regnant)		1892





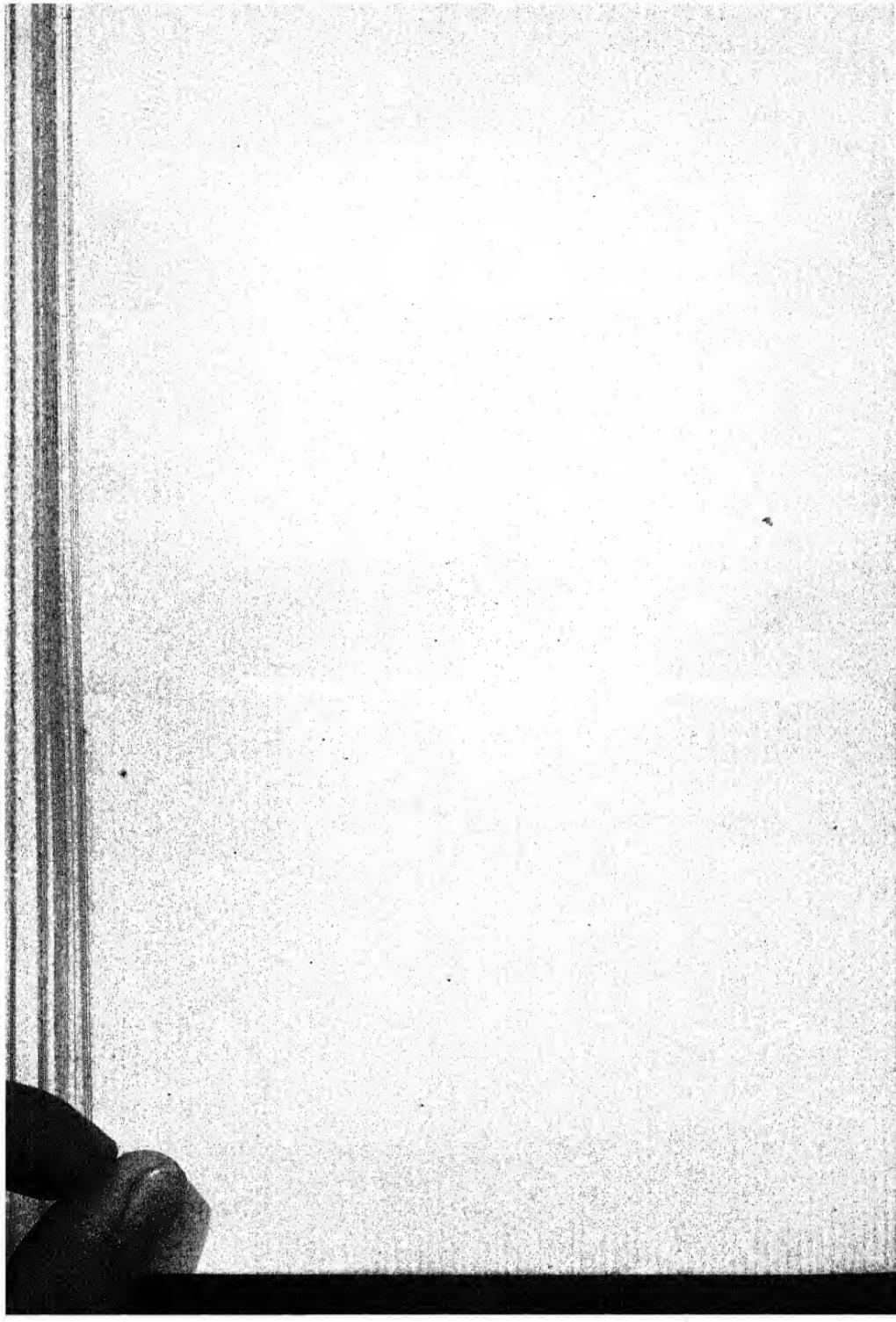
V. ARABIA FELIX (YAMAN)

SÆC. IX-XVIII

33. ZIYĀDIDS (ZABĪD)
34. YA'FURIDS (SAN'Ā, JANAD)
35. NAJĀHIDS (ZABĪD)
36. SULAIHIDS (SAN'Ā)
37. HAMDĀNIDS (SAN'Ā)
38. MAHDIDS (ZABĪD)
39. ZURAY'IIDS ('ADEN)

AYYŪBIDS (*See EGYPT*)

40. RASŪLIDS (YAMAN)
41. TĀHIRIDS (YAMAN)
42. RASSID IMĀMS (SA'DA)
43. IMĀMS OF SAN'Ā



V. THE YAMAN

SÆC. IX—XVIII

The history of Arabia after the Mohammadan revolution bore a close resemblance to its pre-Islamic annals. The Arabs under the Caliphate were very like the Arabs of 'the Days of Ignorance,' a people of many disconnected tribes headed by chiefs, and many towns and districts governed by Shaykhs, who were sometimes under control, and at others asserted their independence and styled themselves Amīrs or Imāms. The Caliphs appointed a governor of the Yaman, and a sub-governor of Mecca or Medina; but the outlying towns recognized chiefly the authority of their local Shaykhs. In the beginning of the third century of the Hijra, which saw the dismemberment of the great Islamic empire by the rise of powerful dynasties on its skirts, the governor of the Yaman followed the example of the Idrīsids and Aghlabids in North Africa; and about the time when the Tāhirids were amputating the right hand of the 'Abbāsid empire in Khurāsān, Muḥammad the *Ziyādīd* established his authority at Zabīd, the city he had founded in the Tihāma, and thus inaugurated the rule of independent dynasties in Arabia, though the Caliphs still continued to appoint governors at intervals.

A.H.	A.D.
204—409	33. ZIYĀDIDS*
	(ZABĪD) 819—1018

The Ziyādids, or Banū Ziyād, ruled at Zabīd for two centuries, and their kingdom included a considerable part of the Yaman. As their power waned, various independent rulers and dynasties sprang up: the *Yafurids* established themselves at Ṣan‘ā and Janad; Sulaymān b. Tarf subdued a wide territory bordering the northern coast of the Yaman, with ‘Aththar for its capital; and the Carmathian ‘Alī b. -Faḍl even plundered Zabīd itself shortly after 904 (292). Under the last Ziyādid, the government of their province fell entirely into the hands of a succession of slaves, until Najāḥ, an Abyssinian slave of Marjān, the last Ziyādid *Maire du palais*, substituted his own dynasty, the *Najāḥids*, at Zabid in 1021 (412).

* The history of the Arabian dynasties may be read in H. C. Kay's comprehensive work *Yaman, its early mediæval history*, 1892, which includes a translation of the Arabic history of ‘Omāra and other important and interesting materials.

A.H.		A.D.
204	Mohammad b. 'Abd-Allāh b. Ziyād	819
245	Ibrāhīm b. Mohammad	859
289	Ziyād b. Ibrāhīm	901
291?	Abū-l-Jaysh Ishāk b Ibrāhīm	903?
371	'Abd-Allāh (or Ziyād, or Ibrāhīm) b Ishāk .	981
—409		—1018

VEZĪRS

371	Rushd	981
c. 373	-Hosayn b Salāma	983
402	Marjān	1011
—412		—1021

Nafis, 407—12

[*Najāhids*]

A.H.	34. YA'FURIDS	A.D.
247—345		861—956

(SAN'A AND JANAD)

247	Ya'fur b. 'Abd-al-Rahmān	861
259	Mohammad b Ya'fur	872
279	'Abd-al-Kādir b. Ahmād b. Ya'fur	892
279	Ibrāhīm b. Mohammad	892
c. 285	As'ad b. Ibrāhīm	c. 898
288	<i>Rassid Imām - Hādi</i>	900
299	<i>Carmathian 'Alī b. - Fadl</i>	911
303	As'ad restored	915
332	Mohammad b. Ibrāhīm	943
352	'Abd-Allāh b. Kāhtān	963
—387		—997

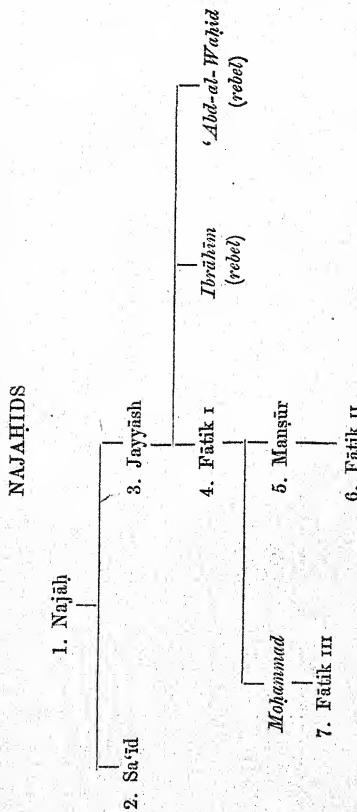
[Dynasty becomes insignificant]

A.H.	A.D.
412—553	35. NAJĀHIDS
	(ZABĪD) 1021—1158

Najāḥ, the Abyssinian slave of the last Mayor of the Palace of the Ziyādīd dynasty, ruled Zabīd till his death in 1060 (452); the town was then (454) seized by the Ṣulayḥīds and formed part of their dominions until 473, when the son of Najāḥ recovered it, though it changed hands between the two dynasties several times during his life (see p. 94). After 1089 (482) Zabīd remained continuously with the Najāhīds, until their dynasty (which had fallen, like the Ziyādīds, under the influence of vezirs) gave place to the *Mahdīds* in 1059 (554).

A.H.	A.D.
412	-Mu‘ayyad Najāḥ (+452)
454	‘Aḥ -Dā‘ī, Ṣulayḥīd
473	Sa‘īd -Ahwal b. Najāḥ
482	Jayyāsh b. Najāḥ
498	-Fātik I b. Jayyāsh
503	-Mansūr b. -Fātik
c. 517	-Fātik II b. -Mansūr
531	-Fātik III b. Mohammad b. -Mansūr
—554	—1159

[*Mahdīds.*]



A.H. A.D.
 429—495 36. SULAYHIDS 1037—1101
 (SAN'Ā)

The *dā'i* (missionary) 'Alī b. Muḥammad, founder of the Shi'ite dynasty of the Sulayhids, or Banū Sulayh, made himself independent at Masār in 1037 (429), annexed Zabid after the death of Najāh, in 1062 (454), conquered Ṣan'ā and all the Yaman by 1063 (455), and took possession of Mecca 455–6. His capital was Ṣan'ā; but he also held Zabid until his death in 1080 (473), and his son -Mukarram recovered it in 475, but lost it in 479, took it again about 1088 (481), and almost immediately lost it for the last time. In 480 -Mukarram removed his capital from Ṣan'ā to Dhū-Jibla in Mikhlāf Ja'far.

A.H.			A.D.
429	Abū-Kāmil 'Alī b. Muḥammad		1037
473	-Mukarram Aḥmad		1080
484	-Manṣūr Abū-Himyar Sabā		1091
—492			—1098
<i>'Alī the Sulayhid</i>			
	Muḥammad -Kādi		-Muẓaffar
'Abd-Allāh	1. 'Alī -Dā'i		Aḥmad
	2. -Mukarram		3. -Manṣūr Sabā
	[Hamdānids of San'ā]		

A.H.		A.D.
492—569	37. HAMDĀNIDS	1098—1173
	(SANĀ)	

The various branches of the Banū Hamdān were descended from the tribes of Ḥāshid and Bakil, which held a high rank among the Yaman Arabs, and occupied the country about Ṣan‘ā and Sa‘da. They supplied rulers to Ṣan‘ā after the Sulayhids for three quarters of a century, up to the Ayyūbid invasion.

A.H.		A.D.
492	Ḥātim b. -Ghashīm	1098
502	‘Abd-Allāh b. Ḥātim	1108
504	Ma‘n b. Ḥātim	1110
c. 510	Hishām b. -Kubbayt	c. 1116
	-Hamās b. -Kubbayt	
	Ḥātim b. -Hamās	
545	Ḥātim b. Aḥmad	1150
556	‘Alī -Waḥid b. Ḥātim	1160
—569		—1173

[Ayyūbids.]

A.H.		A.D.
554—569	38. MAHDIDS	1159—1173
	(ZABĪD)	

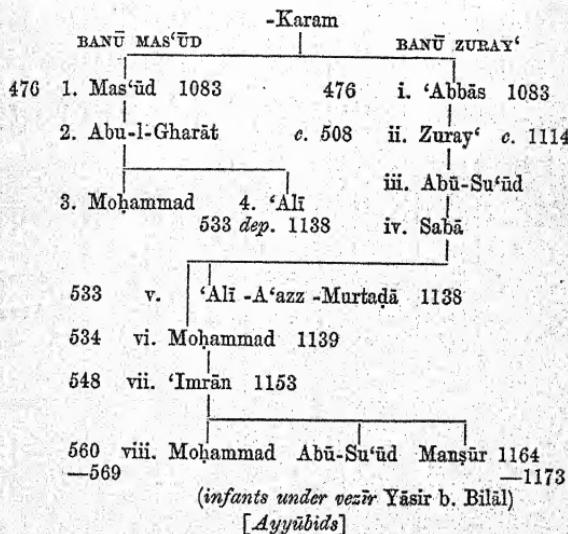
The Mahdids, or Banū-l-Mahdī, succeeded the Najāḥids at Zabīd. ‘Alī b. -Mahdī was a devotee and prophet in the Tihāma, who acquired a following whom he named -Ansār and Muḥājirūn, or Helpers and Refugees (after the example of Muḥammad), and eventually 1150 (545) began to occupy forts and subdue the country, till at length he was able to attack and conquer Zabīd 1159 (554). His successors held the Tihāma, together with some districts and towns beyond, until the Ayyūbid conquest.

A.H.		A.D.
554	‘Alī b. -Mahdī	1159
554	-Mahdī b. ‘Alī	1159
558	‘Abd-al-Nabī b. ‘Alī	1162
—569		—1173

[*Ayyūbids.*]

A.H. A.D.
476—569 39. ZURAY'IDS 1083—1173
(‘ADEN)

The two sons of -Karam, ‘Abbās and Mas‘ūd, were appointed joint governors of ‘Aden in 1083 (476) by the Ṣulayḥid -Mukarram, and the joint system of government continued for several generations. The ‘Aden princes Abū-Su‘ūd and Abū-Gharāt asserted their independence of the king of Ḫan‘ā, but were not always able to maintain it. The dynasty was, next to the Ṣulayḥids, the most important in the Yaman, and survived till the Ayyūbid conquest.*



* The list is taken from H. C. Kay's *Yaman* (Edw. Arnold, 1892), p. 307.

A.H.

569—625

AYYŪBIDS

A.D.

1173—1228

(YAMAN)

The Ayyūbid conquest in 1173 (569) is the great crisis in the mediæval history of Arabia. The kinsmen of Saladin swept over the Yaman and overturned its dynasties with the same uncompromising thoroughness as they displayed in Egypt, Syria, and Mesopotamia. The Hamdānids of Ṣan‘ā, the Mahdīds of Zabīd, and the Zuray‘ids of ‘Aden, were alike suppressed by the Kurdish conqueror Tūrān Shāh, son of Ayyūb, and for half a century, 1173—1227 (569—625) the Yaman remained in the hands of the great family which ruled Egypt and Syria. The list of the Ayyūbids of Arabia has already been given (p. 79) in connexion with the leading branch of Egypt, but is here repeated for convenience.

A.H.

A.D.

569	-Mu‘azzam Tūrān -Shāh	.	.	.	.	1173
577	Sayf-al-Islām Tughtigīn	.	.	.	.	1181
593	Mu‘izz-al-dīn Ismā‘il	.	.	.	.	1196
598	-Nāṣir Ayyūb	.	.	.	.	1201
611	-Muzaffar Sulaymān	.	.	.	.	1214
612	-Mus‘ūd Yūsuf	.	.	.	.	1215
—625						—1228

[Rasūlīds]

A.H.		A.D.
626—858	40. RASŪLIDS	1229—1454
(YAMAN)		

The Rasūlids succeeded the Ayyūbids in the government of all the Yaman; from Ḥadramawt to Mecca, and their power was maintained for over two centuries. They took their name from an envoy (*rasūl*) of the ‘Abbāsid caliph, whose son, ‘Alī b. Rasūl, was appointed governor of Mecca by the last Ayyūbid Sultān of Arabia, -Mas‘ūd, in 1222 (619). On the death of Mas‘ūd in 1228 (625) ‘Alī’s son Nūr-al-dīn ‘Omar established his authority over the Yaman.

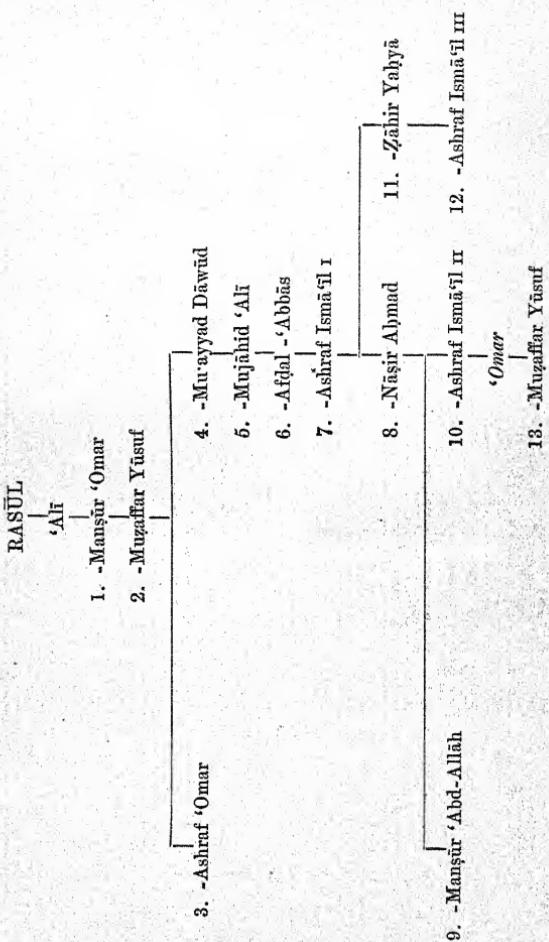
626	-Mansūr ‘Omar b. ‘Alī	.	.	.	.	1229
647?	-Muẓaffar Yūsuf	:	.	.	.	1249?
694	-Ashraf ‘Omar	.	.	.	.	1295
696	-Mu‘ayyad Dāwūd	.	.	.	.	1297
721	-Mujāhid ‘Alī	.	.	.	.	1321
764	-Afḍal -‘Abbās	.	.	.	.	1363
778	-Ashraf Ismā‘il I	.	.	.	.	1376
803	-Nāṣir Alḥmad	.	.	.	.	1400
829	-Mansūr ‘Abd-Allāh	.	.	.	.	1426
830	-Ashraf Ismā‘il II	.	.	.	.	1427
831	-Zāhir Yahyā	.	.	.	.	1428
842	-Ashraf Ismā‘il III	.	.	.	.	1438
845	-Muẓaffar Yūsuf	.	.	.	.	1441

Rival claimants :

846	-Mufaddal Muḥammad	.	.	1442
846	-Nāṣir ‘Abd-Allah	.	.	1442
854-8	-Mas‘ūd	.	.	1450-4
855	-Mu‘ayyad -Hosayn	.	.	1451

[*Tāhirids.*]

RASŪLIDS



A.H.

850—923

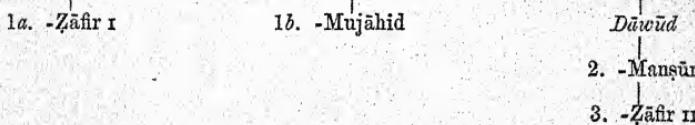
41. TĀHIRIDS

(YAMAN)

The Tāhirids, or Banū Tāhir, succeeded to the Yaman on the break-up of the Rasūlids, and maintained their authority until the conquest of Arabia by the last but one of the *Mamlūk Sultāns* of Egypt, Kānsūh -Ghūrī. The '*Othmānī Turks*' then occupied the country, thus made ready for their rule, in 1517 (923), but were forced to abandon it in 1633, in favour of the native Imāms.

850	{ Zāfir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn 'Āmir I (<i>Zabid</i> , †870) . . }	1446
	-Mujāhid Shams-al-dīn 'Alī ('Aden, †883) . .	
883	-Manṣūr Tāj-al-dīn 'Abd-al-Wahhāb	1478
894	-Zāfir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn 'Āmir	1488
—923		—1517

TĀHIR

[*Mamlūks*; '*Othmānīs*']

A.H. A.D.
280—c. 700 42. RASSID IMĀMS 893—c. 1300
(SA'DA)

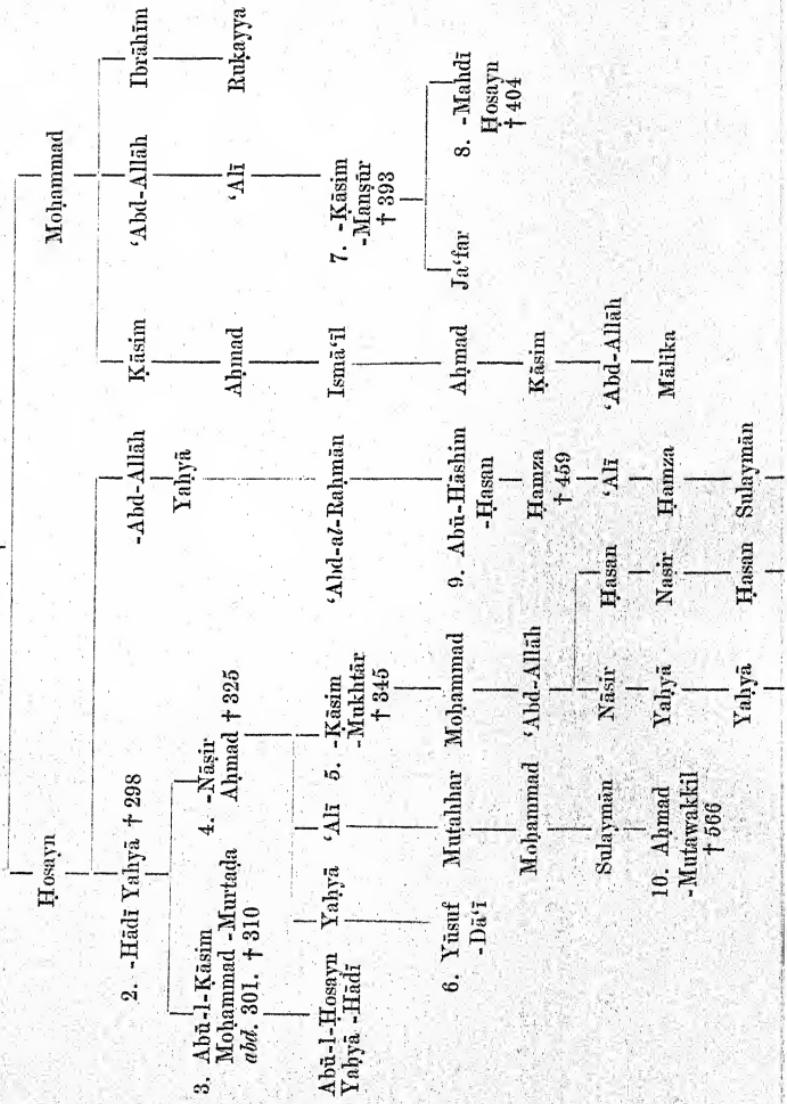
A line of Imāms of the Zaydite sect of the Shī'ites was founded at Sa'da in the Yaman by -Hādi Yahyā, grandson of -Kāsim -Rassi, a schismatic of the time of -Ma'mūn the 'Abbāsid Caliph, and lasted down to the present day. The series is confused and the dates often uncertain, but the following list and genealogical table give the results of the latest researches.*

† 246	-Kâsim -Rassi Tarjumân-al-dîn	† 860
280	-Hâdi-ilâ-l-hâkî Yâhiyâ	893
298	-Murtadâ Abû-l-Kâsim Muhammad	910
301	-Nâsir Ahmad	913
324	-Kâsim -Mukhtâr	935
	Yûsuf -Dâ'i	
	Kâsim -Manşûr	
393	-Mahdî -Hosayn † 404	1003
426	Abû-Hâshim -Hâsan	1035
430	-Nâsir Abû-l-Fatâ -Daylamî	1038
532	-Mutawakkil Aḥmad † 566	1137
593	-Manşûr 'Abd-Allâh † 614	1196
{ 614-23	-Nâsir 'Izz-al-dîn Muḥammad	1217-1226
614	-Hâdi Najm-al-dîn Yaḥyâ	1217
623?	-Mahdî Aḥmad b. -Hosayn	1226?
656	-Mutawakkil Shams-al-dîn Aḥmad	1258
e. 680	-Muntasir Dâwîd	1281

* See H. C. Kay's *Yaman*, 1892, for further details.

RASSID MÄMS

1. -Kāsim -Rassi Tarijemān-aṣ-ṣūrī f 246





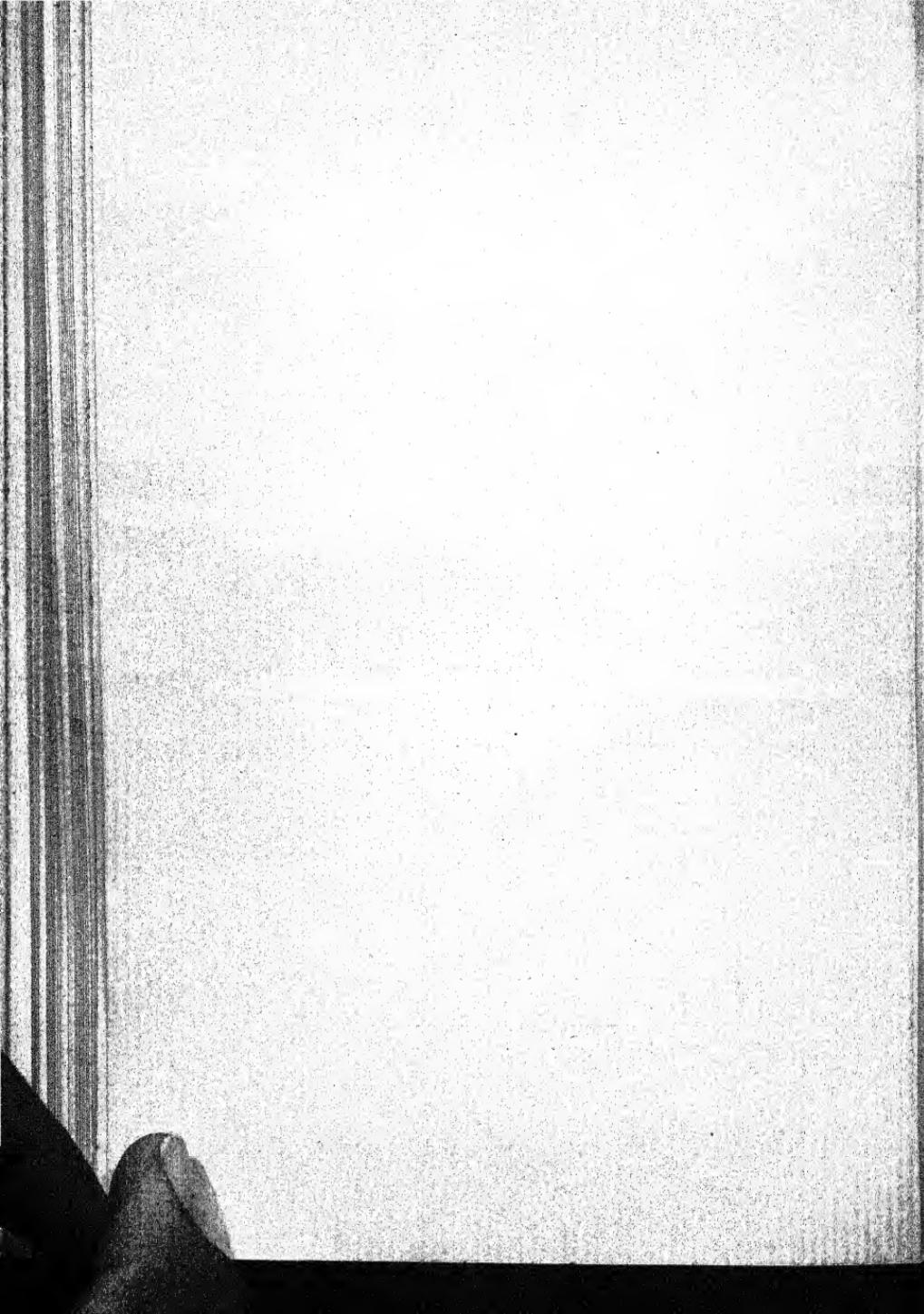
A.H.

43. IMĀMS OF SANĀĀ

A.D.

The preceding Imāms had their chief seat at Sa'da, but they frequently succeeded in taking Ṣan'ā. It was not, however, until the expulsion of the 'Othmānlī Turks in 1633 (1043) that Ṣan'ā became the permanent capital of the Imāmate of the Yaman. The Imāms who ruled there are generally distinguished by the title of Imāms of Ṣan'ā, but they were really only a continuation of the previous line of Sa'da, since their founder was -Kāsim -Mansūr, a descendant of Yūsuf -Dā'i, great-grandson of -Hādi Yahyā, the founder of the Rassid Imāmate. The following list, chiefly after Niebuhr, is incomplete, for representatives of the same family still possess authority in the Yaman.

c. 1000	-Kâsim -Manşûr	.	.	c. 1591
1029	-Mu'ayyad Môhammad	.	.	1620
1054	-Mutawakkil Ismâ'il	.	.	1644
1087	-Majid Môhammad	.	.	1676
	-Mahdi Ahmâd	.	.	
1093	-Hâdi Môhammad	.	.	1682
1095	-Mahdi Môhammad	.	.	1684
1126	-Nasîr Môhammad	.	.	1714
1128	-Mutawakkil -Kâsim	.	.	1716
1139	-Manşûr -Hosayn	.	.	1726
1139	-Hadi -Majid Môhammad	.	.	1726
1140	-Manşûr (<i>restored</i>)	.	.	1727
1160	-Mahdi -'Abbas	.	.	1747
c. 1190	-Mansûr	.	.	c. 1776

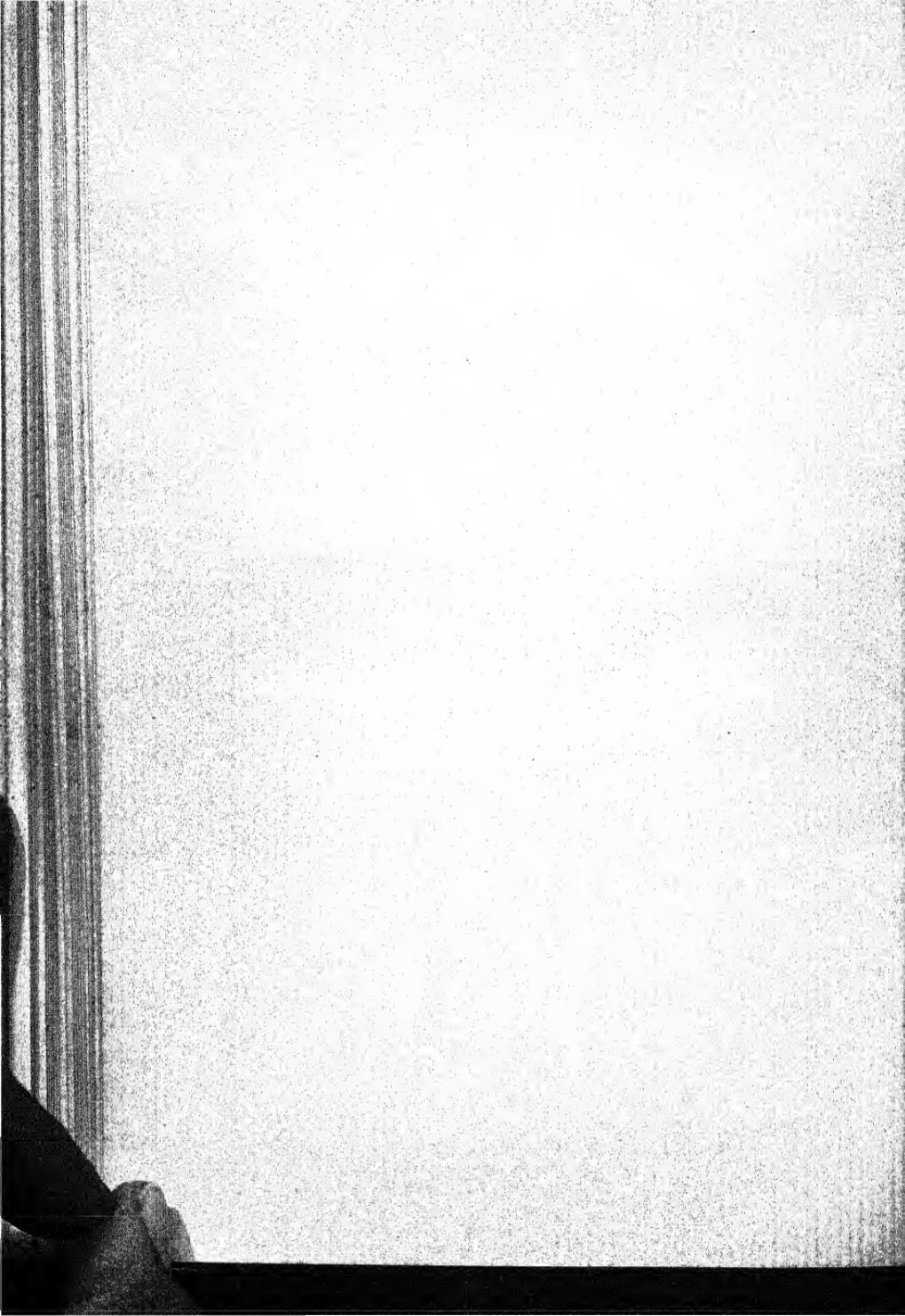


VI. SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA

(ARAB PERIOD)

SÆC. X-XII

44. ḤAMDĀNIDS (-MŌṢIL, ALEPPO)
45. MIRDĀSIDS (ALEPPO)
46. 'OḲAYLIDS (-MŌṢIL, ETC.)
47. MARWĀNIDS (DIYĀR-BAKR)
48. MAZYADIDS (-HILLA)



VI. SYRIA AND MESOPOTAMIA

(ARAB PERIOD)

SÆC. X—XII.

In classifying the Mohammadan dynasties of Asia, the purely geographical system adopted for Africa must be modified, in order to present the various groups of dynasties in historical sequence. These dynasties fall naturally into the following divisions:—VI. The Arab dynasties of Syria and Mesopotamia previous to the invasion of the Seljûk Turks; VII. The Persian and Transoxine dynasties before the Seljûks; VIII. The Seljûk family in all its ramifications; IX. The dynasties founded by officers who had served in the Seljûk armies, and subsisting between the decay of the Seljûk power and the invasion of the Mongols; X. The western successors of the Seljûks, especially the 'Othmânî Turks; XI. The Mongol family of Chingiz Khân in all its branches; XII. The dynasties which sprang up in Persia on the decline of the Mongol power; XIII. The dynasties which sprang from Timûr

(Tamerlane) in Transoxiana on the decay of the older branch of the Mongols; XIV. The dynasties of India (including Afghānistān).

In this arrangement the geographical progress from west to east is still generally preserved. We have first Syria and Mesopotamia down to the great sweep of the Seljūk invasion; then Persia and Transoxiana to the same epoch. The Seljūks and their officers and successors in the west follow. A new power, that of the Mongols, then comes to sweep away for a time all these lesser dynasties, save the 'Othmānlīs. The Mongols in turn grow weak, and their Persian supplacers, notably the several dynasties of Shāhs, to the present day, are placed next. Further north and east, the Mongols were continued in a new line, that of Timūr; and the dynasties sprung from this renowned chief, together with their Uzbeg successors in Transoxiana, are brought down to the present day. Still moving eastward, we arrive at India, and begin the series of Mōhammadan dynasties of Hindūstān with their historical source, the Ghaznawids of Afghānistān, and carry them down to the fall of the Mogul Empire and the establishment of British supremacy in India.

The first of these groups is formed of the dynasties founded by Arab tribes in Syria and Mesopotamia. The geographical division is not arbitrary, for the mountains of Kurdistān and the Zagros range form a natural boundary between Persia and Mesopotamia, which, at least in the earlier centuries of Moḥammadan history, was seldom over-stepped. The Buwayhids indeed combined lower Mesopotamia with their Persian empire, but as a rule a dynasty which ruled in Diyār-Bakr or -Jazīra did not extend its sway beyond the mountains to the east, though it frequently spread into Syria. The first group is not only distinct geographically; it is also an ethnological class. With the exception of the Marwānids, who were Kurds, the dynasties classed in this group were all pure Arabs. The Arab tribes which had migrated from their native deserts northwards into Syria and Mesopotamia had always been a political power with which the Caliphs had to reckon, and on the rapid decay of the central authority at Baghdad the various clans which roamed the Syrian desert and the valley of the Euphrates began to form permanent settlements, to occupy towns and forts, and found dynasties. Thus the Taghib tribe furnished the *Hamdānid* dynasty in -Mōṣil, Aleppo, and other cities;

the Banū Kilāb set the *Mirdāsids* on the throne of Aleppo; the *Banū 'Okayl* established their rule in Diyār-Bakr and -Jazīra (Mesopotamia) and part of -'Irāk (Chaldaea); and the Banū Asad set up the powerful *Mazyadid* dynasty at -Hilla. Yet while they exercised authority over cities, districts, and even whole provinces, these Arab chiefs did not abandon their national life, but for the most part continued to dwell in tents with their tribesmen, and wander as the needs of their flocks or their predatory instincts suggested.

A.H.	44. HAMDĀNIDS	A.D.
317—394		929—1003
(-MŌṢIL, ALEPPO, ETC.)		

The Hamdānid family, descended from the Arab tribe of Taghlib, had settled in the neighbourhood of -Mōṣil, and Ḥamdān b. Ḥamdūn had taken a prominent part in the political events of that city as early as 873 (260). In 894 (281) Muḥammad b. Ḥamdān was in possession of Māridīn, but was expelled by the Caliph -Mu'taṣid; in 904 (292) Abū-l-Hayjā 'Abd-Allāh b. Ḥamdān was appointed governor of -Mōṣil and its dependencies; and from this time the power of the Hamdānids greatly increased. In 919 (307) Ibrāhīm b. Ḥamdān was made governor of Diyār-Rabī'a, where he was succeeded by his brother Dāwūd in 921 (309); Sa'id b. Ḥamdān became governor of Nahāwand in 924 (312), and several other members of the family received appointments. 'Abd-Allāh made his son -Ḥasan his lieutenant at -Mōṣil, which, with an interval, (317—319), the latter held, together with Diyār-Rabī'a, and Diyār-Bakr, until his deposition by his son Abū-Taghlib in 968 (358). In 941 (330) he was given the title of Nāṣir-al-dawla by the Caliph; and at the same time his brother 'Alī was named Sayf-al-dawla.

The latter, after governing Wāsiṭ, took Aleppo from the Ikhshidids in 944 (333), and won a great reputation in his wars against the Greeks. The Ḥamdānids were Shi'ites, and Sayf-al-dawla paid homage to the Fātimid Caliphs. After the deaths of these two brothers, the power of the dynasty rapidly declined. The *Fātimids* absorbed the dominions of Sayf-al-dawla's grandsons in Syria, and the *Buwayhids* ousted Abū-Taghib from Mesopotamia in 977-9 (367-9). The recovery of -Mōṣil by his brothers -Hosayn and Abū-Tāhir was but a temporary and brief revival.

I. OF -MŌṢIL

317	Nāṣir-al-dawla Abū-Muhammad -Ḥasan	929
358	'Uddat-al-dawla Abū-Taghib -Ghaqāñir	968
—369		—979
371	{ Abū-Tāhir Ibrāhīm	981
—380	{ Abū-'Abd-Allāh -Hosayn	—991

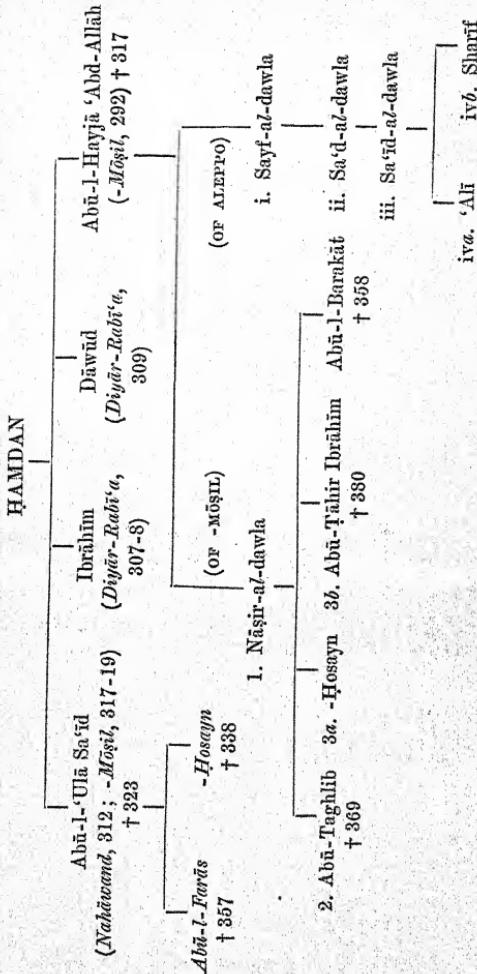
[*Buwayhids, 'Oḳaylids*]

II. OF ALEPO

333	Sayf-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Ali . . .	944
356	Sa'd-al-dawla Abū-l-Ma'āli Sharif . .	967
381	Sa'id-al-dawla Abū-l-Fadā'il Sa'id . .	991
392	{ Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Ali	1001
394	{ Abū-l-Ma'āli Sharif	1003

[*Fātimids*]

HAMDANIDS



A.H.

414—472

A.D.

45. MIRDĀSIDS

1023—1079

(ALEPPO)

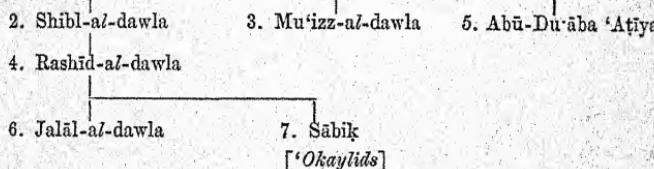
Asad-al-dawla Abū-'Alī Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās, of the Arab tribe of the Banū Kilāb, raided the neighbourhood of Aleppo (Halab) with his Bedouins as early as 1011; and in 1023 (414) the inhabitants revolted against the Fātimid governor, and delivered the city to Ṣāliḥ, who ruled Aleppo until killed in a battle with the Egyptians in 1029 (420). His son Shibl-al-dawla Nasr succeeded him, but was also killed by the Fātimid army in 1037 (429), and it was not until five years later that another son, Mu'izz-al-dawla Tamāl, who had governed -Raḥba, recovered Aleppo from the Egyptians. In 1057 (449) Tamāl again abandoned Aleppo to Egypt, whilst his brother 'Atīya occupied -Raḥba. This fresh Fātimid rule was terminated in 1060 (452) by the conquest of the city by Rashīd-al-dawla, son of Shibl-al-dawla; but he was expelled in the following year by his uncle Mu'izz-al-dawla, who died in 454, and bequeathed Aleppo to his brother 'Atīya. Rashīd-al-dawla, however, recovered the city in the same year,

and 'Aṭīya seized -Rakka, whence he was expelled by the 'Oḳaylid Muslim b. Kuraysh in 1070 (463). Rashīd-al-dawla was succeeded in 468 by his son Jalāl-al-dawla, who took Manbij from the Greeks, and whose brother Sābiḳ (or Shabīb) held Aleppo until its conquest by the 'Oḳaylid Muslim in 1079 (472).*

414	Şāliḥ b. Mirdās	1023
420	Şibl-al-dawla Abū -Kāmil Naṣr	1029
429	<i>Fāṭimids</i>	1037
434	Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū 'Ulwān Tamāl	1042
449	<i>Fāṭimids</i>	1057
452	Rashīd-al-dawla Maḥmūd	1060
453	Mu'izz-al-dawla <i>restored</i>	1061
454	Abū-Du'āba 'Aṭīya	1062
454	Rashīd-al-dawla <i>restored</i>	1062
468	Jalāl-al-dawla (Şamşām-al-dawla) Naṣr	1075
468	Abū-l-Fadā'il Sābiḳ	1076
—472		—1079

MIRDĀS

1. Şāliḥ



* See H. Sauvaire, *A Dinar of Salih ibn Merdas of Aleppo* (*Numismatic Chronicle*, 1873).

A.H.
386—489

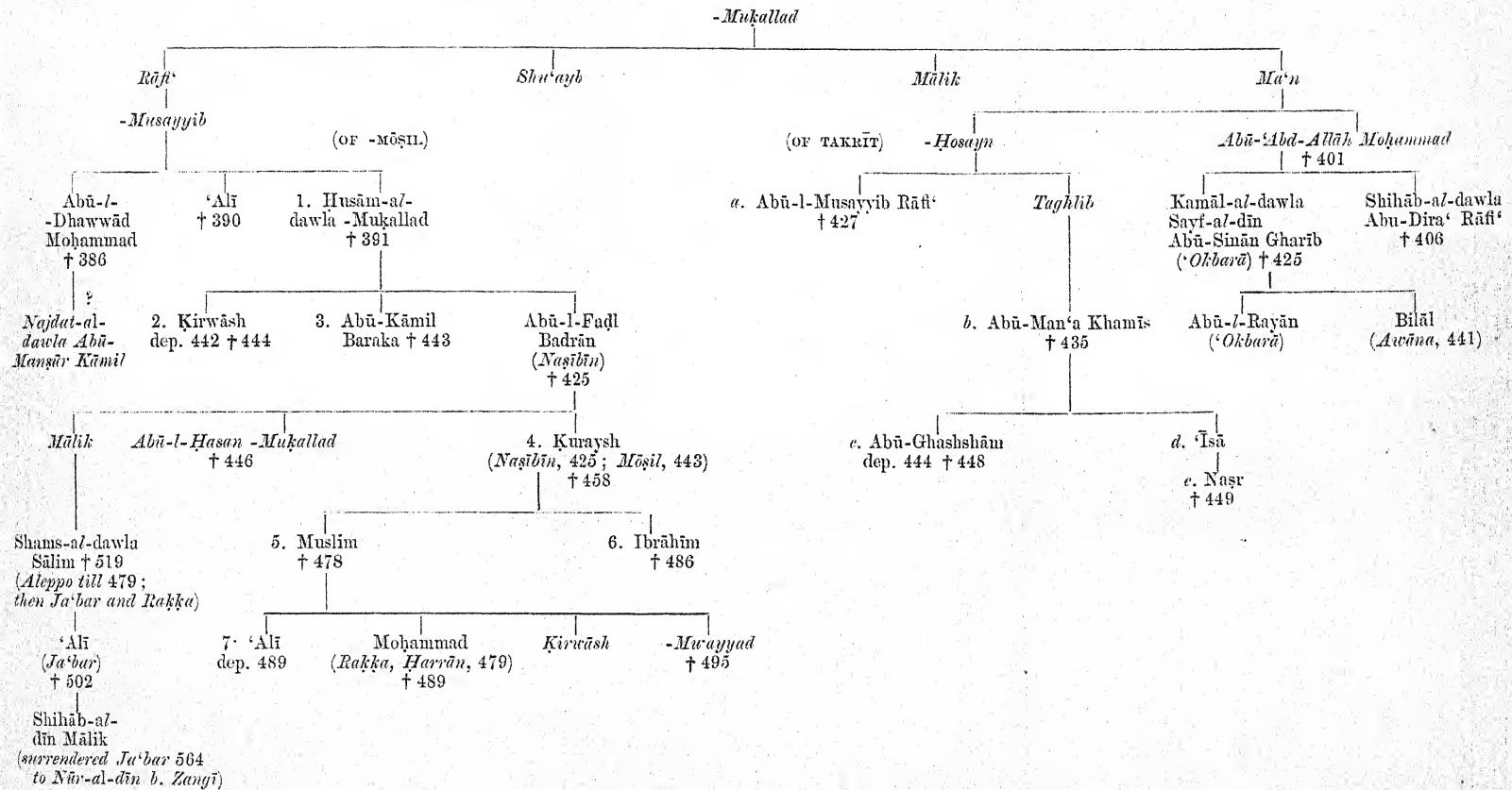
46. 'OKAYLIDS
(-MOSIL, ETC.)

A.D.
996—1096

The Banū 'Okayl, or 'Okaylids, a very large Arab clan, formed one of the five divisions of the Banū Ka'b, of the Modarite tribes of Arabia; and after their adoption of Islām their sub-clans spread over parts of Syria, -'Irāk, and even North Africa and Andalusia. In the early days of the 'Abbāsid Caliphate, -'Irāk was full of 'Okaylids. The Banū Muntafik, one of their sub-clans, migrated to the marshy country about -Baṣra, called the Baṭīḥa or Baṭā'ih ('The Swamps'), under the family of Ma'rūf; the Banū Khafaja for centuries occupied themselves in looting caravans in the deserts of -'Irāk, as late as 1327; while the Banū 'Obāda inhabited, with the Banū Muntafik, the country between -Kūfa, Wāsiṭ, and -Baṣra, and eventually furnished the line of 'Okaylid princes of -Mōṣil. In the fourth century of the Hijra, the 'Okaylids of Syria and -'Irāk were tributary to the powerful Arab dynasty of Ḥamdānids, but on the fall of these princes, the 'Okaylids attained independent sovereignty. Abū-Dhawwād Muḥammad was granted by the last of the Ḥamdānids the cities of Naṣībīn and Balad in 989 (379), to which he added -Mōṣil in 980, but

(To face p. 116)

'OKAYLIDS



[Muhyī-*a*-din Abū-l-Harith Muḥārīsh, descended from Shu‘ayb b. -Mukallad, governed ‘Ana and Haditha, and was succeeded, 499, by his son Sulaymān, who died in 528. Muḥammad, descended from Mālik b. -Mukallad, governed Hit in 496. See H. C. Kay, *Notes on the History of the Banū ‘Okayl*, J.R.A.S.]



was expelled by the Buwayhids in 381. His brother Mu-kallad was more successful; he took -Mōṣil in 996 (386), and was confirmed in the government, together with -Kūfa, -Kaṣr, and -Jāmi‘ān, by Bahā-al-dawla the Buwayhid, on condition of tribute; to which were presently added -Anbār, -Madā'in, and Daṣūkā. In the time of Muslim b. Kuraysh, the dominions of the ‘Okaylid of -Mōṣil extended from the neighbourhood of Baghdaḍ to Aleppo. On his death, the principality speedily decayed in power, and -Mōṣil, its capital, was conquered by a Turkish adventurer, Kawām-al-dawla Karbuṭā in 1096, (489), and merged in the Seljuk empire. Other branches, or individual chiefs, of the ‘Okaylids, who governed various small towns in Syria and Mesopotamia, are indicated in the genealogical table. After the destruction of their power in Mesopotamia the ‘Okaylids returned to their old camping grounds in -Baḥrayn.

386	Husām-al-dawla Mu-kallad	996
391	Mu‘tamid-al-dawla Kirwāsh	1000
442	Zā‘im-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil Baraka	1050
443	‘Alam-al-dīn Abū-l-Ma‘ālī Kuraysh	1051
453	Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-l-Makārim Muslim	1061
478	Ibrāhim	1085
486	‘Alī	1093
—489	[Seljūks]	—1096

A.H.

380—489

47. MARWĀNIDS

A.D.

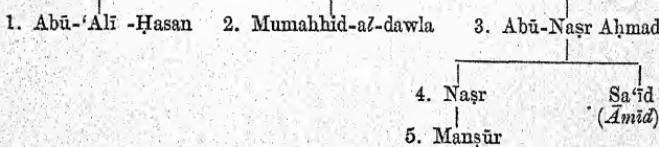
990—1096

(DIYĀR-BAKR)

On the death of Bād, governor of Ḥiṣn Kayfā, in 990 (380) his sister's son, Abū-'Alī b. Marwān, a Kurd by race, succeeded to his dominions, which included the chief towns of Diyār-Bakr, such as Āmid, Arzan, Mayyā-fārikīn, and Kayfā. His successor paid homage to the Fātimid Caliph of Egypt, and was rewarded with the government of Aleppo, as the Caliph's officer, for a time, in succession to the expelled Ḥamdānids. The Marwānids also acknowledged the suzerainty of the Buwayhids; but vanished upon the invasion of the Seljuks.

380	Abū-'Alī -Hasan	.	.	.	.	990
387	Mumahhid-al-dawla Abū-Manṣūr	.	.	.	.	997
402	Naṣr-al-dawla Abū-Naṣr Aḥmad	.	.	.	.	1011
453	Nizām-al-dawla Naṣr	.	.	.	.	1061
472	Manṣūr	.	.	.	.	1079
<hr/> —489						—1096

MARWĀN



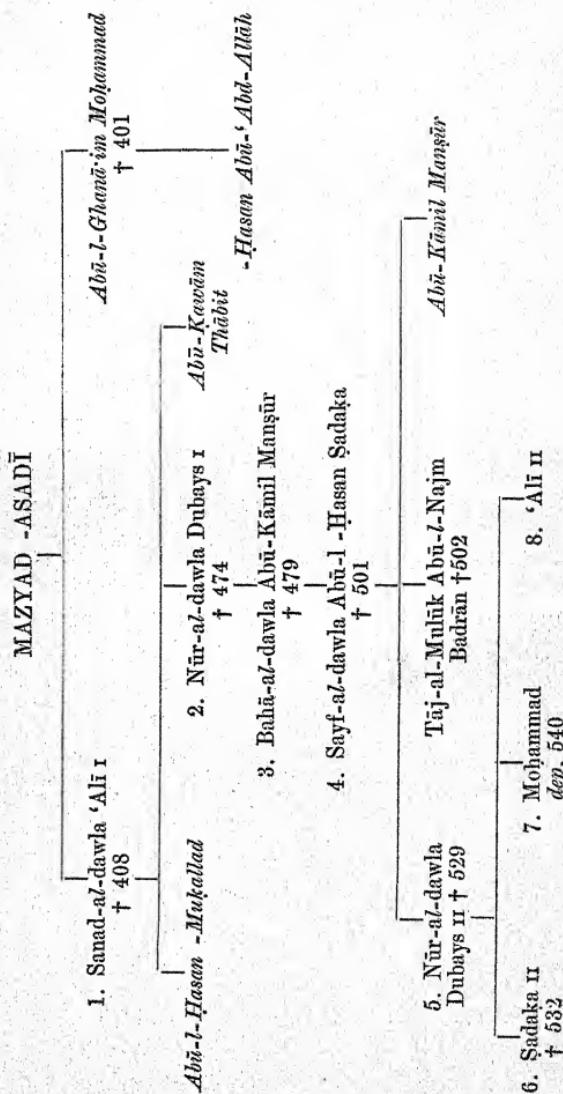
[Seljuks]

A.H.	A.D.
403—545	48. MAZYADIDS
	1012—1150 (-HILLA)

The Banū Mazyad, a tribe of the Banū Asad, after leaving Arabia, spread over the deserts to -Kādisīya on the left bank of the Tigris. The fourth of the dynasty, Ṣadaḳa, built his new capital of -Hilla on the site of the town of -Jāmi‘ān in 1101 (495), and the beauty of its buildings and extent of its trade were long celebrated. Ṣadaḳa is one of the great heroes of Arab history, extolled by poets and chroniclers. The dynasty declined after his death, and in 1162 (558) the Caliph -Mustanjid attacked the tribes of the Banū Asad in -Irāk, and killed 4000 of their fighting men, so that they disappeared from the Euphrates country. The Banū Muntafiḳ of the Batīḥa succeeded to part of their territory; the Zangids replaced them in power.

403	Sanad-aṣ-ṣawla ‘Alī i	1012
408	Nūr-aṣ-ṣawla Dubays i	1017
474	Bahā-aṣ-ṣawla Abū-Kāmil Maṇṣūr	1081
479	Sayf-aṣ-ṣawla Ṣadaḳa i	1086
501	Nūr-aṣ-ṣawla Dubays ii	1107
529	Ṣadaḳa ii	1134
532	Mohammad	1137
540	‘Alī ii	1145
—545		—1150

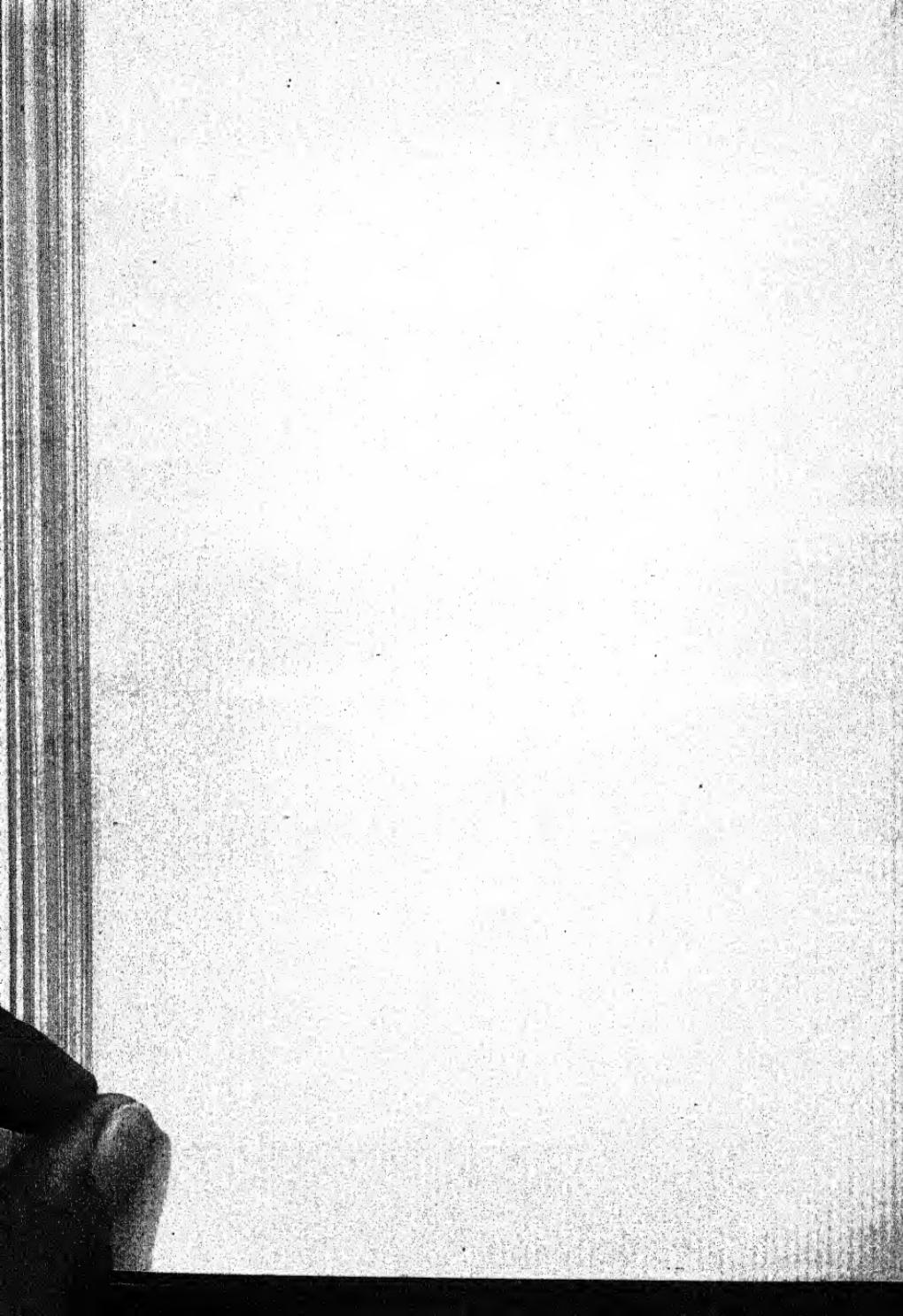
[Zangids]



VII. PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA
(PERSIAN PERIOD)

SÆC. IX-XI

49. DULAFIDS (KURDISTĀN)
50. SĀJIDS (ADHARBĪJĀN)
51. 'ALIDS (TABARISTĀN)
52. TĀHIRIDS (KHURĀSĀN)
53. SAFFĀRIDS (PERSIA)
54. SĀMĀNIDS (TRANSOXIANA AND PERSIA)
55. ĪLAK KHĀNS (TURKISTĀN)
56. ZIYĀRIDS (JURJĀN)
57. HASANWAYHIDS (KURDISTĀN)
58. BUWAYHIDS (SOUTHERN PERSIA AND -'IRĀK)
59. KĀKWAYHIDS (KURDISTĀN)



VII. PERSIA AND TRANSOXIANA

(PERSIAN PERIOD)

SÆC. IX—XI

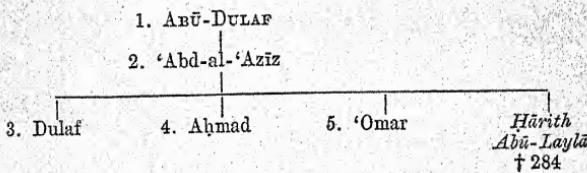
The following group of dynasties ruling in Persia and the province of *Mā-warā-l-nahr* ('Beyond the River' Oxus), or Transoxiana, up to the inroad of the Seljûks, belongs to the period of Persian revival. The Caliph -Ma'mûn, whose mother was a Persian slave, attained to the Caliphate, and dethroned his brother -Amin, by the aid of Persian troops raised in Khurâsân; his power was maintained by his Persian adherents; and his policy was unlimited conciliation of Persian national aspirations. The result was a revival of Persian influences at the expense of the old Arab polity, and the consequent weakening of the State. The great officers, governors, and generals, in the provinces began to acquire a dangerous degree of power, which -Ma'mûn and his successors in the Caliphate were unable to curb, and various Persian dynasties, professing a merely nominal

dependence upon the Caliphs, sprang up, just as the Arab tribes of Mesopotamia further west asserted their authority against the decrepit Caliphate. Some dynasties, such as the Buwayhids, were not even orthodox, but professed the Shi'ite tenets, which have always been popular in Persia, as they are at this day. Although the period is characteristically Persian, it is not to be assumed that all the dynasts were Persians by race. Abū-Dulaf, for example, was an Arab, Hasanwayh a Kurd, whilst the Īlak Khāns were Turks. The chief dynasties, however, were of Persian origin.

A.H.	A.D.
c. 210—c. 285	49. DULAFIDS
	<i>(KURDISTĀN)</i>

Abū-Dulaf -‘Ijlī was an officer of the Caliph -Amīn, and received the government of Hamadhān, in which he was succeeded by his son ‘Abd-al-‘Azīz and his grandsons. ‘Omar b. ‘Abd-al-‘Azīz increased his dominions by the acquisition of Iṣpahān and Nahāwand in 281. They were succeeded by other governors of the Caliphs.

c. 210	Abū-Dulaf -Kāsim b. Idrīs -‘Ijlī	c. 825
228	‘Abd-al-‘Azīz	842
260	Dulaf	873
265	Aḥmad	878
280	‘Omar	893
—c. 285		—c. 898



[*Abbāsid Governors*]

A.H.

266—c. 318

50. SĀJIDS

A.D.

879—c. 930

(ADHARBĪJAN)

Abū-l-Sāj Dīvdād was governor of -Kūfa and -Ahwāz at the time of his death, 879 (266). At that date his son Mohammad was governor of the Hijāz; but was transferred to -Anbār in 269; and then to Adharbījān in 276, to which was added Armenia in 898 (285). On his death his brother Yūsuf, who had been Wālī of Mecca in 884 (271), succeeded to the government of Armenia and Adharbījān, setting aside Mohammad's son Dīvdād. Yūsuf invaded -Rayy in 918 (306) and was imprisoned by the Caliph in the following year, but was restored to his appointments in 922 (310). He annexed -Rayy in 311, and waged war upon the Carmathians. In 931 (319) the government of Adharbījān was vested in Muflih, a freedman of Yūsuf's.

266	Abū-l-Sāj Dīvdād died	879
276	Mohammad -Afshīn b. Dīvdād	889
288	Yūsuf b Dīvdād	900
315	Abū-l-Musāfir -Fātīh b. Mohammad	927
—c. 318		—c. 930

[‘Abbāsid Governors]

A.H. A.D.
250—316 864—928

(TABARISTĀN)

The branch of ‘Alid, or Zaydite, Imāms who ruled at Sa‘da in the Yaman has already been noticed (p. 102). Other members of the same family, descendants of either -Hasan or -Hosayn, the grandsons of the prophet Mohammad, long maintained their rights to the Imāmate or Caliphate in the provinces bordering the southern shore of the Caspian, Daylam, Tabaristān, and Gilān. A list of merely spiritual pontiffs, or sporadic rebels, is beyond the present purpose, but in 864 (250) the ‘Alids gained possession of Tabaristān, became a power, struck coins, and held the province for sixty-four years, until expelled by the *Sāmānids*. After this event, several rival houses of ‘Alids continued to maintain themselves in Gilān and Daylam, and at least one of them, Abū-l-Fadl Ja‘far -Thā‘ir fi llāh, exercised the royal privilege of coinage.

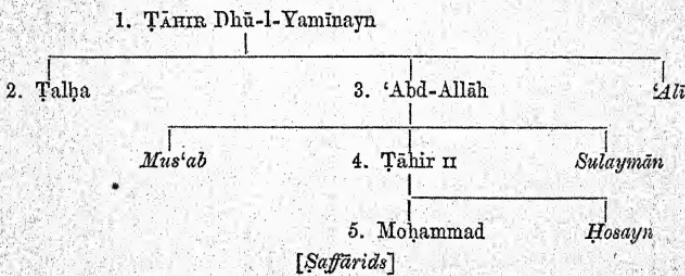
250	-Hasan b. Zayd	.	.	.	.	.	864
270	Mohammad b. Zayd	.	.	.	.	.	883
287	<i>Sāmānid government</i>	.	.	.	.	.	900
301	-Naṣir Hasan b. ‘Ali -Utrūsh	.	.	.	.	.	913
304	-Hasan b. -Kāsim	.	.	.	.	.	916
—316							—928

[*Sāmānids*; *Ziyārids*.]

A.H.	A.D.
205--259	52. TĀHIRIDS
	(KHURĀSĀN)

Tāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn ('Ambidexter'), the celebrated general of -Marmūn, descended from a Persian slave, was appointed by that Caliph to the government of Khurāsān in 820 (205), where he and his dynasty became practically independent, though holding their authority by patent of the Caliphs and with express acknowledgement of vassalage. They did not attempt to extend their power much beyond the borders of their province, and after half a century collapsed tamely before the attack of Ya'kūb b. Layth the *Saffārid*.

205	Tāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn	.	.	.	.	820
207	Talḥa	.	.	.	.	822
213	'Abd-Allāh	.	.	.	.	828
230	Tāhir II	.	.	.	.	844
248	Mohammad	.	.	.	.	862
—259						—872



A.H.		A.D.
254—290	53. SAFFĀRID(S)	867—903
	(PERSIA)	

Ya'kūb, the son of -Layth the Ṣaffār ('Coppersmith'), was by a freak of fortune promoted from the leadership of a band of outlaws to a post of trust at the Court of the Caliph's governor of the province of Sijistān (Sīstān, or Nīmrūz), whom he eventually succeeded, sometime before 868 (255). By that year he had annexed Herāt and occupied Fārs, including the capital Shīrāz, to which he soon added Balkh and Tukhāristān, and in 872 (259) took Khurāsān from the Tāhirids. After an expedition in Tabaristān, where he defeated Hasan b. Zayd the 'Alid, he openly revolted against the Caliph -Mu'tamid, and advanced through Shīrāz and -Ahwāz upon Baghdād; but was routed by the Caliph's brother -Muwaffak, and died in 878 (265). His brother and successor 'Amr was confirmed in the governments of Khurāsān, Fārs, Kurdistān, and Sijistān. The Caliph, however, distrusting 'Amr's increasing power, induced Ismā'il the Sāmānid to attack him in 900 (287), when the

Ṣaffārid was defeated and made prisoner. His grandson Ṭāhir succeeded him in Sijistān, but, endeavouring to re-establish the power of his house in Fārs, was imprisoned 903 (290). Two other members of the family vainly sought to recover its lost territory. In 296 Sijistān was granted to the Sāmānids, but the Ṣaffārids continued for nearly a century to aim at the possession of this province, and several of them succeeded in holding it for a time.*

254	Ya'kūb b. -Layth	868
265	'Amr b. -Layth	878
287	Tāhir b. Moḥammad b. 'Amr	900
—290		—903

[*Sāmānids*]

* See H. Sauvaise, *Sur un fez Saffāride inédit de la Collection de M. Ch. de l'Écluse (Numismatic Chronicle, 1881)* for an account of the later Ṣaffārids of Sijistān.

A.H.
261—389

54. SĀMĀNIDS

A.D.
874—999

(TRANSOXIANA AND PERSIA)

Sāmān, a Persian noble of Balkh, being aided by Asad b. 'Abd-Allāh, the governor of Khurāsān, renounced Zoroastrianism, embraced Islām, and named his son Asad after his protector. Asad's four sons all distinguished themselves in the service of the Caliph -Ma'mūn, and were rewarded about 819 (204) with provincial governments: Nūh had Samarkand; Ahmād, Farghāna; Yāhyā, Shāsh; and Ilyās, Herāt. Ahmād took the lead among his brothers, and not only succeeded Nūh at Samarkand, but incorporated Kāshghar in his dominions. His second son Ismā'il took Khurāsān from the Ṣaffārids in 903 (290), defeated Muḥammad b. Zayd the 'Alid of Tabaristān, and brought under his sway the whole territory from the Great Desert to the Persian Gulf, and from the borders of India to near Baghdaḍ. His power was most firmly established in Transoxiana, where Bukhārā and Samarkand became the centre of civilisation, learning, art, and scholarship for a large part of the Muhammādan world. His successors were weakened by rebellions in Khurāsān and Sijistān and by the growing power of

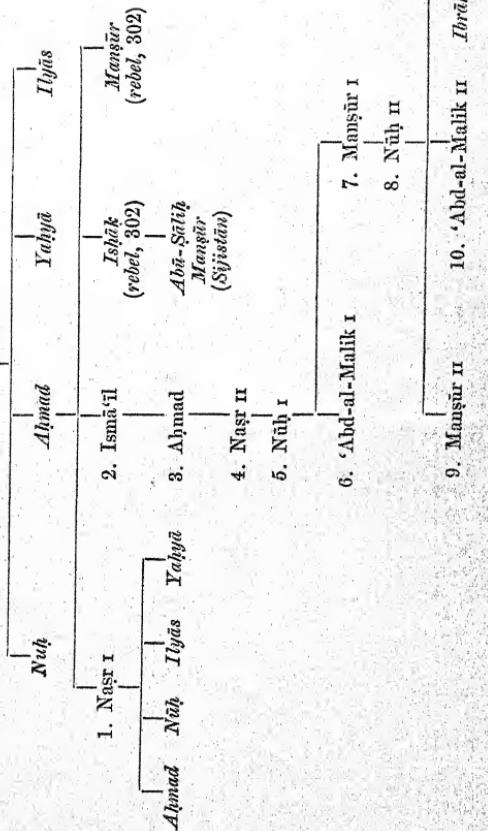
the *Buwayhids*. In half a century they were restricted to little more than Transoxiana and Khurāsān, whilst the real power fell more and more into the hands of the Turkish slaves with whom they filled their Court. One of these, Alptigīn, founded the dynasty of the *Ghaznawids*, which in 994 (384) succeeded to the Sāmānid territory south of the Oxus. North of the river their power was curtailed by the *Īlak Khāns* of Turkistān, who had acquired the leadership of the Turkish tribes from Farghāna to the borders of China, and after invading Transoxiana and taking Bukhārā in 990 (380), finally put an end to the Sāmānid dynasty in 999 (389); though Ibrāhīm -Muntaśir continued to fight for the throne till 1104 (395).

A.H.		A.D.
261	Naṣr ı b. Aḥmad	874
279	Ismā'ıl b. Aḥmad	892
295	Aḥmad b. Ismā'ıl	907
301	Naṣr ii b. Aḥmad	913
331	Nūḥ ı b. Naṣr	942
343	'Abd-al-Malik ı b. Nūḥ	954
350	Mansūr ı b. Nūḥ	961
366	Nūḥ ii b. Mansūr	976
387	Mansūr ii b. Nūḥ ii	997
389	'Abd-al-Malik ii b. Nūḥ ii	999

[*Khāns of Turkistān; Ghaznawids*]

SĀMĀNIDS

SĀMĀN

Asad

A.H.

c. 320—c. 560

A.D.

55. İLAK KHĀNS

c. 932—c. 1165

OF TURKISTĀN

The history of these Khāns is very meagrely recorded. They appear to have united the Turkish tribes east of Farghāna under their authority towards the end of the tenth century, when they had already become Muslims. Their capital was at first Kāshghar, but after the conquest of Transoxiana from the Sāmānids in 999 (389) İlak Naşr ruled his tribesmen, who roamed from the Caspian as far as the borders of China, from Bukhārā. An attempt to seize the provinces south of the Oxus was signally defeated by Maḥmūd of Ghazna in 1007 (398), and henceforward the İlak Khāns were restricted to Transoxiana, Kāshghar, and Eastern Tartary. Under their rule, many tribes established themselves in Transoxiana and were afterwards pressed forward into Persia: such as the celebrated Turkomān tribe of the *Seljūks*. The succession and chronology of the Khāns of Turkistān are exceedingly uncertain, and the following list is merely tentative.*

* From Dorn, *Inventaire des Monnaies de l'Institut des langues orientales du Ministère des Affaires Étrangères*, Appendice (Petersburg, 1881).

‘Abd-al-Karīm Satuğ

Müsā b. Satuğ

- + 383—4 Shihāb-al-dawla Hārūn Bughrā Khān b. Sulaymān
 c. 389—400 Abū-l-Hosayn Naşr ı b. ‘Alī
 c. 401—407 Kuṭb-al-dawla Abū-Naşr Aḥmad ı b. ‘Alī
 c. 403—408 Sharaf-al-dīn Tughān Khān b. ‘Alī
 Abū-l-Muẓaffar Arslān Khān ı b. ‘Alī
 † 423 Yūsuf Kadr Khān ı
 c. 421—425 Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-Shujā’ Arslān Khān ıı
 c. 425—435 Maḥmūd ı Bughrā Khān

In the West

Chaghṛatigīn

- c. 440—460 Abū-l-Muẓaffar ‘Imād-al-dawla Ibrāhīm Tuғhāj
 or Taʃkāj Khān b. Naşr
 † 472 Shams-al-Mulk Naşr ıı b. Taʃkāj
 Khiḍr Khān b. Taʃkāj
 † 488 Aḥmad Khān ıı b. Khiḍr
 † 490-5 Maḥmūd Khān ıı
 † 495 Kadr Khān ıı b. ‘Omar b. Aḥmad
 Maḥmūd Arslān Khān ııı b. Sulaymān
 Abū-l-Ma’ālī Ḥasan Tigīn b. ‘Alī
 Rukn-al-dīn Maḥmūd Khān ııı b. Arslān
 c. 558 Kılıç Taғhāj Khān b. Moḥammad
 Jalāl-al-dīn ‘Alī Gürkān b. Ḥasan Tigīn

In the East.

- 439—55 Tughril Khān b. Yūsuf Kadr Khān
 455 Tighril Tigīn b. Tughril
 455?—496 Hārūn Bughrā Khān b. Yūsuf Kadr Khān
 Nūr-al-dawla Aḥmad b. Arslān Khān

A.H.

316—434

A.D.

56. ZIYĀRID

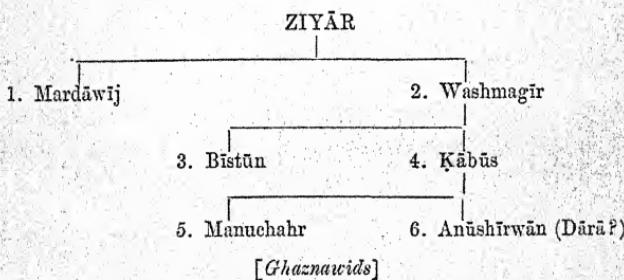
928—1042

(JURJĀN)

The southern shore of the Caspian had never been well affected to the Caliphate, and the followers of 'Ali had repeatedly established their heterodox power in these regions (see p. 127); nor were the Sāmānids more successful than the Caliphs in maintaining their authority there. Taking advantage of this, Mardāwīj b. Ziyār, descended from a long line of princes, made himself independent in Ṭabaristān and Jurjān, and even occupied Iṣpahān and Hamadhān, and pushed his forces as far as Hulwān, on the Mesopotamian frontier, between the years 928—931 (316—319). He was the patron of the Buwayhids, and gave 'Alī b. Buwayh his first appointment as governor of Karaj. Mardāwīj held his dominions as titular vassal of the 'Abbāsid Caliph: his brother and successor Washmagīr paid nominal homage to the Sāmānids as well. After the rise of the *Buwayhids* in 932 (320), the authority of the Ziyārids scarcely extended beyond the borders of Jurjān and Ṭabaristān;

and Kābūs was even exiled for 18 years (371—389) by the Buwayhid Mu'ayyid-al-dawla. On his return, however, he recovered Gilān as well as his former provinces, in which his sons succeeded him, until dispossessed by the *Ghaznawids*.

316	Mardāwīj b. Ziyār	928
323	Zahīr-al-dawla Abū-Mansūr Washmagīr	935
356	Bistūn	967
366	Shams-al-Ma'ālī Kābūs	976
403	Falak-al-Ma'ālī Manuchahr	1012
420	Anūshīrwān (Dārā?)	1029
—434		—1042



A.H.

c. 348—406

57. HASANWAYHIDS

A.D.

c. 959—1015

(KURDISTĀN)

Hasanwayh b. -Hosayn -Barzikānī was the chief of one of the Kurdish tribes which, like the Marwānids, began to make themselves prominent in the tenth century; before the middle of which he had possessed himself of a large part of Kurdistān, including the towns of Dīnawār, Hamadhān, Nahāwand, the fortress of Sarmāj, etc. His power was so considerable that the Buwayhids did not disturb him, and at his death 'Adud-al-dawla of that dynasty, after annexing his dominions, appointed Badr b. Hasanwayh as governor over his late father's province. Badr still further enhanced the dignity and authority of his family, and was decorated by the Caliph with the title of Nāṣir-al-dawla. His grandson Zāhir, who succeeded him in 1014 (405), only kept his position for a year, after which he was expelled by Shams-al-dawla the *Buwayhid*, and was shortly afterwards killed.

c. 348	Hasanwayh b. -Hosayn	c. 959
369	Nāṣir-al-din Abū-l-Najm Badr b. Hasanwayh	979
405	Zāhir b. Hilāl († 405) b. Badr	1014
—406		—1015

[*Buwayhids*]

A.H.	58. BUWAYHIDS	A.D. 932—1055
320—447		
(SOUTHERN PERSIA AND -'IRĀK)		

Buwayh, reputed to be a descendant of the ancient Kings of Persia, was the chief of a warlike clan of the highlanders of Daylam, and like most of his countrymen had taken part in the frequent wars which disturbed the provinces bordering on the Caspian. Like them, also, he had transferred his services from the Sāmānids to the rising chieftain Mardāwīj the Ziyārid about 930 (318), and his eldest son 'Alī ('Imād-al-dawla) had been granted by Mardāwīj the government of Karaj. 'Alī, with the help of troops from Daylam and Gīlān, soon extended his authority southwards, occupied Iṣpahān for a time, and annexed Arrajān 932 (320) and Nubandijān (321), whilst his brother Ḥasan (Rukn-al-dawla) drove the Arab garrison out of Kāzirūn. The two brothers then pushed on to the eastward, and joined by the third, Aḥmad (Mu'izz-al-dawla), seized Shīrāz (322). The Caliph was forced to recognize them as his lieutenants, and when Mu'izz-al-dawla, working his way westward from Kirmān,

and reducing the province of -Ahwāz (or Khūzistān), entered Baghdād itself in 945 (334), the Caliph -Mustakfi not only bestowed the honorific titles of 'Imād, Rukn, and Mu'izz al-dawla on the three brethren, but granted Mu'izz the rank and style of *Amīr-al-Umarā*, or Premier Noble, a dignity which was held by many subsequent members of the family. It is a mistake to say that they were ever given the title of *Sultān*, for they never styled themselves so on their coinage, but used the titles *Amīr* and *Malik*. Their authority, nevertheless, was as absolute as any Sultān's in Baghdād, and the Caliphs were their abject puppets, though treated with outward homage, in spite of the Buwayhids' Shi'ite proclivities. How the brothers and their descendants divided Persia and -Irāk among themselves is shown in the following tables, as well as the intricate history of the dynasty permits. Division among the princes encouraged aggression, and the wide dominions of the Buwayhids fell peacemeal to the *Ghaznawids*, *Kākwayhids*, and *Seljūks*.

I. OF FĀRS

320	'Imād-al-dawla Abū-l-Hasan 'Alī	.	.	.	932
338*	'Aḍud-al-dawla Abū-Shujā' Khusrū	.	.	.	949
372*	Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-l-Fawāris Shir Zayd	.	.	.	982
379	Şamşām-al-dawla Abū-Kālinjār -Marzubān	.	.	.	989
388*	Bahā-al-dawla (of -'Irāk)	.	.	.	998
403*	Sultān-al-dawla Abū-Shujā'	.	.	.	1012
415*	'Imād-al-dīn Abū-Kālinjār -Marzubān	.	.	.	1024
440*	Abū-Naṣr Khusrū Firuz -Rahīm	.	.	.	1048
—447					—1055

* Also ruling -'Irāk, etc., see next list.

II. OF -'IRĀK, -AHWĀZ, AND KIRMĀN

320	Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū-l-Hosayn Aḥmad	.	.	.	932
356	'Izz-al-dawla Bakhtiyār	.	.	.	967
367	Aḍud-al-dawla (of Fārs)	.	.	.	977
372	Sharaf-al-dawla (of Fārs)	.	.	.	982
379	Bahā-al-dawla Abū-Naṣr Firuz	.	.	.	989
403	Sultān-al-dawla (of Fārs)	.	.	.	1012

DIVIDED PROVINCES:

-'IRĀK

411	Musharrif-al-dawla	.	.	.	1020
416	Jalāl-al-dawla	.	.	.	1025
435	'Imād-al-dīn (of Fārs)	.	.	.	1043
440	Abū-Naṣr Khusrū Firuz (of Fārs)	.	.	.	1048
—447					—1055

KIRMĀN

403	Kawām-al-dawla Abū-l-Fawāris	.	.	.	1012
419	'Imād-al-dīn (of Fārs)	.	.	.	1028
440	Abū-Manṣūr Fullād Sattūn	.	.	.	1048
—448					—1056

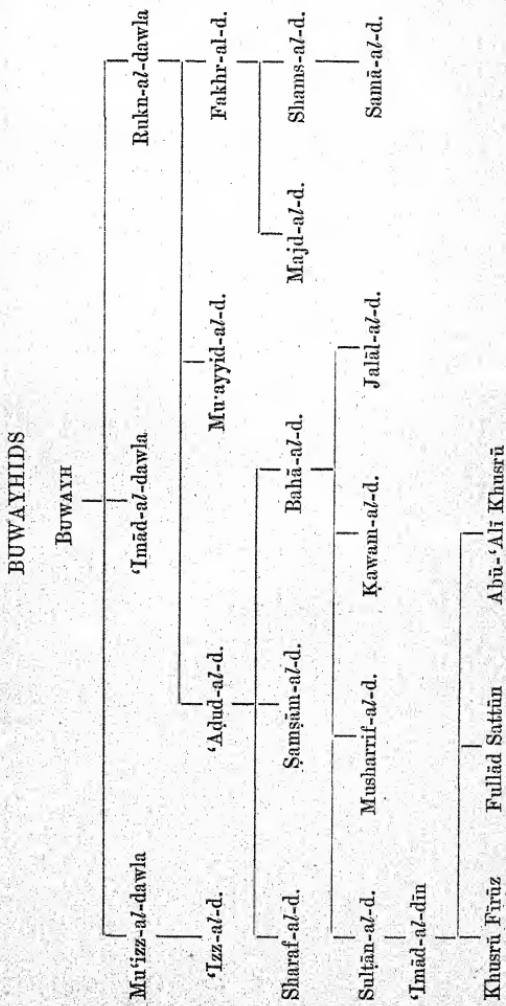
III. OF -RAYY, HAMADHĀN, AND İSPAHĀN

320	Rukn-al-dawla Abū-'Ali Ḥasan	932
366-	Mu'ayyid-al-dawla Abū-Maṣṣūr (<i>Ispahān only</i>)	976
—373		—983
366	Fakhr-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Ali (<i>adding Ispahān 873</i>)	976
387	Majd-al-dawla Abū-Tālib Rustam (<i>deposed by Maḥmūd of Ghazna</i>)	997
—420		—1029
387	Shams-al-dawla Abū-Tāhir (<i>Hamadhān only</i>)	997
c. 412	Samā-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan (<i>deposed by Ibn-Kākwayh</i>)	c. 1021
—414		—1023

[*Kākwayhids; Ghaznawids; Seljuks*]

GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION OF THE BUWAYHIDS

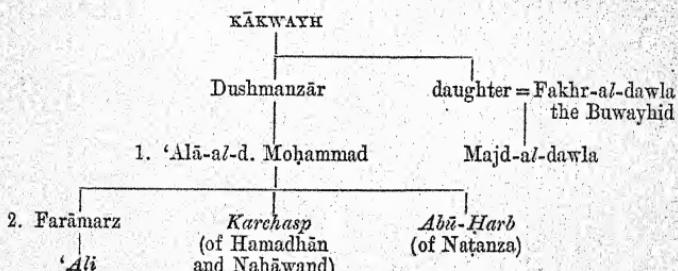
FĀRS	KIRMĀN, -'AHWAZ, -IRĀK	-RAYY, HAMADHĀN	ISPĀHĀN
320 'Imād-al-dawla	320. Mu'izz-al-dawla		320 Rukn-al-dawla
338 'Aqdud-al-dawla	356 'Izz-al-dawla		
	367 ('Aqdud)	366 Fakhr-al-dawla	366 Mu'ayyid-al-dawla
372 Sharaf-al-dawla		373	
379 Şamşām-al-dawla	379 Bahā-al-dawla		
388 (Bahā)		387 Shams-al-dawla	387 Majd-al-dawla
403 Sultān-al-dawla	(KIRMĀN) 403 Kuwām-al-d.		398 (<i>Kāk-wayhids</i>)
415 'Imād-al-dīn	411 Mu-sharrif-al-d. 416 Jalāl-al-d.	412 Samā-al-dawla	420 (<i>Ghazna-wids</i>)
	419 ('Imād)	414 (<i>Kāk-wayhids</i>)	
	435		
440 Khusrū Firūz — 447 (<i>Seljūks</i>)	440 Fullād — Sattūn 448		



A.H.		A.D.
398—443	59. KĀKWAYHIDS	1007—1051
	(KURDISTĀN)	

Mohammad b. Dushmanzār, known as Ibn-Kākwayh, was first cousin to Majd-al-dawla the Buwayhid, of Hamadhān, whose dominions he annexed by the deposition of Samā-al-dawla in 1023 (414). He had previously taken Ispahān in 1007 (398). The family continued to rule in Ispahān, Hamadhān, Yazd, Nahāwand, etc., until their conquest by the *Seljūk* Tughril Beg in 1051 (443).

A.H.		A.D.
398	‘Alā-al-dawla Abū-Ja‘far Mohammad . . .	1007
433	Zahīr-al-dīn Abū-Manṣūr Farāmarz . . .	1041
—443		—1051



[*Seljūks*]

VIII. THE SELJŪKS

SÆC. XI—XII

60. A GREAT SELJŪKS OF PERSIA

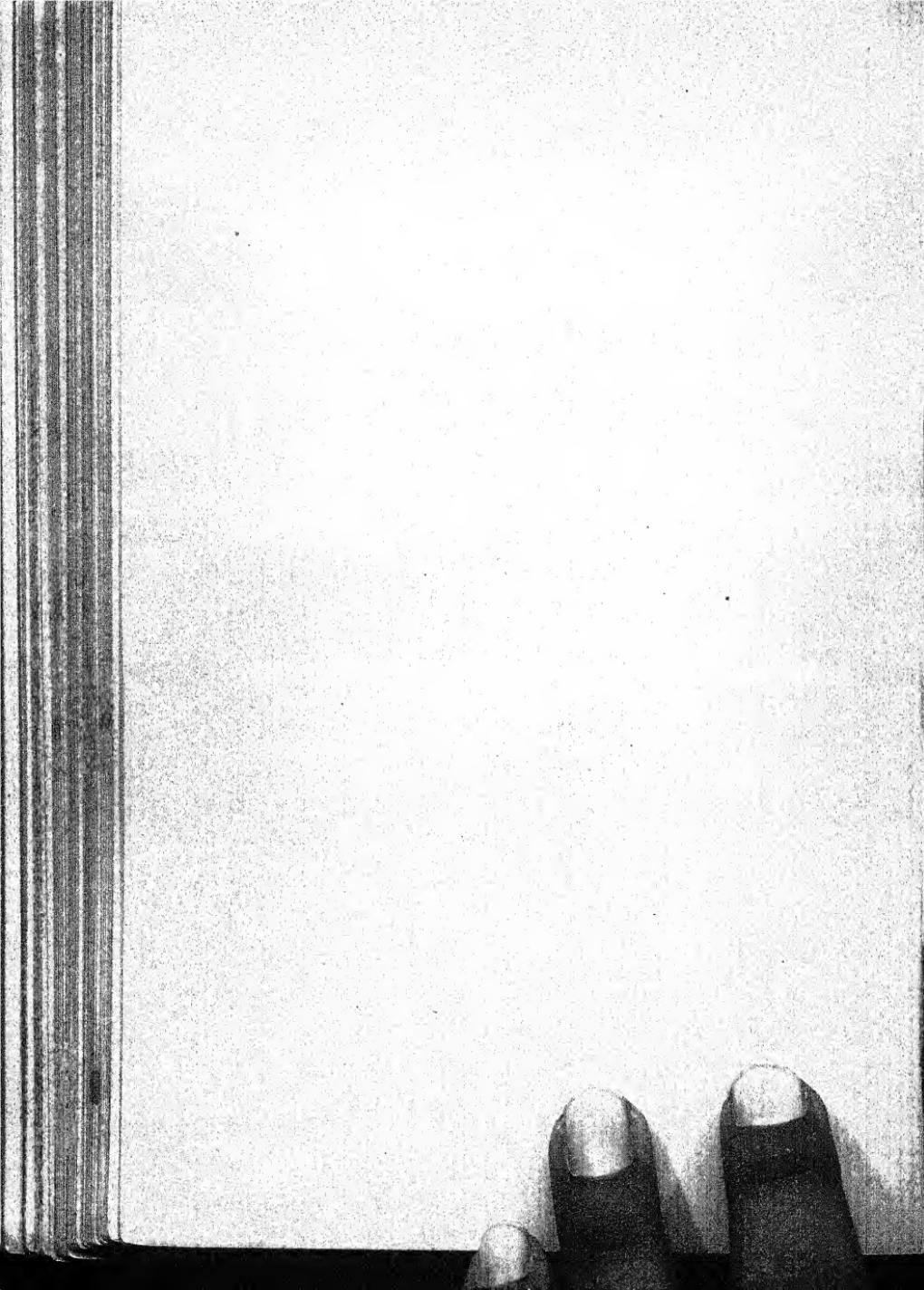
B SELJŪKS OF KIRMĀN

C SELJŪKS OF SYRIA

D SELJŪKS OF -'IRĀK

E SELJŪKS OF -RŪM

60A. DĀNISHMANDIDS (CAPPADOCIA)



A.H.

429—700

A.D.

60. THE SELJŪKS 1037—1300

(WESTERN ASIA)

The advent of the Seljūkian Turks forms a notable epoch in Moḥammadan history. At the time of their appearance the Empire of the Caliphate had vanished. What had once been a realm united under a sole Moḥammadan ruler was now a collection of scattered dynasties, not one of which, save perhaps the Fātimids of Egypt (and they were schismatics) was capable of imperial sway. Spain and Africa, including the important province of Egypt, had long been lost to the Caliphs of Baghdað; northern Syria and Mesopotamia were in the hands of turbulent Arab chiefs, some of whom had founded dynasties; Persia was split up into the numerous governments of the Buwayhid princes (whose Shi'ite opinions left little respect for the puppet Caliphs of their time), or was held by sundry insignificant dynasts, each ready to attack the other and thus contribute to the general weakness. The prevalence of

schism increased the disunion of the various provinces of the vanished Empire. A drastic remedy was needed, and it was found in the invasion of the Turks. These rude nomads, unspoilt by town life and civilised indifference to religion, embraced Islām with all the fervour of their uncouth souls. They came to the rescue of a dying State, and revived it. They swarmed over Persia, Mesopotamia, Syria, and Asia Minor, devastating the country, and exterminating every dynasty that existed there; and, as the result, they once more reunited Mohhammadan Asia, from the western frontier of Afghānistān to the Mediterranean, under one sovereign; they put a new life into the expiring zeal of the Muslims, drove back the re-encroaching Byzantines, and bred up a generation of fanatical Mohhammadan warriors, to whom, more than to anything else, the Crusaders owed their repeated failure. This it is that gives the Seljūks so important a place in Mohhammadan history.

The Seljūks, or Saljūkids, were the descendants of Seljūk b. Yakāk, a Turkomān chieftain in the service of one of the Khāns of Turkistān. Seljūk migrated from the Kirghiz steppes with all his clan to Jand in the province of Bukhārā, where he and his people enthusiastically

embraced Islām. He and his sons and grandsons took part in the wars between the Sāmānids, the Ilak Khāns, and Maḥmūd of Ghazna, and the brothers Tughril Beg and Chagar Beg eventually became strong enough to venture upon the invasion of Khurāsān at the head of their wild Turkomān tribes, and after several victories over the Ghaznawid armies succeeded in taking the chief cities. In 1037 (429) the public prayer was said in the name of Chagar Beg Dāwūd, 'King of Kings,' in the mosques of Merv, while his brother Tughril Beg was similarly proclaimed in Nayshāpūr. Balkh, Jurjān, Tabarīstān, and Khwārizm were speedily annexed; the Jibāl, Hamadhān, Dīnawār, Hulwān, -Rayy, and Iṣpahān followed (433—7), and in 1055 (447) Tughril Beg entered Baghdād itself, and had his name proclaimed as Sulṭān in the city of the Caliph.

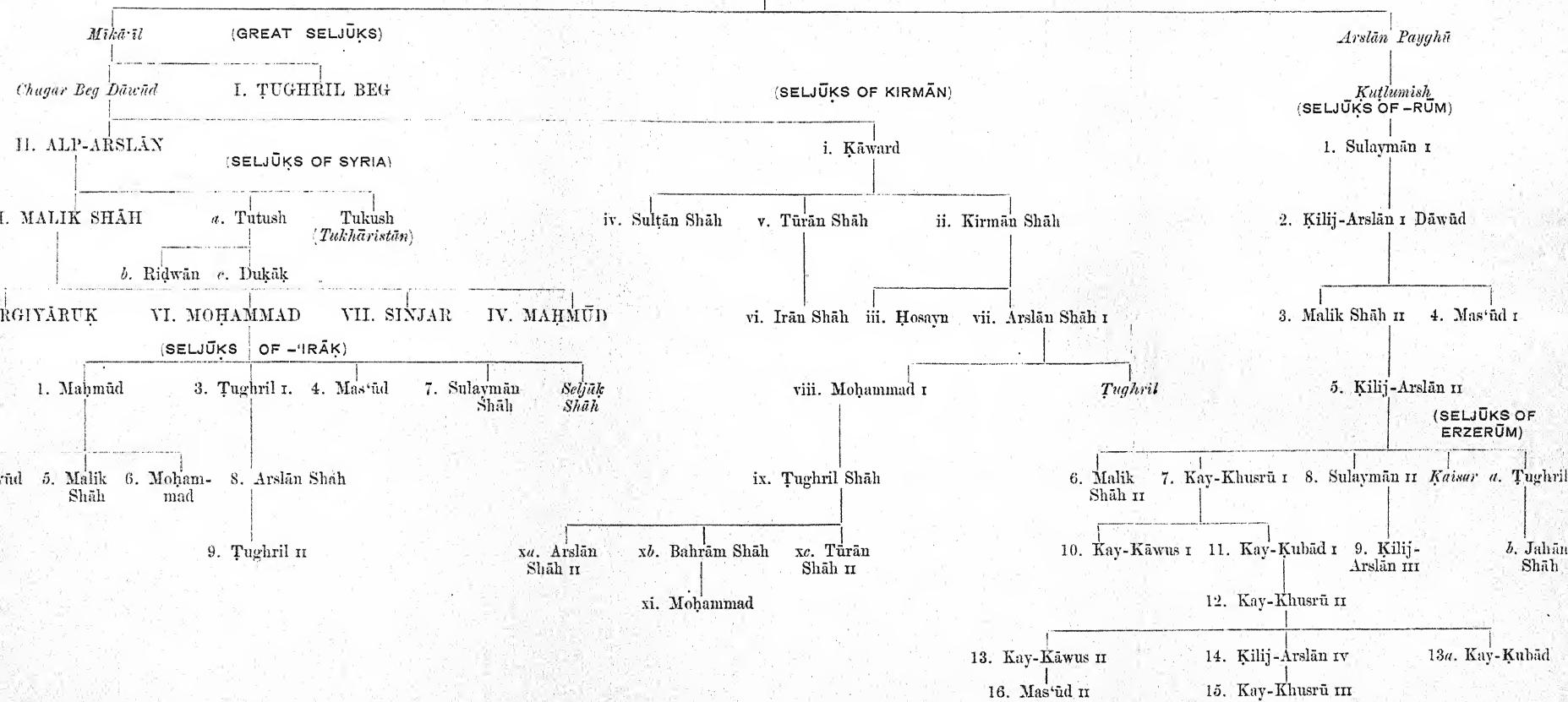
Other Turkish tribes came to swell their armies, and the whole of western Asia, from the borders of Afghānistān to the frontier of the Greek Empire in Asia Minor and of the Fātimid Caliphate of Egypt, became united under the rule of the Seljūks before 1077 (470).

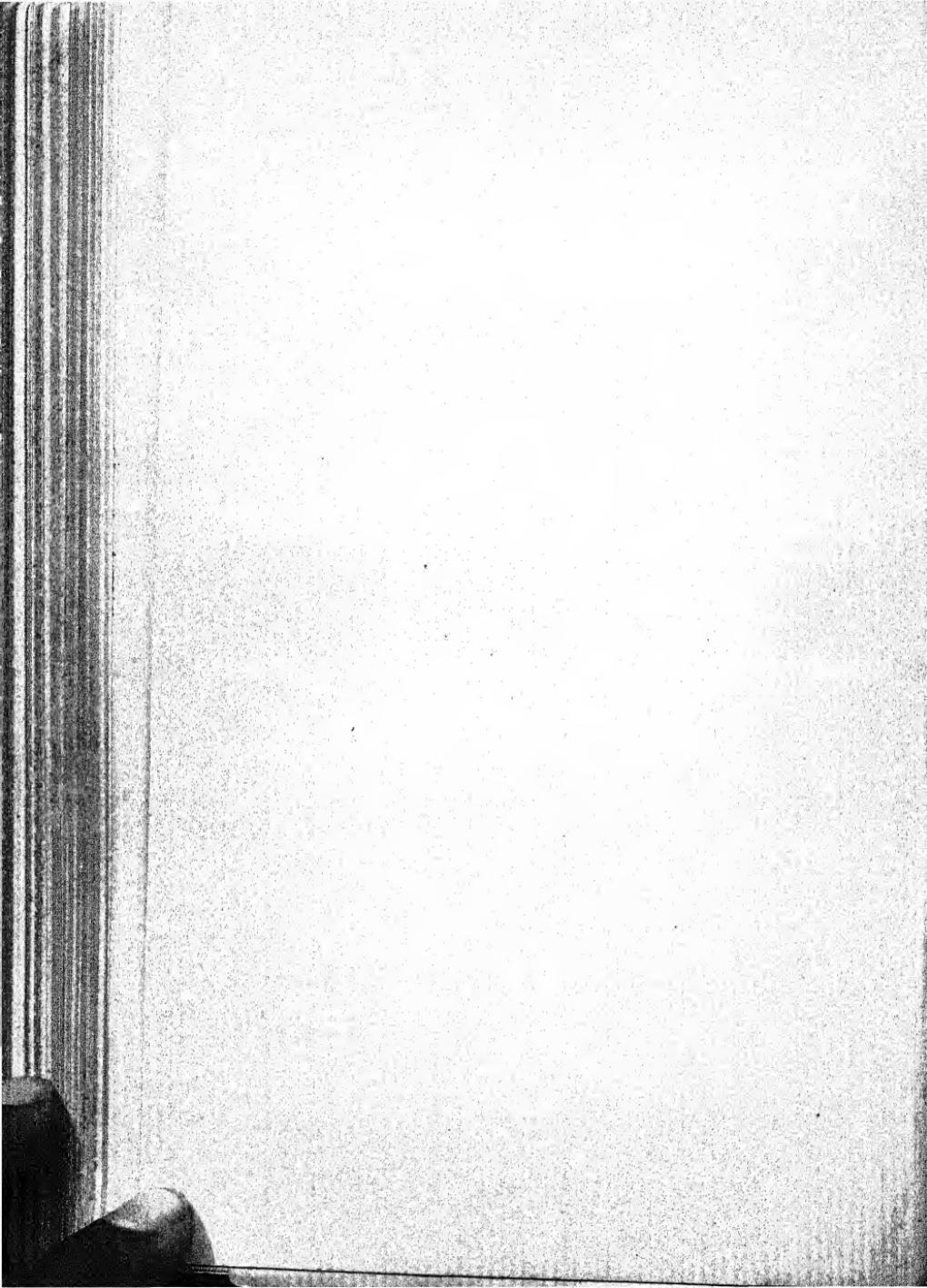
Tughril Beg, Alp-Arslān, and Malik Shāh held supreme sway over the whole of this vast Empire, but after the

death of the last, civil war sprang up between the brothers Bargiyāruk and Mohammad, and separate branches of the Seljūk family attained virtual independence in different parts of the widely scattered dominions, although the main line still preserved a nominal suzerainty down to the death of Sinjar, the last 'Great Seljūk' (whose rule was almost confined to Khurāsān) in 1157 (552). The Seljūks of Kirmān, of -Irāk, of Syria, and of -Rūm or Asia Minor, were the chief sub-divisions of the family, but individual members of it ruled in Adharbījān, Tukhāristān, and other provinces. In the East, the Seljūk empire succumbed before the attack of the Khwārizm Shāh; in Adharbījān, Fārs, Mesopotamia, and Diyār-Bakr it was supplanted by dynasties founded by Seljūk officers, or Atābegs, but in -Rūm it survived until the beginning of the power of the 'Othmānlī Turks in 1300.

(To face p. 152)

SELJŪK





A.H.	A. GREAT SELJŪKS	A.D.
429—552		1037—1157
429	Rukn-al-dīn Abū-Tālib Tughril Beg . . .	1037
455	‘Ađud-al-dīn Abū-Shujā’ Alp-Arslān . . .	1063
465	Jalāl-al-dīn Abū-l-Fatḥ Malik Shāh . . .	1072
485	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd	1092
487	Rukn-al-dīn Abū-l-Muzaffar Bargiyāruş . . .	1094
498	Malik Shāh II	1104
498*	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Abū-Shujā’ Moḥammad . . .	1104
511†	Mu‘izz-al-dīn Abū-l-Hārith Sinjar . . .	1117
—552		—1157

[*Shāhs of Khwārizm*]

A.H.	B. SELJŪKS OF KIRMĀN	A.D.
433—583		1041—1187
433	‘Imād-al-dīn Karā-Arslān Kāward Beg . . .	1041
465	Kirmān Shāh	1072
467	Hosayn	1074
467	Rukn-al-dīn Sultān Shāh	1074
477	Tūrān Shāh	1084
490	Irān Shāh	1097
494	Arslān Shāh	1100
536	Mughith-al-dīn Moḥammad I	1141
551	Muhyī-al-dīn Tughril Shāh	1156
563	Bahrām Shāh Arslān II Shāh } (rivals)	1167
583	Turkān Shāh Moḥammad II	1187

[*Ghuzz Turkomāns*]

* Moḥammad had been at open war with Bargiyāruş for many years before the latter's death.

† Sinjar had been governor of Khurāsān for twenty years before his accession as Great Seljük.

A.H.		A.D.
487—511	C. SELJŪKS OF SYRIA	1094—1117
487	Tutush b. Alp-Arslān	1094
488	Riḍwān b. Tutush (<i>at Aleppo</i>)	1095
	(Dukāk b. Tutush <i>at Damascus</i> 488—497)	
507	Alp-Arslān -Akhras b. Riḍwān	1113
508	Sultān Shāh b. Riḍwān	1114
—511		—1117

[*Būrids, Ortukids*]

A.H.		A.D.
511—590	D. SELJŪKS OF -'IRĀK AND KURDISTĀN	1117—1194
511	Mughith-al-dīn Maḥmūd	1117
525	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Dāwūd	1131
526	Tughril I	1132
527	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Maṣ'ūd	1133
547	Mu'īn-al-dīn Malik Shāh	1152
548	Mohammad	1153
554	Sulaymān Shāh	1159
556	Arslān Shāh	1161
573	Tughril II	1177
—590		—1194

[*Shāhs of Khurāizm*]

A.H.	E. SELJŪKS OF -RŪM (ASIA MINOR)	A.D.
470—700		1077—1300
470	Sulaymān I b. Kuṭlumish	1077
479	<i>Interregnum</i>	1086
485	Kilij-Arslān Dāwūd	1092
500	Malik Shāh I	1106
510	Mas'ūd I	1116
551*	'Izz-al-dīn Kilij-Arslān II	1156
584	Kuṭb-al-dīn Malik Shāh II	1188
588	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū I	1192
597	Rukn-al-dīn Sulaymān II	1200
600	Kilij-Arslān III	1203
601	Kay-Khusrū I <i>restored</i>	1204
607	'Izz-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus I	1210
616	'Alā-al-dīn Kay-Kubād I	1219
634	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū II	1236
643	'Izz-al-dīn Kay-Kāwus II†	1245
655	Rukn-al-dīn Kilij-Arslān IV	1257
666	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Kay-Khusrū III	1267
682	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Mas'ūd II‡	1283
696	'Alā-al-dīn Kay-Kubād II	1296
—700		—1300

[*Mongols, 'Othmānlī Turks, etc.*]

* Kilij-Arslān survived till 588, but divided his dominions among his sons some years earlier.

† In conjunction with his brothers Kilij-Arslān III and Kay-Kubād.

‡ Mas'ūd was allowed by the Mongol Abāgā to govern Siwās, Arzājnān and Erzerūm, from the death of his father Kay-Kāwus in 677, during the nominal sovereignty of his cousin Kay-Khusrū III, whom he succeeded in 682. Mas'ūd appears to have been restored to his kingdom on the deposition of his nephew Kay-Kubād in 700, and to have reigned for four years; but the last four Seljūks were merely governors under the Mongols of Persia.

A.H.

A.D.

c 490—560 60^{A.} DĀNISHMANDIDS c 1097—1165
 (SĪWĀS, CAESAREA, MALATĪA)

Whilst the Seljūks were extending their empire in Asia Minor, another Turkish chief, Gumişhtigīn, son of Dānishmand, established his power in Cappadocia over the cities of Sīwās (Sebaste), Kāyṣāriya (Caesarea), and Malaṭiya (Melitene), near which last place he inflicted a sanguinary defeat upon the Franks. His successors played a distinguished part in the wars of the Crusades, but the dynasty was soon absorbed in its greater Seljūk neighbour.

A.H.		A.D.
	Mohammad I Gumişhtigīn b. Tilū Dānishmand	
499	Ghāzī b. Gumişhtigīn	1105
529	Mohammad II. b. Ghāzī	1134
537	Dhū-l-Nān b. Mohammad II	1142
	Yaghi (or Ya'kūb) Arslān b. Ghāzī	
560	Ibrāhīm b. Mohammad II	1165

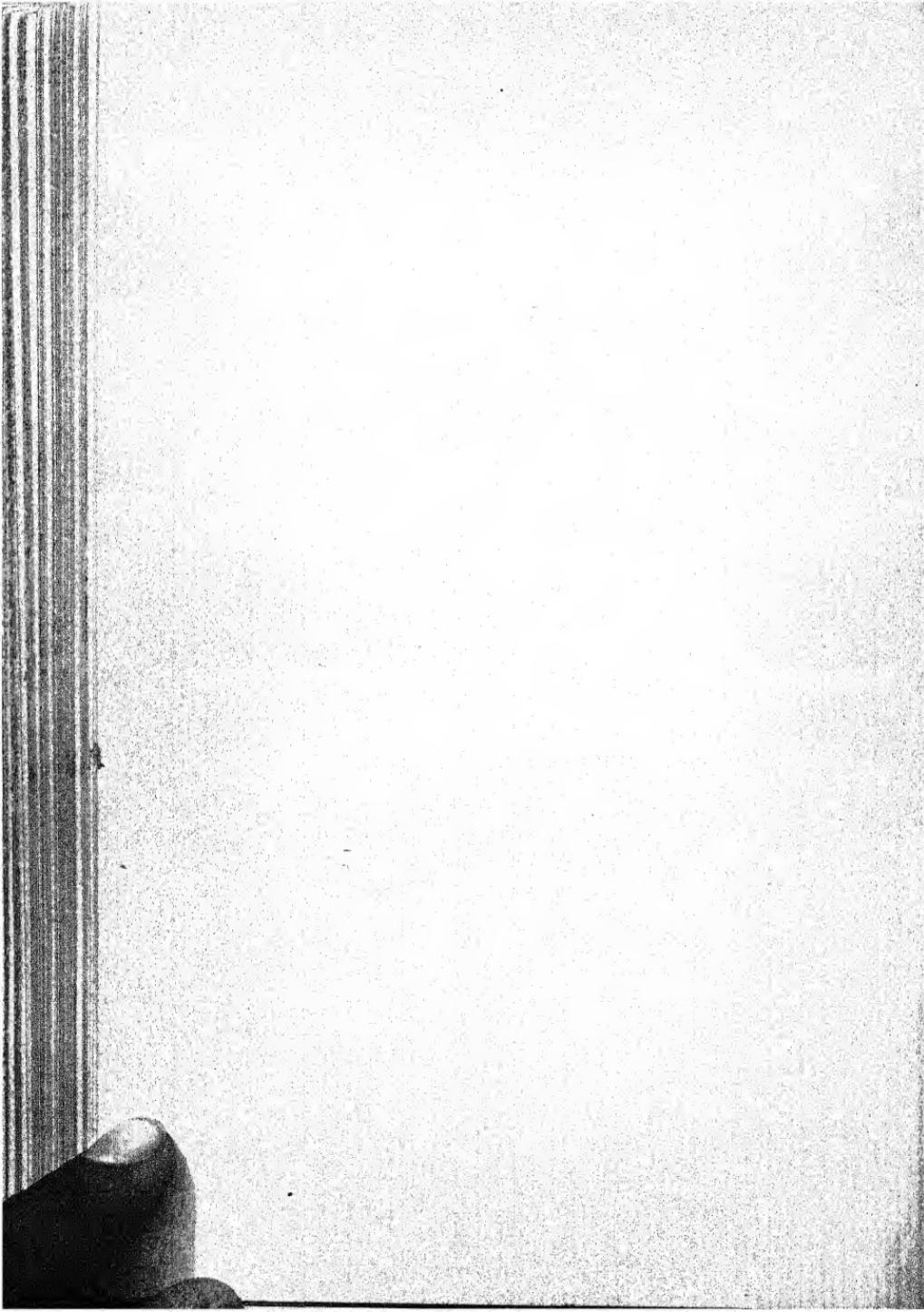
[Seljūks of -Rām]

IX. THE ATĀBEGS

(SELJŪK OFFICERS)

SEC. XII—XIII

- | | | |
|-------|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| 61. | BŪRID S | ATĀBEGS OF DAMASCUS |
| 62. A | ZANGIDS | " " -MOSIL |
| B | " | " " ALEPPO |
| C | " | " " SINJĀR |
| D | " | " " -JAZĪRA |
| 63. | BEGTIGĪNIDS | " " ARBELA |
| 64. A | ORTUKIDS OF KAYFĀ | |
| B | " " MĀRIDĪN | |
| 65. | SHĀHS OF ARMENIA | |
| 66. | ATĀBEGS OF ADHARBĪJĀN | |
| 67. | SALGHARIDS, ATĀBEGS OF FĀRIS | |
| 68. | HAZĀRASPIDS, ATĀBEGS OF LŪRISTĀN | |
| 69. | SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM | |
| 70. | KUTLUGH KHĀNS OF KIRMĀN | |



IX. THE ATĀBEGS

(SELJŪK OFFICERS)

S.EC. XII—XIII

The Seljūk Empire was a military power, and the army on which it depended was commanded by Turkish slaves. Free men could not be trusted with the highest commands or the rule of distant provinces; it was necessary to rely on the fidelity of purchased slaves brought up at the court in close relations with the Seljūk princes. Every Seljūk had a following of mamlūks, generally brought from Kipchak, who filled the chief offices of the court and camp, and eventually won their manumission by hard service. The inevitable result of this system was the supplanting of the senile master by the virile slave. As the Seljūks grew weak and their empire broke up into sub-divisions, their mamlūks, who had fought their battles for them, became the guardians or regents (Atābegs) of their youthful heirs,

and speedily exchanged the delegated function for the privileges of sovereignty. In this way Tughtigin, a mamlük of the Seljük Tutush, was appointed Atābeg over his youthful heir Duğāk, and on his death assumed full sovereign powers at Damascus. 'Imād-al-dīn Zangi, founder of the Atābegs of -Mōṣil and Aleppo, etc., was the son of a slave of the third Seljük Sultān Malik Shāh; the Adharbijān Atābegs sprang from a Kipchak mamlük of Mas'ūd the Seljük Sultān of -Irāk; Anushtigin, ancestor of the Khwārizm Shāhs, was cupbearer to Sultān Malik Shāh; Ortuk and Salghar, founders of dynasties in Diyār-Bakr and Fārs, were Seljük officers; and the Begtigīnids, Hazāraspids, and Kutlugh Khāns were officers of the slaves of the Seljūks. In the twelfth century the whole Seljük empire, save Anatolia, was in the hands of these captains of their hosts, who form a distinct group of dynasties.

A.H.
497—549

61. BŪRID

A.D.
1103—1154

(ATĀBEGS OF DAMASCUS)

Tughtigīn—one of the numerous officers who held command in the Seljūk armies, became Atābegs or regents of the younger Seljūk princes, and eventually usurped their power—was an enfranchised mamlük of Sultān Tutush, and afterwards, 1095 (488), was appointed Atābeg of his son Duķāk, the Seljūk prince of Damascus, whom he succeeded.

A.H.		A.D.
497	Sayf-al-Islām Zahīr-al-dīn Tughtigīn . . .	1103
522	Tāj-al-Mulūk Büri	1128
526	Shams-al-Mulūk Ismā'il	1132
529	Shihāb-al-dīn Maḥmūd	1134
533	Jamāl-al-dīn Muḥammad	1138
534	Mujir-al-dīn Abāk (or Anaz, † 564) . . .	1139
—549		—1154

[Zangids]

1. Tughtigīn



A.H.	62. ZANGIDS	A.D. 1127—1250
521—648		

(ATĀBEGS OF MESOPOTAMIA AND SYRIA)

The Atābeg 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī was the son of Āksunkur the Hājib (chamberlain), a Turkish slave of Malik Shāh, and from 1085 to 1094 (478–487) lieutenant of Tutush at Aleppo, against whom he rebelled, and was slain. Zangī was appointed governor of -'Irāk, including Baghdād, in 1127 (521), and in the same year annexed -Mōṣil, Sinjār, -Jazīra and Harrān, and then Aleppo (522) and other Syrian cities. He especially distinguished himself as the champion of the Muslims against the Crusaders, and was the true forerunner of Saladin. On his death his dominions were divided between his sons Nūr-al-dīn Maḥmūd, another famous anti-crusader, who held Syria, and Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī, who ruled in -Mōṣil and Mesopotamia. In the next generation the Syrian branch died out; but a new offshoot had been established at Sinjār; whilst a fourth sub-dynasty sprang up somewhat later at -Jazīra. The Sinjār line gave place to the Ayyūbids in 1221 (618); the others came under the rule of Lu'lū, the slave and vezir of the last of the -Mōṣil Zangids, until all were absorbed in the empire of the *Mongols*.

A.H.		A.D.
521—631	A. ATĀBEGS OF -MŌŞIL	1127—1234
521	'Imād-al-dīn Zangī (<i>with Aleppo</i>)	1127
541	Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī I	1146
544	Kuṭb-al-dīn Mōdūd	1149
565	Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzī II	1169
576	'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd I	1180
589	Nūr-al-dīn Arslān Shāh I	1193
607	'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ūd II	1210
615	Nūr-al-dīn Arslān Shāh II	1218
616	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd	1219
631	Badr-al-dīn Lu'lū'	1233
657	Ismā'il b. Lu'lū'	1259
—660.	[<i>Mongols</i>]	—1262
541—577	B. ATĀBEGS OF SYRIA	1146—1181
541	Nūr-al-dīn Maḥmūd b. Zangī	1146
569	-Şāliḥ Ismā'il	1173
—577		—1181
	[<i>Atābegs of -Mōşil and Sinjār, 577; then Ayyūbids, 579</i>]	
566—617	C. ATĀBEGS OF SINJĀR	1170—1220
566	'Imād-al-dīn Zangī b. Mōdūd	1170
594	Kuṭb-al-dīn Muḥammad	1197
616	'Imād-al-dīn Shāhānshāh	1219
616	Maḥmūd (<i>or 'Omar</i>)	1219
—617	[<i>Ayyūbids</i>]	—1220
576—648	D. ATĀBEGS OF -JAZĪRA	1180—1250
576	Mu'izz-al-dīn Sinjār Shāh	1180
605	Mu'izz-al-dīn Maḥmūd	1208
6xx	-Mas'ūd	12xx
—648	[<i>Ayyūbids</i>]	—1250

A.H.	A.D.
539—630	63. BEGTIGİNIDS 1144—1232
(ATĀBEGS OF ARBELA, ETC.)	

In 1144 (589) 'Imād-al-dīn Zangī appointed one of his Turkish officers, Zayn-al-dīn 'Alī Kūchuk b. Begtigīn, to be his viceroy at -Mōṣil, and in 1149 (544) placed Sinjār and afterwards Harrān, Takrit, Irbil (Arbela), etc., under his authority. On Zayn-al-dīn's death at Irbil in 1167 (563), his elder son Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkburi fled to Harrān, whilst Irbil passed to the younger son Zayn-al-dīn Yūsuf, under the tutorship of the Amīr Mujāhid-al-dīn Kā-imāz. On Yūsuf's death in 1190 (586), Saladin, who then exercised supreme influence over Syria and Mesopotamia, appointed Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkburi as his brother's successor at Irbil and Shahrazūr, but gave his former governments of Harrān, -Ruhā (Edessa) and Su-maysāṭ to his own nephew Taḳī-al-dīn 'Omar. Kūkburi died in 1232 (630), and being without sons bequeathed Irbil to the 'Abbāsid Caliph.

539	Zayn-al-dīn 'Alī Kūchuk b. Begtigīn . . .	1144
563	Zayn-al-dīn Yūsuf b. 'Alī (at Irbil) † 586 .	1167
563	Muẓaffar-al-dīn Kūkburi b. 'Alī (at Harrān).	1167
586	" " " " " (at Irbil)	1190
—630		—1232

[*'Abbāsids; then Mongols*]

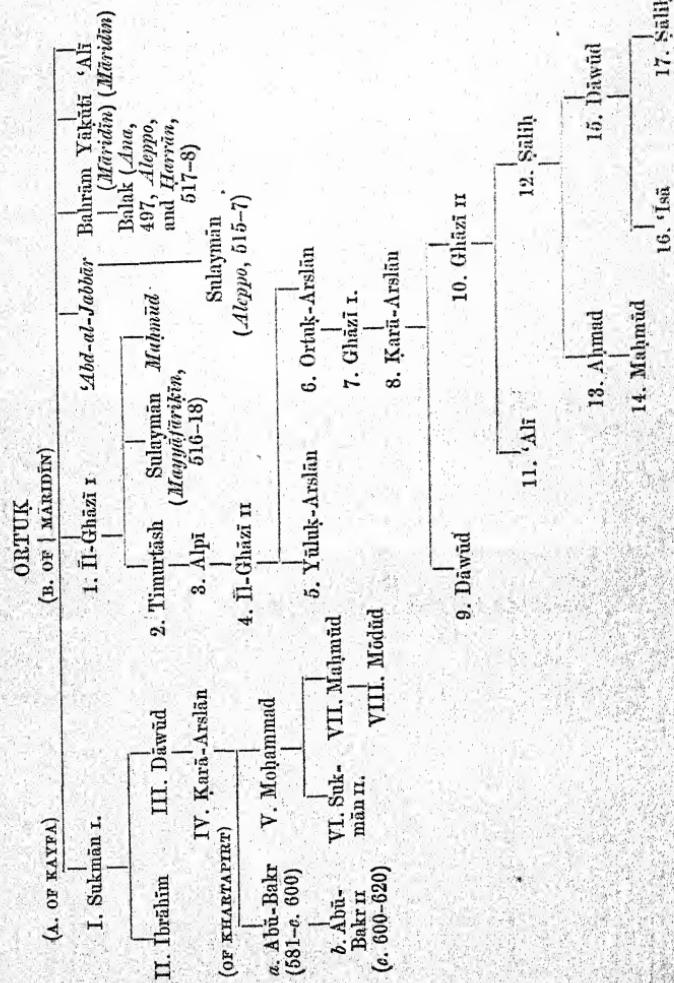
A.H.	64. ORTUKIDS	A.D.
495—712	(DIYĀR-BAKR)	1101—1312

Ortuk b. Aksab, the founder of this dynasty, was a Turkomān officer in the Seljūk armies, and was appointed governor of Jerusalem when the Holy City was conquered by his commander Tutush the Seljūk Sultān of Damascus. Ortuk's sons Sukmān and Ȧl-Ghāzī, both famous in the wars with the Latin princes of Palestine succeeded to their father's post in 1091 (484), until the city was annexed by the Fātimid Caliph in 1096 (489), when they retired to Edessa (-Ruhā) and -'Irāk respectively. In 1101 (495) Ȧl-Ghāzī was appointed prefect of Baghdād by the Seljūk Sultān Mohammad, and in the same year Sukmān was made governor of Ḥiṣn Kayfā in Diyār-Bakr, to which he added Māridīn a year or two later. In 1108 (502), however, Māridīn was transferred to his brother Ȧl-Ghāzī, and henceforward there were two collateral lines of Ortukids, at Kayfā and at Māridīn. The Kayfā branch, after the warlike exploits of Sukmān against Baldwin and Jocelin, settled down into tranquil obscurity, hastened to

pay homage to Saladin, when his power became threatening, and were rewarded with the addition of the city of Āmid to their territory in 1183 (579), until their line was suppressed by the *Ayyūbid* -Kāmil in 1231 (629). A minor branch of the Kayfā family governed Khartapirt (Quart-Pierre) in Diyār-Bakr from 1127 (521) to 1223 (620). Īl-Ghāzī, the founder of the Māridīn line, and one of the most redoubtable of Muslim warriors against the Crusaders, gained possession of Aleppo in 1117 (511), and in 1121 (515) was also invested with the government of Mayyāfārikīn (in Diyār-Bakr) by the Seljūk Sultān Maḥmūd. Māridīn and Mayyāfārikīn continued to be held by his descendants, the latter until 1184 (580), the former until their submission to Tīmūr and absorption by the Karā-Kuyunlī in 1408 (811); but the Māridīn Amīrs ceased to be of importance after the Ayyūbid supremacy was established in Syria and Mesopotamia. Aleppo fell 1123 (517) to another Ortukid chief, Balak b. Bahrām, who had also held Āna (497) and Khartapirt (515), and was a prominent leader in the wars with the Crusaders.

A.H.		A. ORTUKIDS OF KAYFĀ	A.D.
495—629			1101—1231
495	Mu'in-al-dawla Sukmān I	.	1101
498	Ibrāhim	.	1104
c. 502	Rukn-al-dawla Dāwūd	.	1108
c. 543	Fakhr-al-din Karā-Arslān	.	1148
570	Nūr-al-din Mōhammad	.	1174
581	Kuṭb-al-din Sukmān II	.	1185
597	Nāṣir-al-din Maḥmūd	.	1200
619	Rukn-al-din Mōdūd	.	1222
—629	[Ayyūbids]		—1231

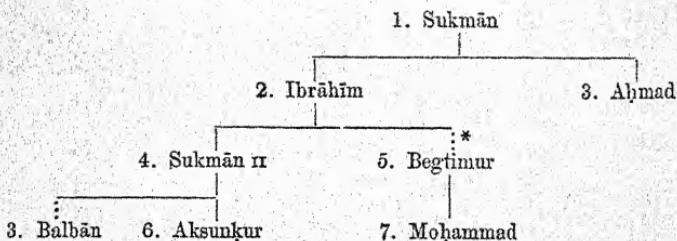
A.H.		B. ORTUKIDS OF MĀRIDĪN	A.D.
502—712			1108—1312
502	Najm-al-din İl-Ghāzī	.	1108
516	Husām-al-din Timurtāsh	.	1122
547	Najm-al-din Alpī	.	1152
572	Kuṭb-al-din İl-Ghāzī	.	1176
580	Husām-al-din Yūluk-Arslān	.	1184
c. 597	Nasîr-al-din Ortuk-Arslān -Maṇṣūr	.	1200
637	Najm-al-din Ghāzī I -Sa'īd	.	1239
658	Karā-Arslān -Muẓaffar	.	1260
c. 691	Shams-al-din Dāwūd	.	1292
693	Najm-al-din Ghāzī II -Maṇṣūr	.	1294
712	'Imād-al-din 'Alī Alpī -'Ādil	.	1312
712	Shams-al-din Şalih	.	1312
765	Aḥmad -Maṇṣūr	.	1363
769	Maḥmūd -Şalih	.	1367
769	Dāwūd -Muẓaffar	.	1367
778	Majd-al-din 'Isā -Zāhir	.	1376
809	Şalih	.	1406
—811	[Kara Küyunlu]		—1408



A.H. A.D.
493—604 65. SHĀHS OF ARMENIA 1100—1207

Sukmān -Kuṭbī, so called because he was once the slave of Kuṭb-al-dīn Ismā'īl, the Seljūk governor of Marand in Adharbījān, wrested the town of -Khalāt in Armenia from the Marwānids in 1100 (493), and his descendants and their mamlūks continued to govern this region for a century until their conquest by the *Ayyūbids* in 1207.

A.H.		A.D.
493	Sukmān -Kuṭbī	1100
506	Zāhir-al-dīn Ibrāhīm Shāh-Arman	1112
521	Alīmad	1127
522	Nāṣir-al-dīn Sukmān II	1128
579	Sayf-al-dīn Begtimur	1183
589	Badr-al-dīn Āksunkur	1193
594	-Mansūr Muḥammad	1198
603	'Izz-al-dīn Balbān	1206
—604		—1207



[Ayyūbids]

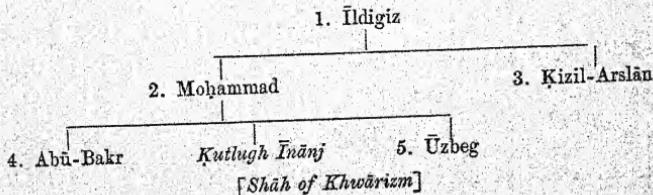
* Dotted lines indicate the relationship between master and slave.

A.H. A.D.
531—622 66. ATĀBEGS OF
 ADHARBĪJĀN

1136—1225

İldigiz, a Turkish slave from Kipchak, rose in favour at the court of Mas'ūd, the Seljuk Sultan of -'Irāk, and was finally granted the government of Adharbijān, together with the Sultan's widowed sister-in-law. His son Mohammad was the virtual ruler of the Seljuk kingdom of -'Irāk as well as of his own province. Mohammad's brother Kizil-Arslān, who had acted as his deputy in Adharbijān, succeeded to his authority, and was created *Amīr-al-Umarā*; but on his claiming sovereign rights, he was assassinated, and his two nephews, who followed him, moderated their ambition.

A.H.		A.D.
581	Shams-al-din İldigiz	1136
568	Mohammad -Pahlawān Jahān	1172
581	Kizil-Arslān 'Othmān	1185
587	Abū-Bakr	1191
607	Muzaffar-al-dīn Üzbeg	1210
—622		—1225



A.H.

543—686

A.D.

67. SALGHARIDS

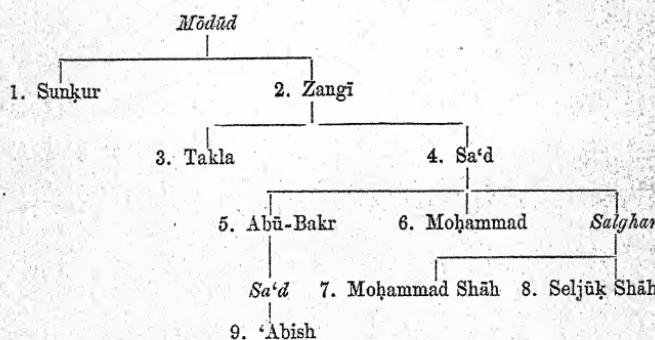
1148—1287

(ATĀBEGS OF FĀRIS)

Salghar was the chief of a band of Turkomāns who migrated into Khurāsān, and after a career of rapine attached themselves to the Seljük Tughril Beg, who appointed Salghar one of his chamberlains. One of his descendants, Sunkur b. Mōdūd, made himself master of the province of Fārs in 1148 (543), and founded a dynasty which lasted nearly a century and a half. Atābeg Sa'd became tributary to the Shāh of Khwārizm, to whom he surrendered Iştakhr and Ashkūrān; and Atābeg Abū-Bakr, in his turn, paid homage to Ogotai Khān the Mongol, and was rewarded with the title of Kutlugh Khān. The later Atābegs were merely vassals of the *Mongols of Persia*, and the last of them, the princess 'Abish, was the wife of Mangū-Timūr, a son of Hūlāgū. The poet Sa'dī lived at the court of the Atābeg Abū-Bakr.

A.H.									A.D.
543	Sunkur*	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1148
557	Zangi	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1162
571	Takla	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1175
591	Sa'd	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1195
623	Abū-Bakr	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1226
658	Mohammad	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1260
660	Mohammad Shāh	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1262
660	Seljūk Shāh	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1262
662	'Abish	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1263
—686									—1287

[Mongols]



* Most of the Salgharids used the title Muẓaffar-al-dīn.

A.H.	68. HAZĀRASPIDS	A.D.
543—740		1148—1339

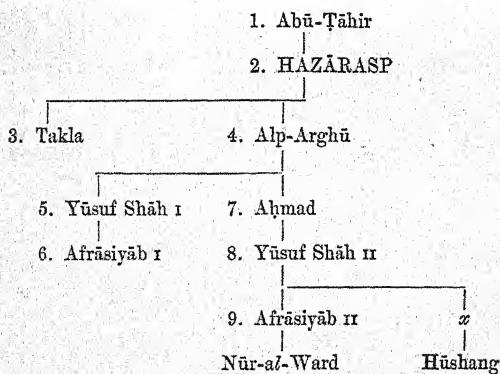
(ATĀBEGS OF LŪRISTĀN)

The founder of this line was Abū-Ṭāhir, a general who was sent by the Salgharid Atābeg to reduce the Greater Lūristān in 1148 (543). This original territory was augmented by a grant of the province of Khūzistān by the Mongol Abūgā. The Atābeg Afrāsiyāb I seized Iṣpahān on the death of Arghūn, but was speedily punished. This petty dynasty continued to rule till about 1339 (740). Many of the dates are uncertain. Their capital was Īdaj; but Yūsuf Shāh II is recorded to have annexed Shūstar, Ḥuwayza, and -Baṣra. There was also another petty dynasty of Atābegs, who governed the *Lesser* Lūristān from the end of the 12th to the 16th century.*

* For both dynasties see Sir Henry Howorth's *History of the Mongols*, Part III. pp. 140, 406, 751-6.

A.H.						A.D.
543	Abū-Tāhir b. Mōhammād	.	.	.	.	1148
c. 600	Naṣrat-az-dīn Hazārasp	.	.	.	.	c. 1203
c. 650	Takla	.	.	.	.	c. 1252
c. 657	Shams-az-dīn Alp-Ārghū	.	.	.	.	c. 1259
c. 673	Yūsuf Shāh I	.	.	.	.	c. 1274
c. 687	Afrāsiyāb I	.	.	.	.	1288
696	Naṣrat-az-dīn Aḥmad	.	.	.	.	1296
733	Rukn-az-dīn Yūsuf Shāh II	.	.	.	.	1333
740	Muẓaffar-az-dīn Afrāsiyāb II	.	.	.	.	1339
756	Shams-az-dīn Hūshang (<i>or Nūr-al-Ward</i>)	.	.	.	.	1355
c. 780	Aḥmad	.	.	.	.	c. 1378
c. 815	Abū-Sa'īd	.	.	.	.	1408
c. 820	Hosayn	.	.	.	.	c. 1417
827	Ghiyāth-az-dīn	.	.	.	.	1423

Expelled by Ibrāhīm b. Shāh Rukh



[*Timūrids*]

A.H.

A.D.

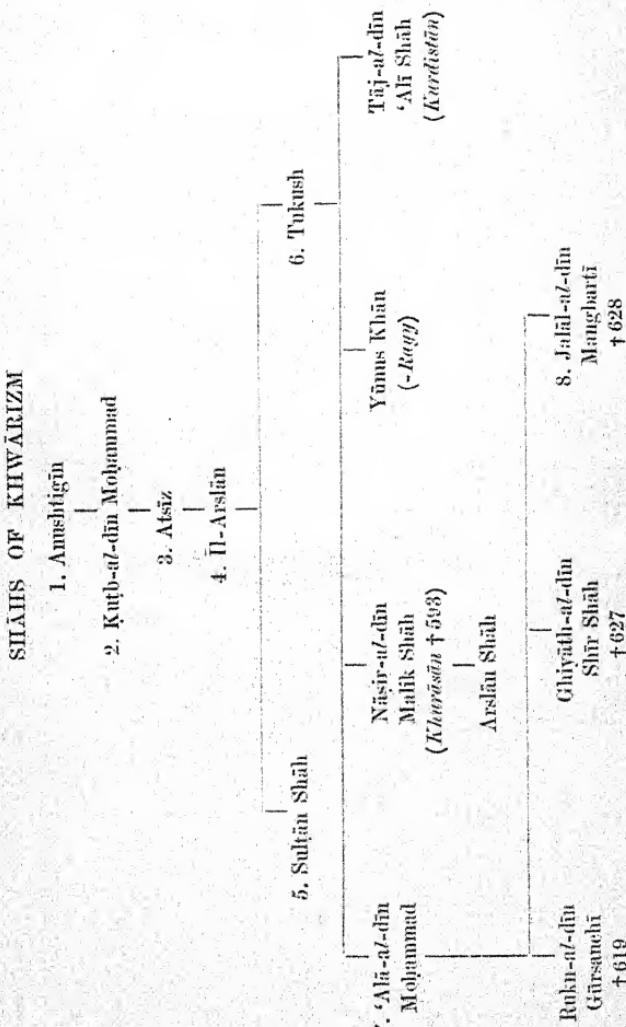
c. 470—628 69. SHĀHS OF KHWĀRIZM 1077—1231

A Turkish slave of Balkātigīn of Ghazna, named Anush-tigīn, rose to be the cup-bearer of the Seljūk Sultān Malik Shāh, who made him governor of Khwārizm (Khiva), a post to which his son succeeded with the title of *Khwārizm Shāh*. Atsīz was the first of the line to show any ambition for independence, but his revolt in 1138 (533) was punished by his expulsion from Khwārizm by Sultān Sinjar. Atsīz, however, shortly returned, and henceforward the Khwārizm Shāhs enjoyed sovereign power. Atsīz extended his authority as far as Jand on the River Sīhūn (Jaxartes). Tukush added Khurāsān, -Rayy and Iṣpahān to his dominions 1193–4 (589–590), and his son, the celebrated ‘Alā-al-dīn Mohammad, after a stubborn war with the *Ghūrīds* in Khurāsān, reduced the greater part of Persia by the year 1210 (607), subdued Bukhārā and Samarkānd, and invading the territory of the Gūr-Khān of Karā-Khitay, seized his capital Otrār. In 1214 (611) he entered Afghānistān and took Ghazna, and then, having adopted

the 'Alid heresy (614) prepared to put an end to the 'Abbāsid Caliphate. His career of conquest was suddenly cut short by the appearance of the Mongol hordes of Chingiz Khān on his northern borders. Mōhammad fled incontinently before this appalling swarm, and died in despair on an island of the Caspian Sea, 1220 (617). His three sons wandered for some time through the provinces of Persia, and one of them, Jalāl-al-dīn, even visited India for two years; but after a decade of stirring adventures, during which he contrived to hold Adharbījān from 622-8, he was finally banished by the Mongols in 1231 (628). At one time the rule of the Khwārizm Shāh was almost conterminous with the Seljūk empire, but this period of widest extent scarcely lasted a dozen years.

A.H.		A.D.
c. 470	Anushtigīn	c. 1077
490	Kutb-al-dīn Mōhammad	1097
521	Atsīz	1127
551	Īl-Arslān	1156
568	Sultān Shāh Maḥmūd († 589)	1172
568	Tukush	1172
596	'Alā-al-dīn Mōhammad	1199
617	Jalāl-al-dīn Mangbarti	1220
—628		—1231

[Mongols]



A.H.	70. KUTLUGH KHĀNS	A.H.
619—703		1222—1303
	(KIRMĀN)	

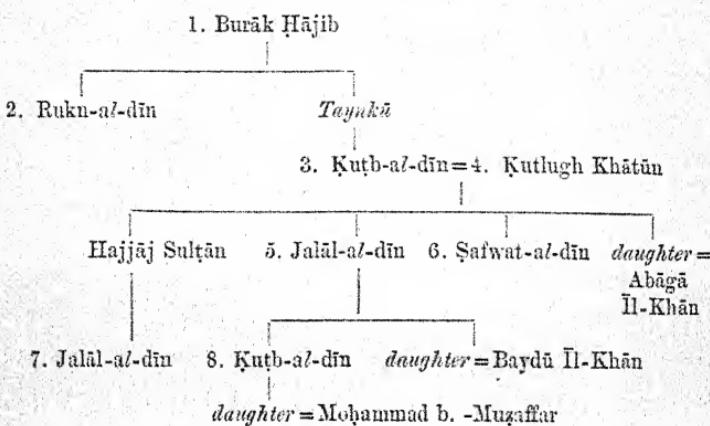
Burāk Hājib, a native of Karā-Khitay, and an officer of 'Alā-al-dīn the Khwārizm Shāh, succeeding in establishing his power in Kirmān in 1222 (619), during the period of anarchy which followed the overthrow of the Khwārizm Shāh by Chingiz Khān; and his authority was confirmed by the Mongol Ogotāy, who conferred upon him the title of *Kutlugh Khān*. The dynasty kept within the limits of Kirmān, and were loyal vassals of the *Mongols of Persia*, two of whom married daughters of the family. The daughter of the last of the line married Mohammad the *Muzaffarid* of Fārs.

A.H.	A.D.
619	Burāk Hājib Kutlugh Khān
632	Rukn-al-dīn Khōyat-al-Hakk
650	Kutb-al-dīn Mohammad
655	Kutlugh Khātūn (<i>widow of preceding</i>)*.
681	Jalāl-al-dīn Suyurghātmish
693	Şafwat-al-dīn Pādishāh Khātūn
694	Jalāl-al-dīn Mohammad Shāh
701	Kuṭb-al-dīn Shāh-Jahān
—703	—1303

[*Mongol governors till 741; then Muzaffarids.*]

* From 655 to 660 her son Hajāj Sultān was the titular ruler.

KUTLUGH KHANS



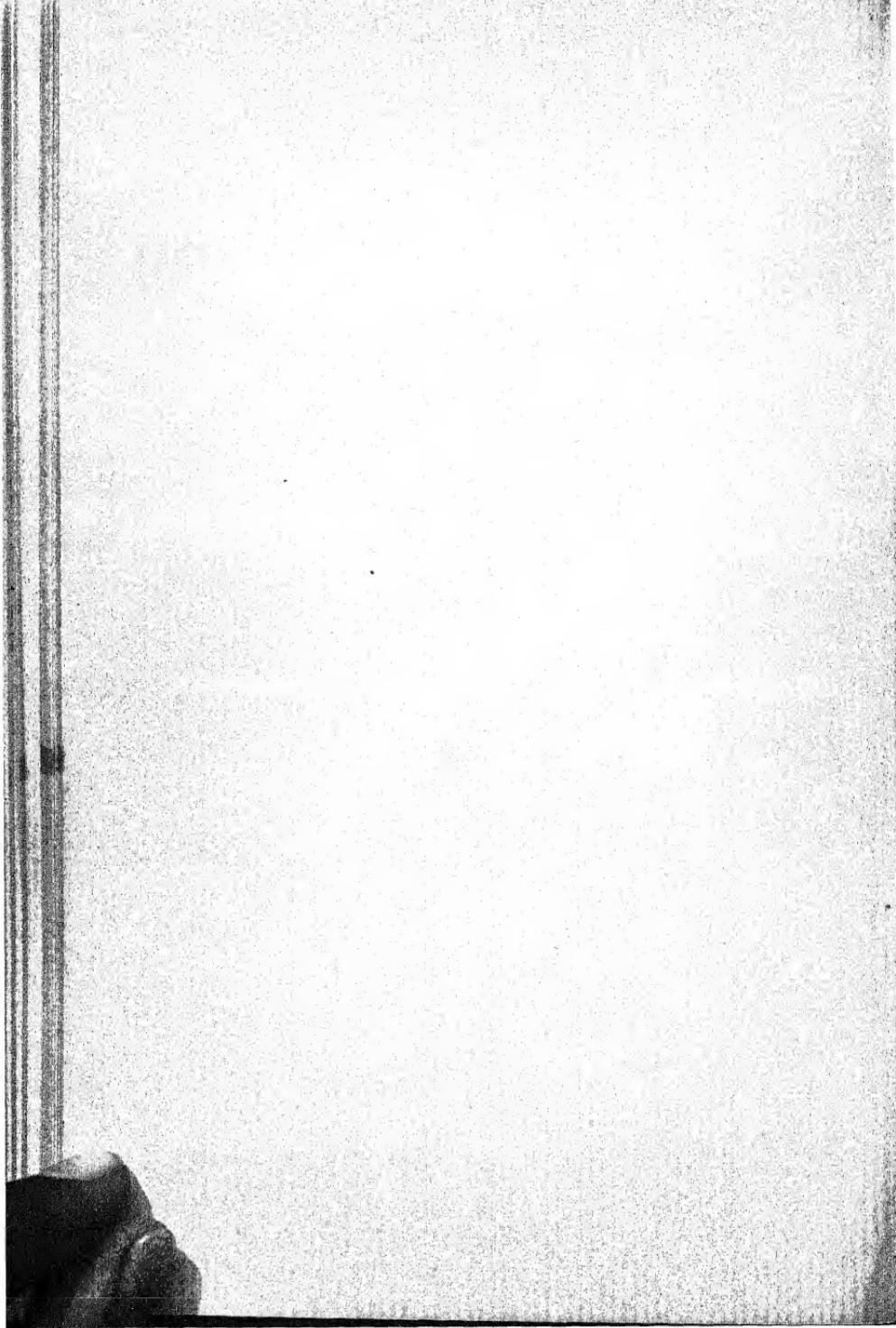
X. THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪKS IN THE WEST

SÆC. XIV—XIX

AMĪRS OF ASIA MINOR

71. KARĀSTĪ (MYSIA)
72. HAMĪD (PISIDIA)
73. KARMIYĀN (PHRYGIA)
74. TAKKA (LYCIA)
75. SĀRŪ KHĀN (LYDIA)
76. AYDĪN (LYDIA)
77. MANTASHĀ (CARIA)
78. KIZIL-AHMADLĪ (PAPHLAGONIA)
79. KARAMĀN (LYCAONIA)

80. 'OTHMĀNLĪ SULTĀNS OF TURKEY



X. THE SUCCESSORS OF THE SELJŪKS IN THE WEST

SÆC. XIV—XIX

We have seen how the Atābegs and other officers of the Seljūks succeeded to the government of the Persian, Mesopotamian, and Syrian provinces of their wide empire, but, failing to found powerful dynasties, were forced to make way for the Mongols in the thirteenth century. There was, however, one part of the Seljūk empire where the Mongols made no lasting impression, and where the Seljūks were followed by a dynasty greater than their own, the splendid line of the '*Othmānlī* or *Ottoman Turks*. Before entering upon the Mongol period of Mohammadan history, these successors of the Seljūks in the West must be noticed.

In the second half of the thirteenth century the Seljūks of Rūm, or Hither Asia, became the vassals of the Mongols of Persia, who directed affairs in Anatolia through a governor. But the hold of the Mongols upon this distant province was slight and brief. The

decayed Seljûks might submit, but the young dynasties which sprang up among their ruins paid little heed to the remote despots of Persia, who made few efforts to restrain them. Ten States soon divided the Seljûk kingdom of Rûm amongst themselves. The *Karâsi* dynasty occupied Mysia; the families of *Şärû Khân* and *Aydîn*, Lydia; the *Mantashâ* princes, Caria; those of *Takka*, Lycia and Pamphylia; *Hamîd*, Pisidia and Isauria; *Karamân*, Lycaonia; *Karmiyân*, Phrygia; *Kizil-Ahmadlî*, Paphlagonia; whilst the house of 'Othmân held Phrygia Epictetus.

All these dynasties were gradually absorbed by the rising power of the '*Othmânîs*', once the least among them. *Karâsi* was annexed in 1336 (737); *Hamîd* was purchased as a marriage dower in 1382 (783); and in 1390 (792) Bâyazîd (Bajazet) I annexed *Karmiyân*, *Takka*, *Şärû Khân*, *Aydîn*, and *Mantashâ*, in a single campaign, and completed his conquest by adding *Karamân* and *Kizil-Ahmadlî* in 1392-3 (794-5). Thus at the end of the fourteenth century, not a hundred years after the assumption of independence by 'Othmân I, the arms of his great-grandson had swept away the nine rival dynasties.

BITHYNIA	PHRYGIA EPICETUS	MYSIA	PISIDIA	PHRYGIA	LYCIA	LYDIA		CARIA	PAPHLAGONIA	LYCAONIA
BYZANTINES	‘OTHMANLĪS	KARĀSĪ	HAMĪD	KARMIYAN	TAKKA	SĀRŪ KHĀN	AYDĪN	MANTASHĀ	KIZIL-AHMADLĪ	KARAMĀN
660 Michael Palaeologus	630 Ertughril	S	E	L	J	U	K	S	e. 620 Kara-mān	
682 Andronicus									e. 643 Moham-mad I	
717 Brāsā	699 ‘Othmān	‘Ajlān Beg	Hamīd	Karmiyān Beg	Takka Beg	700 Aydīn Beg	700 Mantashā Beg	690 Timūr	678 Maḥmūd	
731 Nicaea	726 Orkhān			‘Alishīr		713 Sārū Khān	733 Moḥam-mad		719 Yakhshī	
	761 Murād I		Hosayn	‘Ālim		746 Ilyās	740 ‘Omar	Ya‘kūb	750 ‘Alā-al-dīn ‘Alī	
	781	737		‘Āti		748 Isā	776 Ishāk	Maḥmūd	‘Ādil Beg	
	792 Bayazid		783	Ya‘kūb		791 Ilyās		Bāyazid Kotu-rum		
	804 INVASION OF TIMŪR	792	792	792	792	792	792	795	794	
		ANNEXED BY BAYAZID: RESTORED BY TIMŪR								
	805 Moḥammad I	805 Ya‘kūb restored	805 ‘Othmān	805 Khidr Sār? Junayd	805 Isā Junayd	805 Ilyās restored	805 Isfandiyār	805 Moḥam-mad II		
	824 Murād II			‘Omar	‘Omar Junayd	824 { Oways, Ahmad Layth		833 Ibrāhīm Ismā‘il Kizil-Aḥmad	829 Ibrāhīm	
	855 Moḥammad II	832	830	829	829		864	869 { Pir Ahmād Ishāk		877
	‘O	T	H	M	Ā	N	L	I	S	



After the battle of Angora in 1402 (804), when Bâyazîd was defeated and made prisoner by Timûr, and the 'Othmânî power in Asia seemed to be annihilated by the Tatar hordes, seven of these dynasties (but not Karâsi or Hamîd) were restored by the conqueror, and enjoyed a renewed vitality for about a quarter of a century. By that time, however, the 'Othmânîs had recovered from the blow, and in 1426-8 (829-832) five of the restored dynasties were re-absorbed by Murâd (Amurath) II; and in 1471 (877), after the second conquest of Karamân, the rule of the Ottoman Turks, in the strong hands of Mohammad II, was again supreme over all the provinces which once owned the sway of the Ten Amirs, as it is at this day.

The following table shows the division of the Seljûk kingdom of Rûm among the Ten States, and their absorption by the 'Othmânîs, and gives the names and (so far as known) the dates of their princes.*

* Details may be consulted in my article on the Successors of the Seljûks, in *Journal R. As. Soc.*, N.S. xiv. (1882).

A.H.

A.D.

699—1311 80. 'OTHMĀNLĪ OR OTTOMAN 1299—1893

SULTĀNS OF TURKEY

The 'Othmānlī or Ottoman Turks were a small clan of the Oghuz tribe, who were driven westward from Khurāsān by the Mongol migration, and took refuge in Asia Minor early in the thirteenth century. In recognition of their aid in war, the Seljūk Sultān allowed them to pasture their flocks in the province anciently known as Phrygia Epictetus (henceforward called Sultānöni) on the borders of the Byzantine Bithynia, with the town of Sugut (Thebasion) for their headquarters. Here 'Othmān, the eponymous founder of a dynasty which numbers thirty-five Sultāns in the direct male line, was born in 1258 (656). 'Othmān pushed the Byzantine frontier further back, and his son 'Orkhān took Brūsa and Nicaea, absorbed the neighbouring State of Karāsi, and organized the famous corps of Janizaries (*Yani chari* 'new soldiery'), who for several centuries were the flower of the conquering armies of the 'Othmānlīs. In 1358 (759) the Turks crossed the Hellespont, established a

garrison at Gallipoli, and began the conquest of the Byzantine Empire in Europe. Adrianople and Philippopolis fell a few years later, and the victories of the Maritza (1364), Kosovo (1389), and Nicopolis (1394) over the chivalry of all Europe gave the Turks assured possession of the whole Balkan peninsula, except the district surrounding Constantinople. The capital of the Eastern Empire was temporarily saved by the diversion caused by the invasion of Asia Minor by Timūr (Tamerlane) and the overwhelming defeat of the Ottoman Sultan Bāyazid I (commonly called Bajazet, from an ignorant pronunciation of the German spelling) in 1402 (804) on the field of Angora.

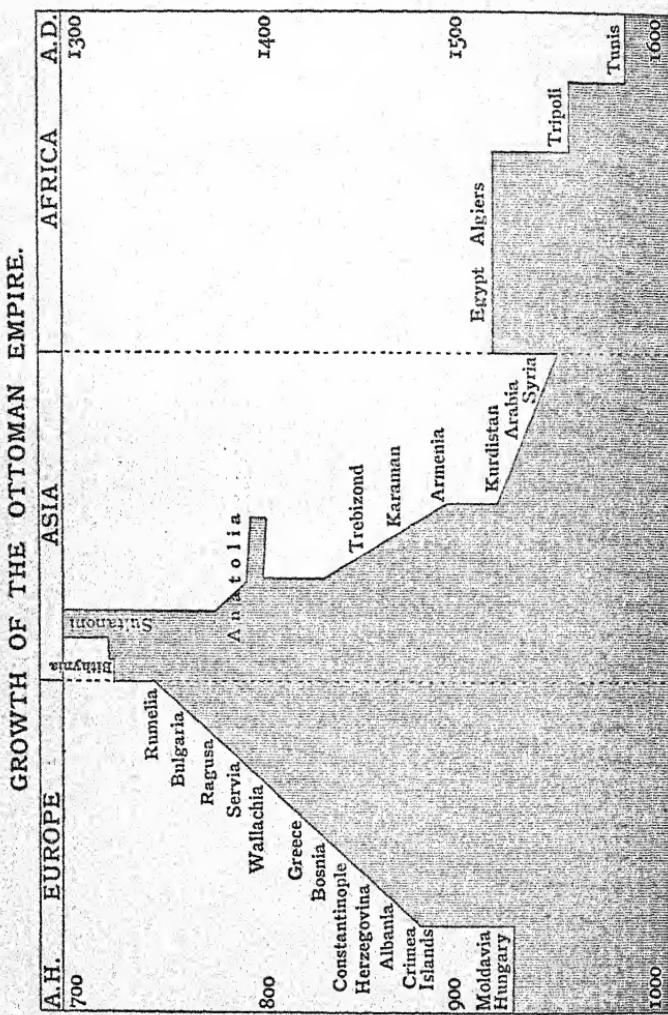
For the moment an empire which had stretched from the Danube to the Orontes appeared to be almost annihilated by a single blow. Its recovery, however, under the wise rule of Mohammad I, 'The Gentleman,' was scarcely less remarkable, and, after an interval of peace and consolidation, Murād II was able to defend the empire from the attacks of Hunyady, the 'White Knight of Wallachia,' and to avenge a violated treaty by the decisive victory of Varna (1444) over a vast army of Christian crusaders. This signal success secured the

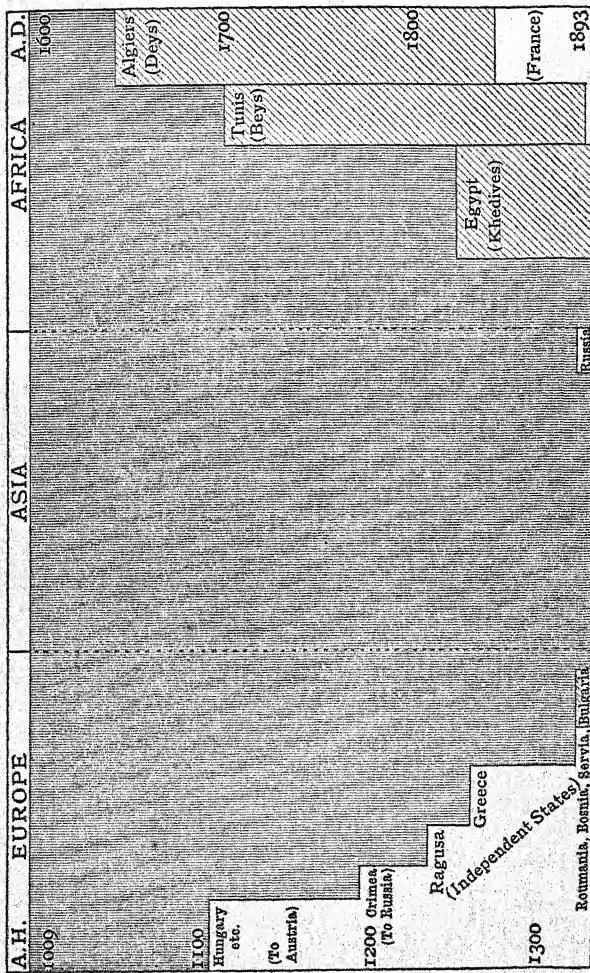
Turks from invasion from the north, and the history of the next two centuries is a long record of triumphs. Constantinople fell to Mohammad II in 1453, and the last remnant of the Byzantine Empire was thereby destroyed. The Crimea was annexed (1475), the Aegean islands became Ottoman soil, and the Turkish flag waved even in Italy over the castle of Otranto. In his brief reign of eight years, Selim I, 'the Grim,' defeated the Shāh of Persia, and added Kurdistān and Diyār-Bakr to the Turkish Empire; took Syria, Egypt and Arabia from the Mamlūks (1517); and not only became the master of the Holy Cities of Mecca and Medina, but received from the last 'Abbāsid Caliph of Cairo the relics of the Prophet Mohammad and the right of succession to the Caliphate, in virtue of which the Ottoman Sultāns have ever since claimed the homage of the faithful.

Sulaymān the Great, *patris fortis filius fortior*, overshadowed Selim's exploits by his own magnificent achievements. In 1522 he expelled the Knights of Rhodes from their corsairs' stronghold. In the north he conquered Belgrade, and in 1526 utterly crushed the Hungarians on the field of Mohács, slaying their king Louis II and 20,000

of his troops. For a century and a half Hungary became a Turkish province. Sulaymān even besieged Vienna (1529), and, though he failed to subdue it, he compelled the Archduke Ferdinand to pay him tribute. 'The Sultan's claim to be called The Great rests not merely upon his undoubted wisdom and ability, and the splendid series of his successes, but upon the fact that he maintained and improved his grand position in an age of surpassing greatness—the age of Charles I, Francis I, Elizabeth, and Leo X—of Columbus, Cortes, and Raleigh. In the great days of Charles he dared to annex Hungary and lay siege to Vienna; and in the epoch of great navies and admirals, of Doria and Drake, he swept the seas to the coasts of Spain, and his admirals Barbarossa, Pialé, and Dragut, created panic fear along all the shores of the Mediterranean, drove the Spaniards out of the Barbary States, and defeated pope, emperor, and doge together at the great sea-fight off Prevesa (1538).'* The empire of Sulaymān stretched from Buda-Pesth on the Danube to Aswān on the Cataracts of the Nile, and from the Euphrates almost to the Straits of Gibraltar.

* See my *History of Turkey*, ch. x (1888).





DECLINE OF THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE.

The reign of Sulaymān the Great is the apogee of Ottoman power. The downward course began with the blow inflicted upon the naval prestige of Turkey by Don John of Austria's signal victory off Lepanto (1571). In spite of the conquest of Cyprus (1571) and such successes on land as the defeat of the Austrians on the Keresztes (1596), the Turks were no longer the terror of Europe. Murād IV added Baghdād to their Asiatic dominions in 1638, and Candia and other islands were wrested from the Venetians in 1645; but on the continent of Europe the defeats at St. Gothard (1664), Choczm (1673), and Lemberg (1675) by John Sobieski, culminating in the fatal siege of Vienna (1682) and the rout at Mohácz, were followed by the total loss of Hungary (1686), and the invasion of Bosnia and Greece by the Austrians and Venetians. Prince Eugene delivered a final blow at the battle of Zenta (1697), and the treaties of Carlovitz (1699) and Passarowitz (1718) mark the end of Turkish supremacy in Hungary, Podolia, and Transylvania.

The frontiers of the empire remained almost unchanged from this epoch of humiliation up to the recent partition of 1878. Russian aggression began in 1736 with the annexa-

tion of Oczakov and Azov, and continued with the seizure of the Crimea in 1783, besides several invasions of the Danubian Principalities. Turkey itself was a prey to the exactions of a disorderly soldiery, and Mahmūd II, the greatest of modern Sultāns, though he massacred the mutinous Janizaries (1826), could not arrest the process of disintegration which was going on in the Ottoman empire. In Africa, Egypt became practically independent under Mohammad 'Ali in the first quarter of this century, and since 1883 has been still further removed from the 'sphere of Turkish influence' by the British occupation. Algiers and Tunis became semi-independent under their Deyls and Beys in 1659 (1070) and 1705 (1117) respectively, and France has been the possessor of Algiers since 1830, and of Tunis, in all but name, since 1881. The regency of Tripoli is all that now remains of the Turkish empire in Africa. In Asia, however, it has lost little since the day when Murād IV took Baghdād from the Persians; though Kars and Batūm were awarded to Russia in 1878 by the Treaty of Berlin, when the island of Cyprus was hypothecated to Great Britain.

Turkey's most serious losses have been in Europe.

Greece parted from her in 1828; the Danubian Principalities coalesced into the State of Roumania in 1866; and Servia got rid of her Turkish garrisons in 1867. The designs of Russia, which had been checked by England and France in the Crimean War (1854-5), were again manifested in the invasion of Turkey in 1877-8; but the Great Powers did not sanction the aggrandizing ambition of Russia. The Treaty of Berlin (1878), though it gave little to Russia, carried out the partition of Turkey in Europe which had already begun. Roumania and Servia were created separate kingdoms, the independence of Montenegro was recognized, Greece was given Thessaly, Bosnia and Herzegovina were entrusted to Austria, and a new tributary principality of Bulgaria was established, to which Eastern Roumelia was added in 1885, whereby Turkey was virtually deprived of her last possession north of the Balkans. The Ottoman Empire in Europe is now reduced to a strip of territory south of the Balkans, corresponding to ancient Thrace, Macedon, Epirus, and Illyria, instead of stretching almost to the gates of Vienna as it did in the great days of Sulaymān.

A.H.		A.D.
699	'Othmān I	1299
726	Orkhān	1326
761	Murād (Amurath) I	1360
792	Bāyazīd (Bajazet) I	1389
805	Mohammad I	1402
824	Murād II	1421
855	Mohammad II	1451
886	Bāyazīd II	1481
918	Selīm I	1512
926	Sulaymān I	1520
974	Selīm II	1566
982	Murād III	1574
1003	Mohammad III	1595
1012	Alīmad I	1603
1026	Muṣṭafā I	1617
1027	'Othmān II	1618
1031	Muṣṭafā I (<i>restored</i>)	1622
1032	Murād IV	1623
1049	Ibrāhīm I	1640
1058	Mohammad IV	1648
1099	Sulaymān II	1687
1102	Alīmad II	1691
1106	Muṣṭafā II	1695
1115	Alīmad III	1703
1143	Mahmūd I	1730
1168	'Othmān III	1754
1171	Muṣṭafā III	1757
1187	'Abd-al-Hamīd I	1773
1203	Selīm III	1789
1222	Muṣṭafā IV	1807
1223	Mahmūd II	1808
1255	'Abd-al-Majīd	1839
1277	'Abd-al-'Azīz	1861
1293	Murād V	1876
1293	'Abd-al-Hamīd II <i>regnant</i>	1876

'OTHMĀNLĪ OR OTTOMAN TURKS

1. 'Othmān b. Ertughrul 1299

2. Orkhān 1326

3. Murād I 1360

4. Bāyazid I 1389

Sulaymān
Claimant
1403-10

5. Muhammed I 1402

Müsǖt
Claimant
1410-16

6. Murād II 1421

7. Muhammed II 1451

8. Bāyazid II 1481

9. Selim I 1512

10. Sulaymān I 1520

11. Selim II 1566

12. Murād III 1574

13. Muhammed III 1595

14. Ahmet I 1603

15. Muṣṭafā I 1617, (2) 1622

16. 'Othmān II 1618

17. Murād IV 1623

18. İbrāhīm 1640

19. Muhammed IV 1648

20. Sulaymān II 1687

21. Ahmet II 1691

22. Muṣṭafā II 1695

23. Ahmet III 1703

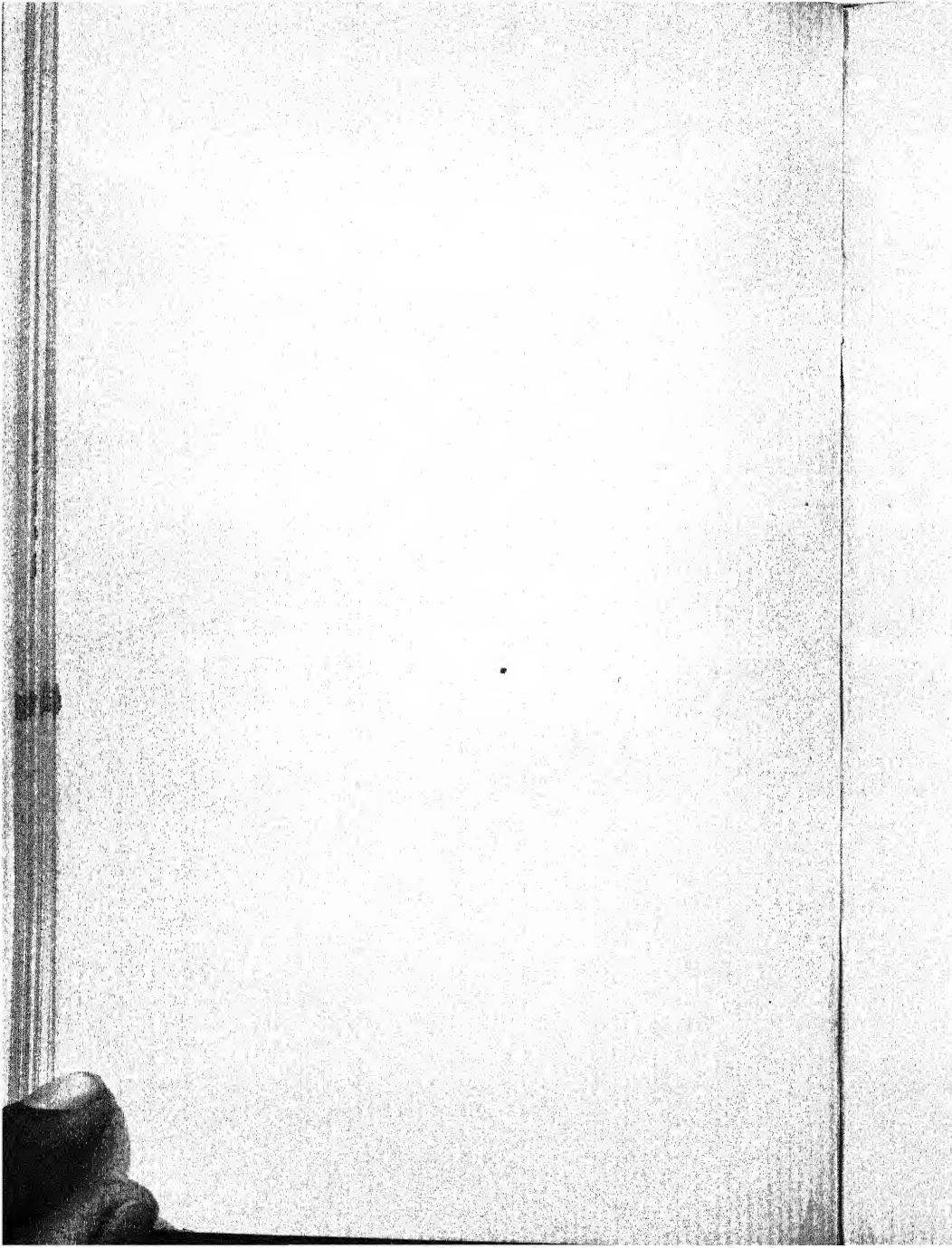
4. Maḥmūd I 1730 25. 'Othmān III 1754 26. Muṣṭafā III 1757 27. 'Abd-al-Hamid I 1773

28. Selim III 1789 29. Muṣṭafā IV 1807 30. Maḥmūd II 1808

31. 'Abd-al-Majid I 1839 32. 'Abd-al-Azīz 1861

33. Murād V 1876

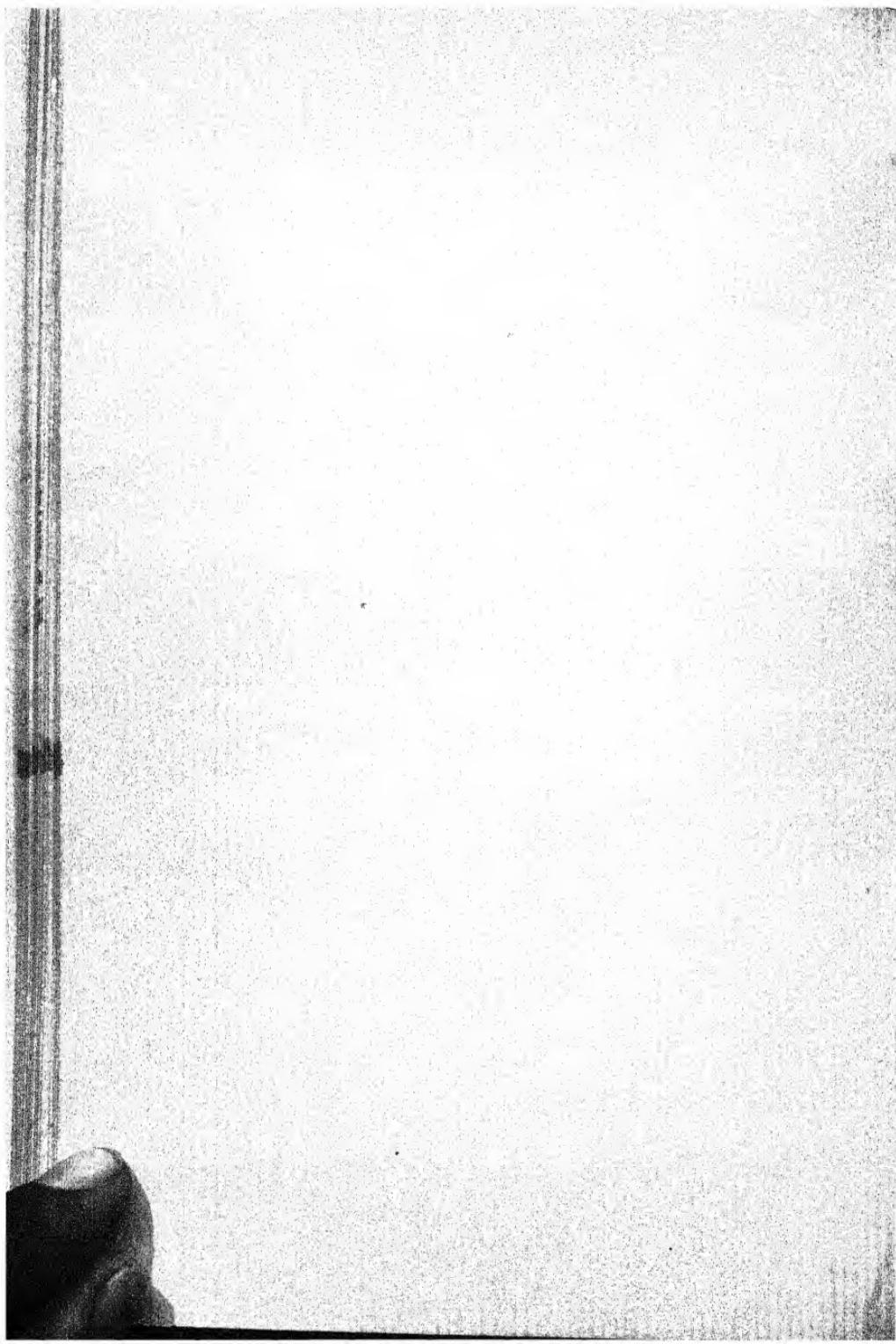
34. 'Abd-al-Hamid II 1876 *regnant*



XI. THE MONGOLS

SÆC. XIII—XVIII

81. GREAT KHĀNS OF MONGOLIA
82. MONGOLS OF PERSIA
83. GOLDEN HORDE OF KIPCHAK
84. KHĀNS OF THE KRIM (CRIMEA)
85. CHAGHATĀY KHĀNS



XI. THE MONGOLS*

SÆC. XIII—XVIII

The history of the Mongols begins practically with the great conqueror Chingiz Khān. There are many traditions of his ancestors current among his biographers, but, as in the case of many another man of unexpected fame, his pedigree has been elaborated rather on the ground of natural propriety than of fact. All that can safely be said about the early history of the Mongols is that they were a clan among clans, a member of a great nomad confederacy that ranged the country north of the desert of Gobi in search of water and pasture; who spent their lives in hunting and the breeding of cattle, lived on flesh and sour milk (*kumis*), and made their profit by bartering hides and beasts with their kinsmen the Khitans, or with the Turks and Chinese, to whom they owed allegiance. The name Mongol was not known abroad until the tenth century, and probably came to be applied to the whole group of clans only when the chief of a particular clan bearing that name acquired an ascendancy over the rest

* The following introduction, and those to the succeeding sections of the Mongol dynasties, are reprinted from my *Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum*, vol vi. They are of course based upon Sir Henry Howorth's great History.

of the confederacy, and gave to the greater the name of the less. If not the founder of the supremacy of his clan, Yissugāy was a notable maintainer of it, and it was probably he who first asserted the independence of the Mongols from Chinese rule. In spite, however, of conquest and annexation, the people who owned the sovereignty of Yissugāy numbered only forty thousand tents. Yet it was upon this foundation that Yissugāy's son, Chingiz Khān, built up in twenty years the widest empire the world has ever seen. The father died in 1175 A.D., and Temujin his son, a child of thirteen years, and not yet called by the high title of Chingiz Khān, ruled in his stead over the tribes that wandered by the banks of the Onon.

A detailed chronicle of the career of conquest inaugurated by this Asiatic Alexander is no part of the present purpose.* It is sufficient to say that after thirty years of struggle against home-foes, in which he succeeded in firmly establishing his authority over his own and the neighbouring clans, in face of powerful and treacherous conspiracies, Temujin found himself free to devote the twenty years that remained of his life to wider and more ambitious designs. Having reduced all the tribes north of the desert

* See Sir H. H. Howorth's *History of the Mongols*, i. 49—115.

of Gobi, from the Irtish to the Khinggan Mountains, and having incorporated among his subjects the Karaits, who had forfeited their independence by the treachery of their king, Wang Khān (the Prester John of European fable, and an old but perfidious ally of Yissugāy and his son), Temujin summoned, in 1206, a Kuriltāy or Diet of the chiefs of all the tribes; and a *shaman*, or priest, announced to the assembled nobles that a higher title than belonged to others had been decreed by Heaven to Temujin, and henceforward his name should be Chingiz Kaān, 'the Very Mighty King.' Thus at the age of forty-four did Chingiz begin his undisputed reign. Three years later, after receiving the submission of the Uighurs, he began his invasion of China, and though it was reserved for his grandson to complete the subjugation of the Celestial Empire, a great part of the northern provinces, the ancient kingdom of Liau-tung, and the Tangut Kingdom of Hia, were added, as subject provinces or feudatory states, to the Mongol dominions during the great Khān's own lifetime. The next obstacle in the path to universal sovereignty was the old Turkish kingdom of Karā-Khitay, which corresponded nearly to the modern limits of Eastern Turkistān, and was ruled by a line of kings called Gür-

Khāns, who exacted homage from the border states of Persia and Transoxiana. Chingiz and his horsemen, however, instead of paying homage, speedily rode down all resistance, and soon found themselves masters of Kāshghar, Khoten, and Yārkhand, with the rest of the territory of Gūr-Khāns. The Mongol dominions now marched with the wide kingdom which had recently been conquered by the Khwārizm Shāh; and this, therefore, became the next object of attack and the next example of the futility of resistance. The Mongol armies, divided into several immense brigades, swept over Khwārizm, Khurāsān, and Afghānistān, on the one hand, and on the other over Adharbijān, Georgia, and southern Russia, whilst a third division continued the reduction of China. In the midst of these diverging streams of conquest, Chingiz Khān died, in 1227 (624), at the age of sixty-four. The territory he and his sons had conquered stretched from the Yellow Sea to the Euxine, and included lands or tribes wrung from the rule of Chinese, Tanguts, Afghāns, Persians, and Turks.

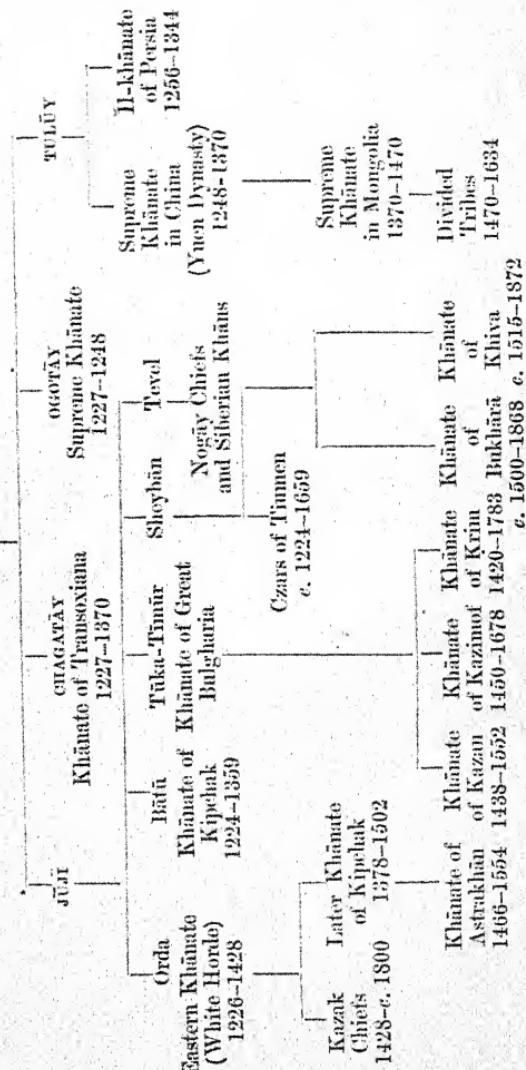
It was the habit of a Mongol chief to distribute the clans over which he had ruled as appanages among his sons; and this tribal rather than territorial distribution

obtained in the division of the empire among the sons of Chingiz. The founder appointed a special appanage of tribes in certain loosely defined camping-grounds to each son, and also nominated a successor to himself in the supreme Khānate. Beginning therefore with the *Khākaāns*, or supreme suzerains over all the other Mongol chiefs, the following seems the natural order:

1. *The line of Ogotāy*, ruling the tribes of Zungaria; *Khākaāns*, till their extinction by the family of Tulūy.
2. *The line of Tulūy*, ruling the home clans of Mongol-istān; *Khākaāns* after Ogotāy's line, down to the Manchu supremacy.
3. *The Persian branch of the line of Tulūy*; Hūlāgū and his successors, the Il-khāns of Persia.
4. *The line of Jūjī*, ruling the Turkish Tribes of the Khānate of Kipchak; the Khāns of the Golden and White Hordes, with the sequel, the Khānate of Astrakhān, and the offshoots, the Khānates of Kazan, Kazimof, and Krim; and finally the Khāns of Khiva and Bukhārā.
5. *The line of Chagatāy*, ruling Mā-warā-l-nahr, or Transoxiana.

SKETCH-TREE OF THE DYNASTIES SPRUNG FROM CHINGIZ KHĀN

CHINGIZ



A.H.

603—1043 81. GREAT KHĀNS 1026—1634

A.D.

1. *Line of Ogotāy* :—Appanage, Zungaria*; Supreme Khākaāns (1227—1248).

By the will of Chingiz, Ogotāy besides receiving his appanage in Zungaria was appointed to succeed to the supreme authority ; and it is a singular testimony to the reverence in which the intentions of the great founder of Mongol power were held that Ogotāy, although neither the eldest nor the most capable of the sons of Chingiz, was suffered quietly to assume the sovereignty over all the chiefs of the family and tributaries, and received their loyal homage at the general Diet held in 1229. His reign was marked by a considerable extension of the Mongol dominions. The Kin empire, or northern half of China, which had only been partially reduced in the lifetime of Chingiz, was now (1234) entirely subdued ; (the southern

* It will be simpler thus to indicate roughly the position of the camping-grounds of Ogotāy's subjects, than to say "the clans camping in or about Zungaria," etc. In this instance the tribes in question were the Naymans and the ancestors of the modern Kalmuks.

half, or Sung empire, resisted the invaders till the time of Khubilāy.) Korea was annexed (1241). The gallant and unfortunate Jalāl-al-dīn, son of the late Khwārizm Shāh Moḥammad, was hunted through the wide territory which had once owned his father's rule. A great expedition into Europe was conducted by Bātū, son of Jūjī; the Mongols entered Moscow and Novgorod, penetrated to Hungary, burned Cracow, and laid siege to Pesth. The opportune death of Ogotāy called for a general assembly of the family, and a reverse sustained at Liegnitz, at the hand of the Grand Duke of Austria, saved Europe. Meanwhile the internal affairs of the empire had been organized and ably administered under the wise and just rule of the prime minister Yeliu Chutsāy, a Khitan, who did much to restore order and security to the provinces, in spite of the incapacity of his imperial master, who was given over to the prevailing Mongol vice of habitual drunkenness.

Ogotāy's death in A.D. 1241 (637) was followed by an interregnum of several years, during which his widow Turakina governed the empire as regent for her eldest son Kuyuk, until he should return from Europe, where he had been distinguishing himself in the invasion of

Hungary under his cousin Bātū. He received the summons in Hungary, and on his return to Karakorum in 1246, was elected Khākaān by a general Kuriltāy attended by most of the chiefs of the family, except the sons of Jūjī, who were dissatisfied with the succession and excused themselves. Kuyuk restored the tranquility which had been disturbed during the rule of his mother, and armies were now despatched to continue the work of extension in China and Persia.

Kuyuk was the only member of the family of Ogotāy who succeeded to the supreme throne, and on his death in 1248 the empire passed to the line of Tultūy, and neither Kuyuk's sons nor any of his brothers succeeded him. Under the first Khākaān of the new line, the family of Ogotāy offered no opposition to their dethronement; but when Mangū died and Khubilāy was elected to the sovereignty by an informal Diet held in China, the discontent of Ogotāy's descendants manifested itself in immediate and general revolt, and a series of disastrous campaigns ensued.* Kaydū, the grandson of Ogotāy, fought no less than forty-one battles with the supporters of Tultūy on the east, and fifteen with their Kipchak allies on

* See Howorth, i. 173—186.

the west: but the struggle was unequal, and soon after Kaydū's death (about 1301, 701) the family of Ogotāy did homage to the line of Tulūy; their clans were dispersed among the tribes of Transoxiana and Kipchak, and their chiefs lived in obscurity under the rule of the Chagatāy Khāns. Once and again, in a period of confusion, some representative of Ogotāy's house was raised to the throne of Transoxiana; and it was the fancy of the great Timūr to bring again to light the heirs of the heir of Chingiz by setting up Suyurghātmish and his son Mahmūd in the stead of the deposed house of Chagatāy; but this was only a fictitious revival, and these two *rois fainéants* cannot be said to represent the original Khakaāns.

2. *Line of Tulūy* :—Appanage, Mongolistān; Khākaāns (1248–1634) in three stages, (1) Yuen dynasty in China (1248–1370), (2) Diminished empire at Karakorum (1370–1543), (3) Divided tribes and gradual submission to Manchus (1543–1634).

Mangū, the son of Tulūy, owed his accession partly to his personal reputation as a warrior and general, and partly to the adherence of the numerous tribes of Mongolia proper, the nucleus of the Mongol armies under Chingiz, which formed the appanage of Tulūy. In 1251 his inauguration took place, and in 1257 he died. Yet in this short reign there was room for the beginning of two important changes. Mangū kept his court at the usual capital Karakorum, north of the desert of Gobi, and appointed his brother Khubilāy governor of the southern provinces: this was the beginning of the transfer of the seat of government from Karakorum to Peking. The other change was the despatch of another brother, Hūlāgū, to Persia, where in place of the shifting rule of provincial governors he established his own dynasty, and thus Persia now possessed a line of kings of the royal house of Chingiz, like the other great divisions of the Mongol empire.

The death of Mangū in 1257 was the signal for a general struggle. The house of Ogotāy laid claim to the supreme sovereignty, as has been said; and Arikbuka, a brother of Mangū and Khubilāy, was the candidate in the Mongol homeland. Khubilāy was saluted Khākāān by the chiefs of the army in China; Arikbuka was elected by another Diet at Karakorum; and Kaydū received the like title and homage from the tribes of Ogotāy and Chagatāy further west. Jūjī's line in Kipchak did not attempt to gain the Khākāānship, but supported the house of Tulūy. The fine generalship, large resources, and wide personal popularity of Khubilāy—Marco Polo's Great Khān and Coleridge's Kubla Khan—carried him safely through these early complications. Arikbuka was speedily routed, and Kaydu was kept at a distance, though he did not cease from troubling till after Khubilāy's death.

The Khākāāns of the blood of Chingiz now became a Chinese dynasty. By 1280 Khubilāy had conquered the southern or Sung empire of China, and, having thus united the whole country under his sole rule, fixed his court at Khān Baligh (Cambaluk) or the 'City of the Khān,' now called Peking; whilst the old capital Karakorum became a provincial centre during the first of the three

periods into which the history of his descendants may be divided. This *first period* includes the century which elapsed between his founding of the Mongol empire in China and the expulsion of the invaders under his tenth successor, Tughān-Timūr (1370).* The Mongol Khākaāns of this period are known in Chinese annals as the *Yuen Dynasty*. With what sumptuous glory this dynasty began we know from Marco Polo: the causes of its decay—the extravagance of the court, the favouritism of the Lamas, the poverty and sickness of the people, the plagues and famines, earthquakes and other ‘signs’—may be read in Sir Henry Howorth’s History. The attempts of various pretenders were crowned by the successful attack of Chu Yuen Chang, prince of U, the founder of the Ming Dynasty, who assumed the royal title and seized Peking in 1368. In two years China was rid of the Mongols; and the most prosperous period of the history of the Khākaāns was over.

The *second period* extends from the expulsion from China to the temporary revival under Dayan Khān (1370–1543). This is the time of the *Diminished Empire*, when the Mongols were confined to the steppes from which they

* Howorth, i. 284–340

first went forth to conquer, the camping grounds by the rivers Kerulon and Onon, north of the desert of Gobi. Even here they were not absolutely independent. The Ming armies surprised the Mongols by Lake Buyur and totally routed them, capturing 80,000 prisoners, lifting 150,000 head of cattle, and carrying off an immense booty. This defeat effectually tamed the spirit of the Khākaūns, supreme now in name alone; and they became actual vassals of the Ming emperors, who appointed the rulers of the tribes by patents drawn up in Peking. In the 15th century a worse thing happened to them; many of the clans became for a while subject to the Uirats. But at the end of the same century Dayan Khān, the fourteenth Khākaān in succession from Tughān-Timūr, effected a temporary union among the scattered tribes, and organized them in certain groups.

The *third period* is the history of the disastrous results of Dayan's decentralizing policy—civil war among the *Divided Tribes*, and the consequent absorption of them one by one by the Manchu power which had newly risen on the ruins of the Ming in China. Internal wars, separate dynasties, and universal disunion, soon brought even the nominal sovereignty of the Khākaāns to an end; and after 1634 the descendants of Khubilāy were mere vassals of China.

GREAT KHĀNS

A.H.		A.D.
603	Chingiz Khān	1206
624	Ogotāy	1227
639	<i>Interregnum</i> : Turakina	1241
644	Kuyuk	1246
646	Mangū	1248

YUEN DYNASTY

655	Khubilāy	1257
693	Ūljā-itū	1294
706	Kuluk	1307
711	Buyantu	1311
720	Gegen	1320
723	Yisun-Timūr	1323
728	Rajipeka	1328
729	Kushala	1329
729	Jiyaghatu	1329
732	Rintshenpal	1332
732	Tughān-Timūr	1332

DIMINISHED EMPIRE

771	Biliktu	1370
780	Ussukhal	1378
790	Engke Soriktu	1388
794	Elbek	1392
802	Gun-Timūr	1400
805	Uljai-Timūr	1403
814	Delbek	1411
837	Adsai	1434
843	Taisong	1439
856	Akbarji	1452

857	Ukektu	.	.	.	.	.	.	1453
857	Molon	.	.	.	.	.	.	1453
867	Mandagholt	.	.	.	.	.	.	1463
875	Dayan	.	.	.	.	.	.	1470

DIVIDED TRIBES

951	Bodi	.	.	.	.	.	.	1544
955	Kudang	.	.	.	.	.	.	1548
964	Sasaktu	.	.	.	.	.	.	1557
1001	Setzen	.	.	.	.	.	.	1593
1013	Lingdan	.	.	.	.	.	.	1604
—1043								—1634

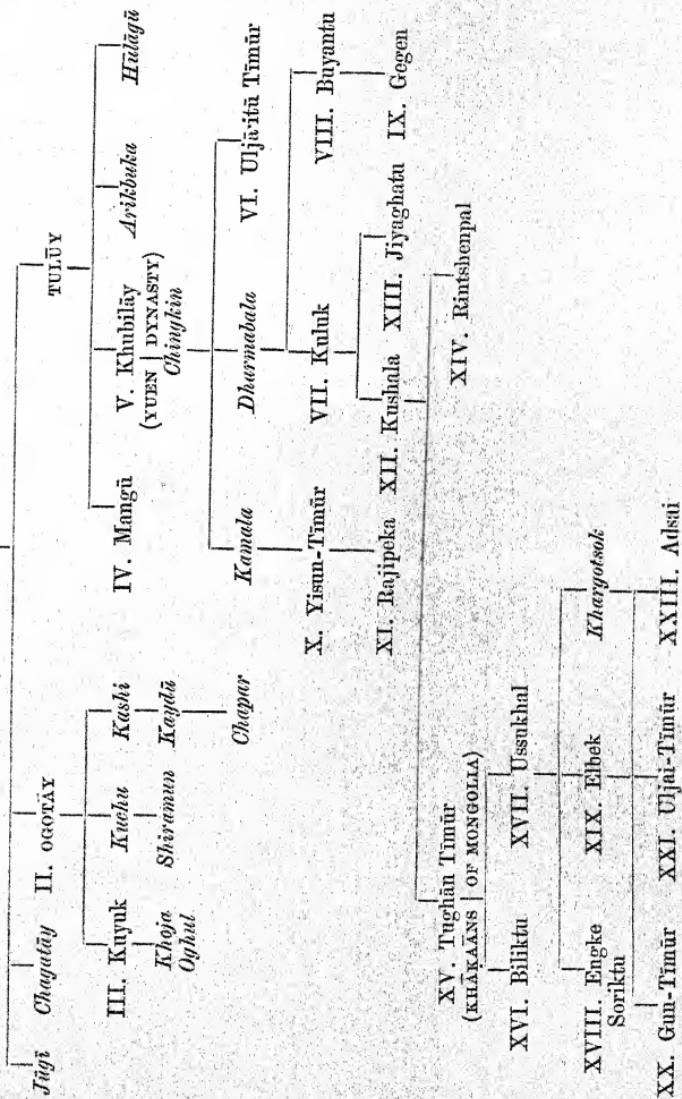
[*Manchu Tatars*]

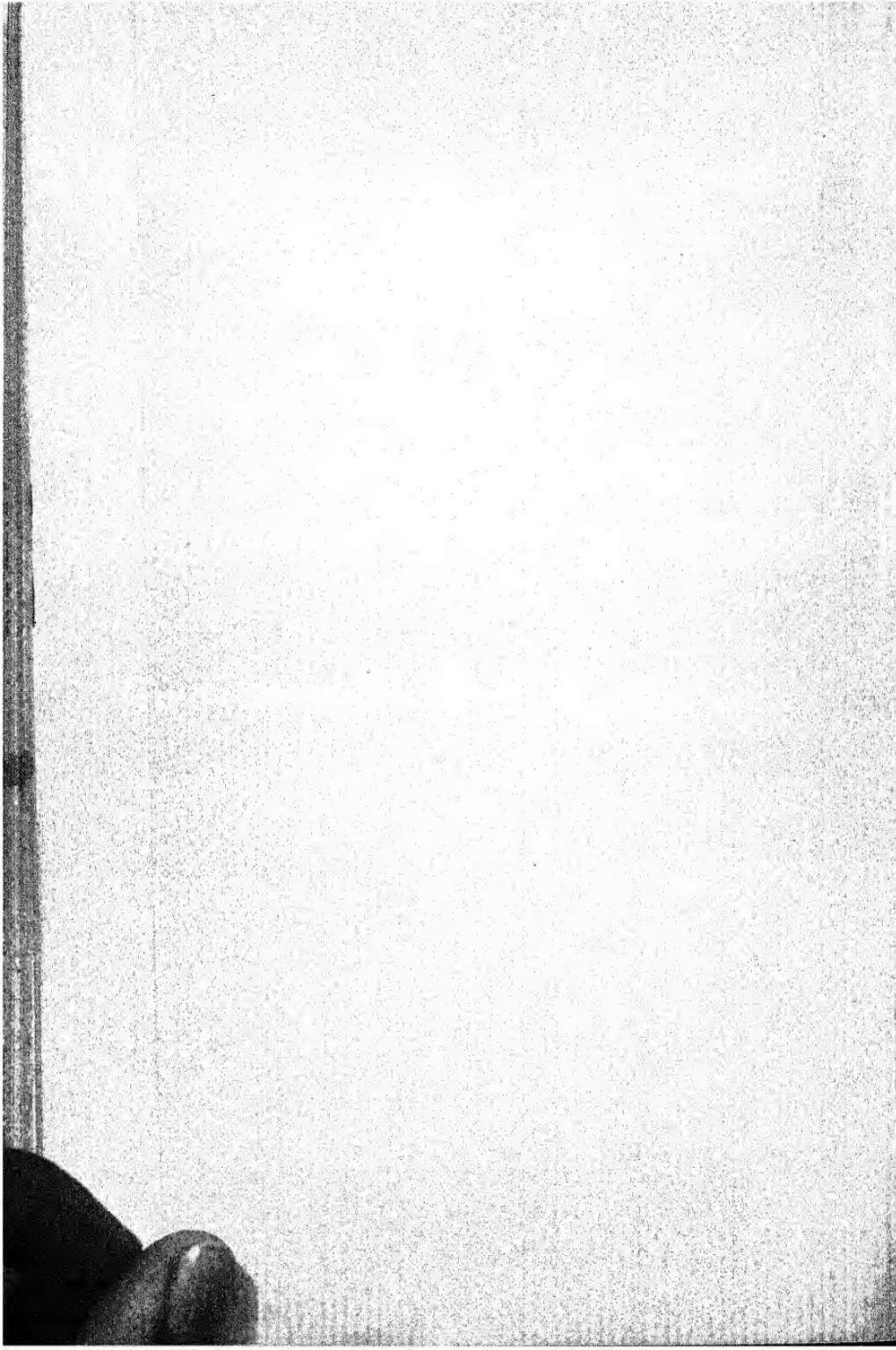
THE HOUSES OF OGOTĀY AND TULŪY

(To face p. 216.)

SUPREME KHĀNS

I. CHINGIZ





A.H.

A.D. .

654—750 82. MONGOLS OF PERSIA * 1256—1349

It was in the reign of Mangū that Persia was given a royal dynasty in the House of Hūlāgū (of the line of Tulūy), called Il-khāns, or provincial Khāns, to indicate the homage they owed and invariably acknowledged (very cheaply) to the supreme Khākaāns. Hūlāgū had little difficulty in establishing his authority over the country allotted to him. The ambitious Shāh of Khwārizm whom Chingiz had routed had already cleared the way by conquering the better part of Persia, and there were no formidable opponents to meet. Hūlāgū speedily drove before him the small princes who were trying to build their little dynasties on the ruins of the great empire of Khwārizm; came to Baghdād and cruelly murdered -Musta'şim, the feeble representative of the 'Abbāsid Caliphs; and discovered no serious obstacle in his path till he was checked in Syria by the valiant Mamlūks of Egypt, who kept him successfully at arm's length. Hūlāgū was now master of

* Howorth, iii.

all the provinces of Persia and Asia Minor from India to the Mediterranean. His dominions marched with those of Chagatāy and Jūjī on the north, and with the territory of the Egyptian Sultāns on the south; and within these limits for nearly a century his dynasty reigned in practical independence, whilst rendering a certain feudal homage to the remote Khākaān in China. Save for an occasional contest over the succession, the country was quietly and peaceably governed, and the Ḫl-khāns showed a praiseworthy desire to emulate the examples of earlier rulers of Persia in the encouragement of science and letters.

In the reign of Abū-Sa'īd, however, the dynasty was undermined by the same causes which had previously destroyed the power of the Caliphs and the Seljūks, and were destined at last to bring about the downfall of the Mamlūks in Egypt: rival amīrs, generals, ministers, fanatics, began to take a large share in the government of the country, and in their jealousies and animosities lay the prime danger of the Ḫl-khāns. After Abū-Sa'īd's death the throne of Persia became the toadstool on which the puppet sovereigns set up by rival amīrs seated themselves only to find it crumbling beneath them. Two great houses tore Persia in sunder: that of Amīr Chūpān, a favourite

general of Ghāzān and of his successors; and that of Amīr Ḫosayn the Jalayr, also called the Ilkānian. Each of these had a son named Hasan, distinguished by the epithets Great and Little; the son of Chūpān was Amīr Hasan Kūchuk or the Little; and the son of the Jalayr was Amīr Shaykh Hasan Buzurg or the Great. Their power was immediately felt. Arpā Khān, a descendant not of Hūlāgū but of Arikbuka his brother, was placed on the throne after Abū-Sa'īd's death, but was deposed the same year (1336) by Mūsā, who drew his pedigree from Baydū the sixth Il-khān. Mūsā was quickly displaced by the nominees of the Greater Hasan, whose rival of the line of Chūpān presently set up an opposition in the sovereignty in the person of Sātī-Beg, a sister of Abū-Sa'īd, who had been the wife of Chūpān, then of Arpā, and was finally married to Sulaymān, who nominally supplanted her in the supremacy. After the troubled reign of Nūshirwān, the Jalayrs were the chief power in Persia, and the dynasty of Hūlāgū became extinct. The Jalayrs, Muẓaffarids, Sarbadārids etc., made havoc of the country till the great Timūr came and swept them away.

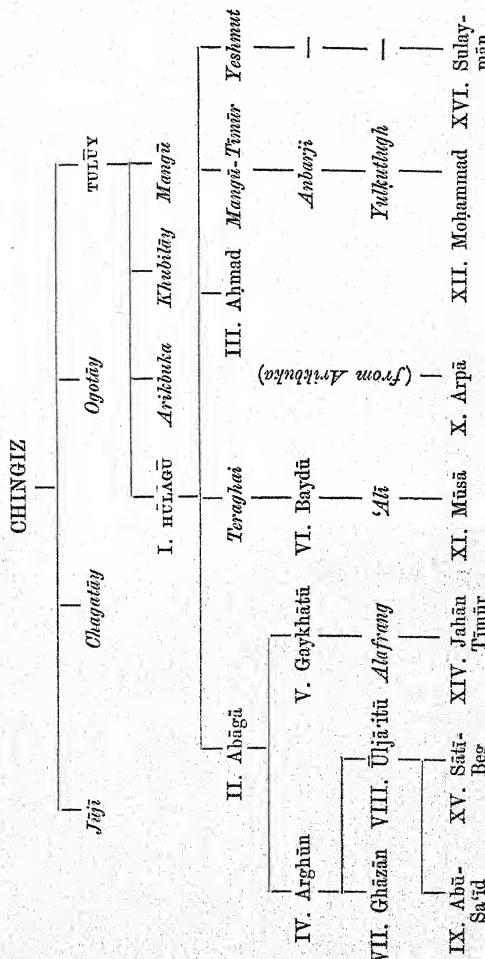
A.H.							A.D.
654	Hūlāgū	.	.	.	.	.	1256
663	Abāgā	.	.	.	.	.	1265
680	Aḥmad	.	.	.	.	.	1281
683	Ārghūn	.	.	.	.	.	1284
690	Gaykhātū	.	.	.	.	.	1291
694	Baydū	.	.	.	.	.	1295
694	Ghāzān Maḥmūd	.	.	.	.	.	1295
703	Uljai-tū	.	.	.	.	.	1304
716	Abū-Sa'īd	.	.	.	.	.	1316
736	Arpā	.	.	.	.	.	1335
736	Mūsā	.	.	.	.	.	1336

RIVAL KHĀNS*

736-8	Mohammad	.	.	.	.	1336-8
739-52	Tughā-Timūr	.	.	.	.	1338-51
739-41	Jahān-Timūr	.	.	.	.	1339-40
739-40	Sātī-Beg (princess)	.	.	.	.	1339
740-4	Sulaymān (m. Sātī Beg)	.	.	.	.	1339-43
745	Nūshirwān	.	.	.	.	1344

* Mohammad, Tughā-Timūr, and Jahān-Timūr were set up as puppet-khāns by the Jalayr Amīr, Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg; Sātī-Beg and her husband Sulaymān were nominees of the rival Amīr Ḥasan Kūchuk Chūpānī; and Nūshirwān of -Ashraf Chūpānī. All were of the posterity of Hūlāgū, except Tughā-Timūr who was descended from a brother of Chingiz Khān, and Nūshirwān whose pedigree is doubtful.

IL-KHANS OF PERSIA



A.H.

621—907 83. KHĀNS OF THE GOLDEN HORDE 1224—1502

A.D.

To Jūjī, the eldest son of Chingiz, were assigned the tribes of the old empire of Karā-Khitay, north of the Sihūn or Jaxartes, and here he, dying before his father, was succeeded by his eldest son Orda. A younger son of Jūjī, Bātū, by his famous invasion of Europe, extended the appanage of his family much further to the west, and secured for himself the sovereignty of the Turkish Khānate of Kipchak. North of Bātū's territory, another brother, Tūka-Tīmūr, appears to have been allotted the district of Great Bulgaria, on the Upper Volga; a fourth son of Jūjī, Shaybān, ruled the steppes now known as those of the Kirghiz Kazaks, north of Orda's appanage, and a fifth, Teval, led the Pechenegs, afterwards known as Nogāys, between the Ural and Yemba. All these tribes and their chiefs were more or less subject to the family of Bātū, which, although a younger branch, had acquired the greatest power and had made their capital Sarāy on the Volga the metropolis of the Jūjid empire; and all these tribes are included in the general name *Golden Horde*, so-called from the Khān's royal camp, *Sir Orda* or Golden Camp. It must be added that only the ruling family

and the cream of the army were of Mongol race: the vast majority of the tribes allotted to the sons of Jūjī were conquered Turks or Turkomans.

The family of Jūjī has, therefore, to be considered in the following distinct lines:—

- A. *The line of Bātū*, chief Khāns of the Golden Horde, ruling the Blue Horde in Western Kipchak (1224–1359).
- B. *The line of Orda*, titular heads of the family, ruling the White Horde in Eastern Kipchak (1226–1428), Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak after Bātū's line (1378–1502); and finally decaying as Khāns of Astrakhān (1466–1554).
- C. *The line of Tūka-Timūr*, Khāns of Great Bulgaria, north of Kipchak; occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak; finally Khāns of Kazan (1438–1552), Kazimof (1450–1678), and Krim (1420–1783).
- D. *The line of Shaybān*, in the Uzbeg or Kirghiz Kazak steppes (1224–1659); afterwards migrating and becoming Khāns of Khiva and Bukhārā (1500–1872).

A. *The line of Bātū*:—Chief Khāns of the Golden Horde; appanage, the Blue Horde in Western Kipchak* (1224–1359).

Bātū's line had the privilege of ruling what was emphatically the Great Khānate of the West. Its history is important in its relations with the growth of Russia. At first the liege-lords of the Russian princes, receivers of their tribute, and owners of their daughters, it was the fate of the Great Khāns of Kipchak eventually to become the vassals of those whom they had once held in bondage. But before this stage in the decay of the Golden Horde, Bātū's line had become extinct, and the Khāns had been supplied from his brothers' families. So long as the descendants of Bātū held the reins of government, the great domain of the Khānate of Kipchak was maintained in all its power. The history of this line, through ten Khāns, to Jānī-Beg, the last great ruler of this branch of Jūjī's family, is comparatively plain. But on his death in 1357 anarchy ensued. His son Birdī-Beg reigned for

* The country watered by the Don and the Volga, extending east and west from the Ural or Yaik to the Dnieper, and north and south from the Black Sea and Caspian to Ukek. Howorth, ii. 36–194.

two years; two Khāns asserting themselves to be sons of Jānī-Beg succeeded in a single year; and then follows an intricate period of twenty years of rival candidates.

There were five branches of Jūjī's house from which claimants for the Golden Khānate might spring, on the extinction of Bātū's line. North and south, in Great Bulgaria and the Krim, ruled the numerous progeny of Tūka-Timūr. South also, by the Caucasus, camping along the Terek and Kuma, were the descendants of Baraka, the younger brother and second successor to Bātū, to whom the Golden Horde owed much of its terrible prestige. East of the Great Khānate was the White Horde with its chiefs of the family of Orda; and also east, but further north, were the Uzbeg tribes of Shaybān's leading; whilst along the northern shore of the Caspian the clans of Nogāy pastured their herds. The attribution of the fifteen khāns of this period of rival families to their several ancestors in the table on page 230 is partly conjectural, but their dates are established by coins. In 1378, the sovereignty of the Golden Horde passed into the family of Orda in the person of Tōktāmish.

B. *The line of Orda*:—Appanage, the White Horde in Eastern Kipchak,* 1226–1428; Khāns of the Golden Horde in Western Kipchak, 1378–1502; Khāns of Astrakhān, 1466–1554.

Although Bātū was the most powerful of the sons of Jūjī, Orda the eldest inherited his father's appanage by the Jaxartes, and received a special homage as hereditary head of the family. He ruled the left division of the Golden Horde, known as the White Horde (*Āk Orda*), (a colour which ranked higher than the Blue), in distinction from the right wing, or Bātū's tribes, which were designated the Blue Horde (*Kök Orda*) in token of imaginary dependence. Living in the far-away steppes beyond the Caspian, the White Horde soon yielded the palm to its Blue brethren on the Don and Volga; but in its rough wintry life it retained a vigour and hardihood which eventually placed its rulers on the throne of the more civilized and decayed descendants of Bātū.

Of the earlier rulers of the White Horde little is

* The country of the Lower Jaxartes and the Ulugh and Kūchuk Tāg Mountains: bounded on the west by Bātū's Blue Horde, on the north by Shaybān's Uzbegs, on the east by Chagatāy's Khānate, on the south by the desert of Kizil Kumm and the Alexandrovski range. Howorth, ii. 216–362.

known; the Khānate passed regularly from father to son; and the only noticeable fact is the possession by Kūchī of a territory at Ghazna and Bāmiyān under the suzerainty of either the Chagatāy Khāns or the Il-khāns of Persia. Ūrūs Khān is the first chief of Orda's line who possesses any individuality in the history of the White Horde. He had the distinction of defeating the troops of Tīmūr more than once. Tīmūr in his overbearing fashion had appointed to the sovereignty of the tribes of Jūjī's appanage a member of Orda's family, Tōktāmish, whose father had been killed and he himself exiled by Ūrūs Khān. Assisted by the troops supplied by Tīmūr to carry his nomination into effect, Tōktāmish sustained several repulses at the hands of Ūrūs, and it was not till after the death of this Khān and the short reign of Tōktakya his son that Tōktāmish was able to wrest the command of the White Horde from another son of Ūrūs, Tīmūr Malik.

Tōktāmish is 'the last really great figure in the history of the Golden Horde.' After seizing the throne of the White Horde he marched upon Western Kipchak, defeated Mamāy, the king-maker of Sarāy, and by this victory in 1378 (780) put an end to the division between the White and the Blue Hordes, and united Eastern and Western

Kipchak under his sole rule. Henceforward Orda's family ruled the Blue Horde, bringing no doubt the cream of the White Horde with them; and their original camping-grounds gradually passed into the hands of the descendants of Shaybān. Under Tōktāmish the Golden Horde recovered much of its prestige. A great campaign was carried into Russia, Moscow was sacked and burnt (1382), and the Grand Principality was ravaged with the ancient fury of the Mongols. This revival of the glory of Kipchak, however, was only the flicker of a dying torch. Tōktāmish had the misfortune or the ingratitude to quarrel with the prince who had helped him to his success; and no one offended Timūr with impunity. The great conqueror in two campaigns, one marked by the battle of Urtupa on the 18th June, 1391, and the second by a crushing defeat near the Terek in 1395, when Tōktāmish had returned from exile, destroyed for ever the power of the Khāns of Kipchak. Tōktāmish indeed re-entered Sarāy in 1398, after Timūr's departure, but he was speedily driven out again by Timūr Kutlugh, son of his old enemy, Ūrūs, and forced to take refuge with the Lithuanian prince Vitut, whom he involved in war with the Tatars; he died in 1406.

The period succeeding the overthrow of Tōktāmish is one of the most obscure in the labyrinth of dark passages which the history of the Golden Horde affords. It is filled with the incessant struggles of *Rival Families* for the throne. There were at least three distinct sets of candidates for the decayed Khānship: the family of Ūrūs Khān, supported by the Nogāy chief Idiku, the second king-maker of Kipchak; the sons of Tōktāmish; and some younger members of the family of Shaybān. The table on page 232 will give an idea of this confused period. The rival Khāns not only ruled simultaneously in Kipchak, but held the same cities in the same years; and the history of Sarāy and other large towns must have been the record of continual sieges and recaptures.

This is the end of the Golden Horde. It was absorbed by Russia in 1502 (907), and its history degenerates into the petty annals of its scattered fragments. Of these one alone belonged to the family of Orda—the insignificant Khānate of Astrakhān,* founded by Kāsim, a grandson of Kūchuk Mohammad, about 1466, and held by his descendants until its abolition in 1554 by the Grand Prince of Moscow.

* Howorth, ii. 349-362.

KHĀNS OF THE GOLDEN HORDE

i. THE BLUE HORDE OF WESTERN KIPCHAK

a. FAMILY OF BĀTŪ

A.H.								A.D.
621	Bātū	.	.	.	.	.	.	1224
654	Sartak	.	.	.	.	.	.	1256
654	Baraka	.	.	.	.	.	.	1256
664	Mangū-Timūr	.	.	.	.	.	.	1266
679	Tūda-Mangū	.	.	.	.	.	.	1280
686	[Tūla-Bughā]	.	.	.	.	.	.	1287
689	Tektiū	.	.	.	.	.	.	1290
712	Üzbeg	.	.	.	.	.	.	1312
741	Tīai-Beg	.	.	.	.	.	.	1340
741	Jāni-Beg Māhāmād	.	.	.	.	.	.	1340
758	Birdi-Beg Mōhammād	.	.	.	.	.	.	1357
760	Kūlmā	.	.	.	.	.	.	1359
760	Nūruz-Beg	.	.	.	.	.	.	1359

b. RIVAL FAMILIES

OF SHAYBĀN	OF ORDA	OF TŪKA-TIMŪR
A.H.		
760	Khiḍr	
762	Mardād	762 Timūr Khōja
		762 Murid Khōja
764-8	Pūlād Khōja	764 Kutlugh Khōja
		764 'Azīz Shaykh
		764 'Abd-Allāh
		768 İ Hasan
772	Tūlūn-Beg	771 Mōhammād Būlāk
775	Ilbān	—780
777	Khāghān	
779	'Arab Shāh	
—780	.	

[780 United to White Horde 1378]

ii. THE WHITE HORDE OF EASTERN KIPCHAK
 FAMILY OF ORDA

A.H.		A.D.
623	Orda	1226
679	Kūchī	1280
701	Bāyān	1301
709	Sāsibūkā	1309
c. 715	Ibisan	1315
720	Mubārak Khōja	1320
745	Chimtāy	1344
762	Ūrūs	1361
777	Tōktakya	1375
777	Tīmūr Malik	1375
778	Tüktāmish Ghīyāth-al-din	1376
—793	(who unites Blue and White Hordes 1378)	—1391

[*Rival Families*]

RIVAL FAMILIES

OF ORDA		House of Taktañish	
Eastern Kipchak Branch	House of Urüs	797	Timür Käfugh
A.M. 797	Koñrijat	802	Şahidi Beg
		{ 810-15	Püñad
		{ 809-18	Timür
			814 Jafil-az-din
			815 Karim Birdi
			817 Kibak
		818	Chakra
		e.	818 Jabor Birdi
823	Buräk (seizes part of West Kipchak 827-831)	827	Küchuk Mohammad
		—e.	864
FAMILY OF TÜKA-TÜMÜR			
830	Dawlat Birdi (in absence of Buräk)	c. 864	Mahmud
		864	Ahmad
			Sayyid Ahmad
		886	Murtadä
			Shaykh Ahmad

[907 *Final submission to Russia.* 1502]

A.H.	84. KHĀNS OF THE	A.D.
c. 823—1197	KRIM (CRIMEA)	c. 1420—1783

C. *The Line of Tūka-Timūr* :—Appanage, Great Bulgaria, and subsequently Krim and Kaffa; occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde; finally, Khāns of Kazan, Kazimof, and Krim.*

Tūka-Timūr was the youngest son of Jūjī, and was attached to the left (or Orda's) wing of the Golden Horde, but probably had his own camping-grounds on the Upper Volga, including part at least of Great Bulgaria. Almost nothing is known of this branch in its original seats. Mangū-Timūr (of Bātū's line) gave Urang-Timūr, son of Tūka-Timūr, Krim and Kaffa, and the family being thus established north and south of Bātū's Khānate soon began to interfere in its dynastic succession. We have seen how three Khāns of the first period of rival families belonged probably to Tūka-Timūr's line, and one of the second period. But the chief importance of this branch is after the downfall of the Golden Khānate which followed upon Timūr's invasions.

* Howorth, ii. 198—216, 274, 363—626, 1074—5

One of the line, Ulugh Mohammad, after attempting to seize the Great Khānate on Burāk's death, betook himself in 1438 to his old possession of Great Bulgaria, and there revived his forefathers' Khānate, under the title of *Khānate of Kazan*, which, no longer overshadowed by the Great Khānate on its south, became an independent thorn in the side of the growing Muscovite giant. With the death, however, of Mohammad Amin, in 1519, the Mohammadan posterity of the founder of Kazan came to an end, and Khāns of the true faith had to be transplanted from the Kazimof, Krim, Astrakhān and other stocks, under the auspices of Russia, who finally suppressed the Khānate and appointed a Russian governor of Kazan in 1552.

When Ulugh Mohammad was murdered by his son Mahmūdak, in 1446, two of his other sons fled to Russia, and after some service in the Muscovite army one of these, Kāsim, was granted the town and district of Gorodetz on the Oka, in the division of Riazan. He gave the town his own name, and the line of Khāns ruling here, and known as the *Khāns of Kazimof*, were used by Russia to play off against their more powerful neighbour at Kazan, and were allowed to supply a couple of Khāns to the greater Khānate on the ex-

tinction of Ulugh Moḥammad's direct Muslim line. This Khānate, which never had a really independent existence, was absorbed by Russia in 1678.

The most important of the three Khānates sprung from the house of Tūka-Timūr was that of the Krim. Ulugh Moḥammad had a brother, Tāsh-Timūr, who was once a general under Tōktamish, and was the actual founder of the powerful dynasty of the *Khāns of the Krim* or Crimea, though his son, Hājji Girāy, is generally regarded as the first Khān. The Krim dynasty was always an element in the Eastern Question, and as an outpost of Turkey or an ally of Russia was an object of consideration on both sides. Eventually the inconvenience of these violent neighbours was agreed between Russia and Turkey, and the Khānate of the Krim was extinguished by treaty in 1783. A lineal descendant of these powerful Khāns, one Sultān Krim Girāy Kattī Girāy, settled in Edinburgh and married a Scottish lady.*

* *Athenaeum*, No. 2762

KHĀNS OF THE KRIM (CRIMEA)

A.H.		A.D.
c. 823	Hajji Giray	c. 1420
871	Nur-Dawlat	1466
873	Mangli Giray I	1469
878	Nur-Dawlat (<i>restored</i>)	1474
882	Jāni-Beg Giray I	1477
883	Mangli Giray (<i>restored</i>)	1478
921	Mohammad Giray I	1515
929	Ghāzi Giray I	1523
929	Savādat Giray I	1523
938	Islām Giray I	1532
938	Şāhib Giray I	1532
953	Dawlat Giray I	1551
985	Mohammad Giray II	1577
992	Islām Giray II	1584
996	Ghāzi Giray II	1588
1002	Fath Giray I	1594
1002	Ghāzi Giray II (<i>restored</i>)	1594
1017	Salāmat Giray I	1608
1019	Jāni-Beg Giray II	1610
1031	Mohammad Giray III	1627
1036	Jāni-Beg II (<i>restored</i>)	1635
1045	Ināyat Giray	1638
1048	Bahādur Giray	1642
1052	Mohammad Giray IV	1644
1054	Islām Giray III	
1064	Mohammad IV (<i>restored</i>)	1654
1075	‘Ādil Giray	1665
1081	Selim Giray I	1670
1088	Murād Giray	1677
1094	Hajji Giray II	1683

1095	Selim I (<i>restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1684
1102	Sa'ādat Girāy II	.	.	.	.	.	1691
1102	Şafā Girāy	.	.	.	.	.	1691
1103	Selim I (<i>again restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1692
1109	Dawlat Girāy II	.	.	.	.	.	1698
1114	Selīm I (<i>again restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1702
1117	Għażi Girāy III	.	.	.	.	.	1705
1119	Kaplan Girāy I	.	.	.	.	.	1707
1119	Dawlat Girāy (<i>restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1707
1125	Kaplan I (<i>restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1713
1127	Karā Dawlat Girāy	.	.	.	.	.	1715
1127	Sa'ādat Girāy III	.	.	.	.	.	1715
1136	Mangli Girāy II	.	.	.	.	.	1724
1142	Kaplan I (<i>again restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1730
1149	Fatḥ Girāy II	.	.	.	.	.	1736
1150	Mangli II (<i>restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1737
1152	Salāmat Girāy II	.	.	.	.	.	1739
1156	Selim Girāy II	.	.	.	.	.	1743
1161	Arslān Girāy	.	.	.	.	.	1748
1168	Hākim Girāy	.	.	.	.	.	1755
1171	Krim Girāy	.	.	.	.	.	1758
1177	Selim Girāy III	.	.	.	.	.	1764
1180	Arslān Girāy (<i>restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1767
1181	Makhşūd Girāy I	.	.	.	.	.	1767
1182	Krim Girāy (<i>restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1768
1184	Dawlat Girāy III	.	.	.	.	.	1770
1184	Kaplan Girāy II	.	.	.	.	.	1771
1184	Selim III (<i>restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1771
1185	Makhşūd Girāy II	.	.	.	.	.	1771
1185	Şāhib Girāy II	.	.	.	.	.	1772
1189	Dawlat III (<i>restored</i>)	.	.	.	.	.	1775
1191	Şāhīn Girāy	.	.	.	.	.	1777
—1197	[Crimea ceded to Russia]	.	.	.	.	.	—1783

D. *The Line of Shaybān* :—Appanage, the Uzbeg country (between the Ural and Chu rivers); occasional Khāns of the Golden Horde; Khāns or Czars of Tiamen, *cire.* 1226—1659; Khāns of Buchārā, 1500—1868, and of Khiya, 1515—1872.*

When Bātū invaded Hungary in 1240, his brother Shaybān accompanied him, and acquitted himself so well that Bātū not only made him King of Hungary, a title of a somewhat nominal value, but gave him an appanage of certain tribes north of Orda's Khānate. Shaybān was to camp in summer from the Ural mountains to the rivers Ilck and Irghiz, and in winter about the lands watered by the Sir, Chu, and Sarisu. His descendant in the sixth generation, Mangū-Tīmūr, was a contemporary of the great Khān Uzbeg of the Golden Horde, and from him the tribes of Shaybān's appanage took the name of Uzbegs, which has since become famous. On the extinction of Bātū's line, the family of Shaybān supplied several Khāns to the Golden Horde; and in the second period of rival families, after the overthrow of

* Howorth, ii. 686-1010

Töktämish, the house of Shaybān is represented, in all probability, by Darwīsh Khān and Sayyid Aḥmad.

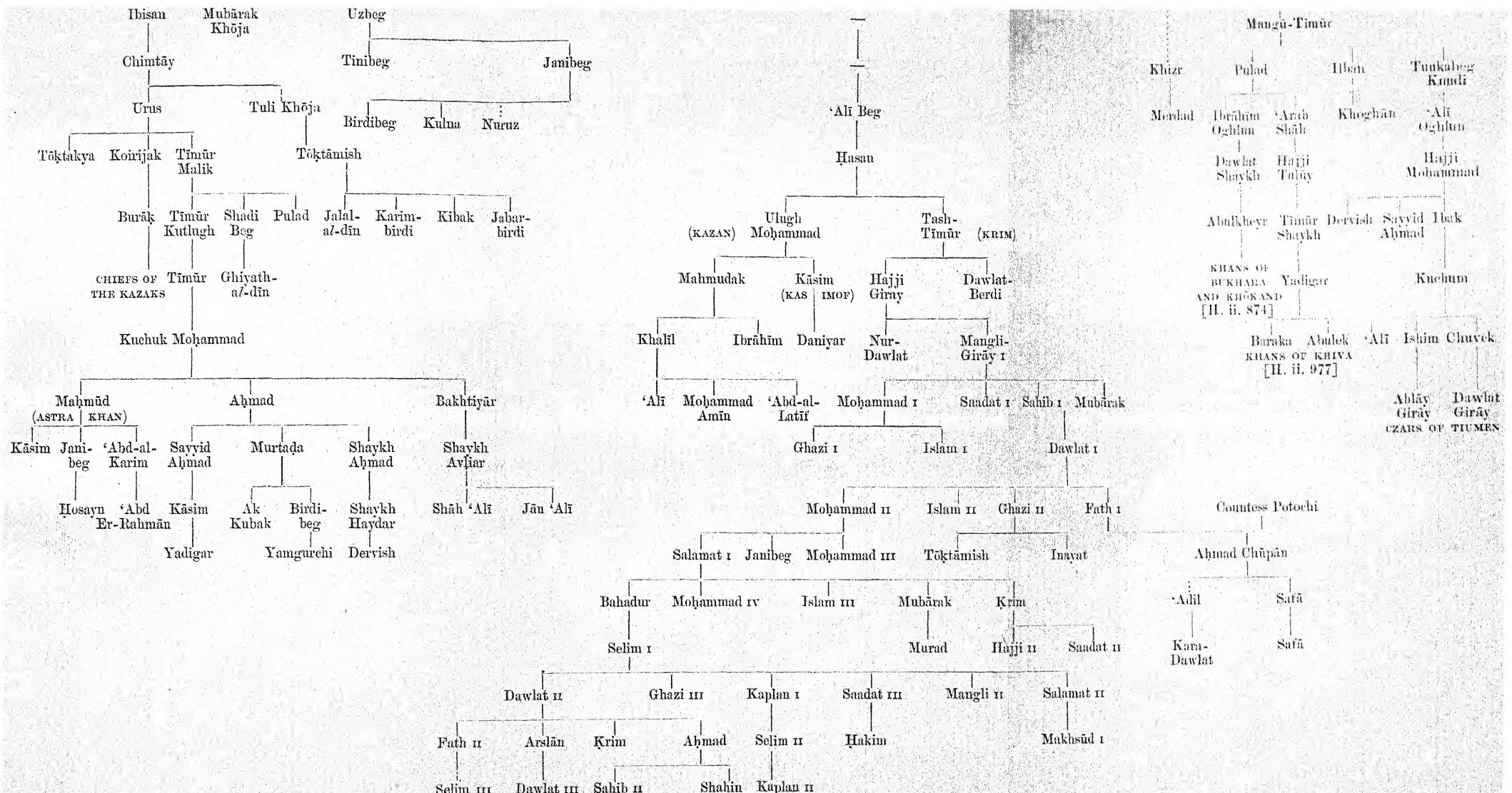
The home-line of Shaybān remained in the original camping-grounds and assumed the title of *Czars of the Tiumen*, under which they were obeyed over a great part of Siberia. They survived till 1659, when their country was occupied by the Kalmuks: but for some time before this their authority had been purely nominal.

Much more important were the branches descended from Pūlād, son of Mangū-Timūr, and once ruler of the Golden Horde. Pūlād's two sons, Ibrāhīm and 'Arab-Shāh, were respectively ancestors of the *Khāns of Bukhārā* and *Khvārizm* or *Khiva*. The former Khānate was founded by Mohammad Shaybānī, grandson of Abū-l-Khayr, who was grandson of Ibrāhīm, in 1500, and survives to the present day, although General Kaufmann made it a Russian dependency in 1868. 'Arab-Shāh, the founder of the Khānate of Khiva, is also known as, if not a Khān of the Golden Horde, at least a striker of coins in Kipchak just before the invasion of Töktämish. His descendant in the fifth generation, Ilbars Khān, took forcible possession of Transoxiana and adjacent provinces after Shaybānī's death, probably about 1515, and his

posterity are still called Khāns of Khiva, but they have been tributary to Russia since 1872. The history of these Khānates, which sprang up on the ruins of the empire of Timūr, belong to a later section (XIII).

It should be added that another son of Jūjī, Teval, was the chief of the Pechenegs, camping about the river Bug in Southern Russia, and was the grandfather of Nogāy, who took a large part in the affairs of the Golden Horde, but afterwards fell out with Tōktū and was driven, along with his tribes, who adopted the name of Nogāys, beyond the Volga, and found settlements between the Ural and the Yemba. The history of this horde is very fragmentary, and their state was peculiarly migratory.*

* Howorth, ii. 1911-1968





A.H.	A.D.
624—760	85. CHAGATĀY KHĀNS
	(TRANSOXIANA) 1227—1358

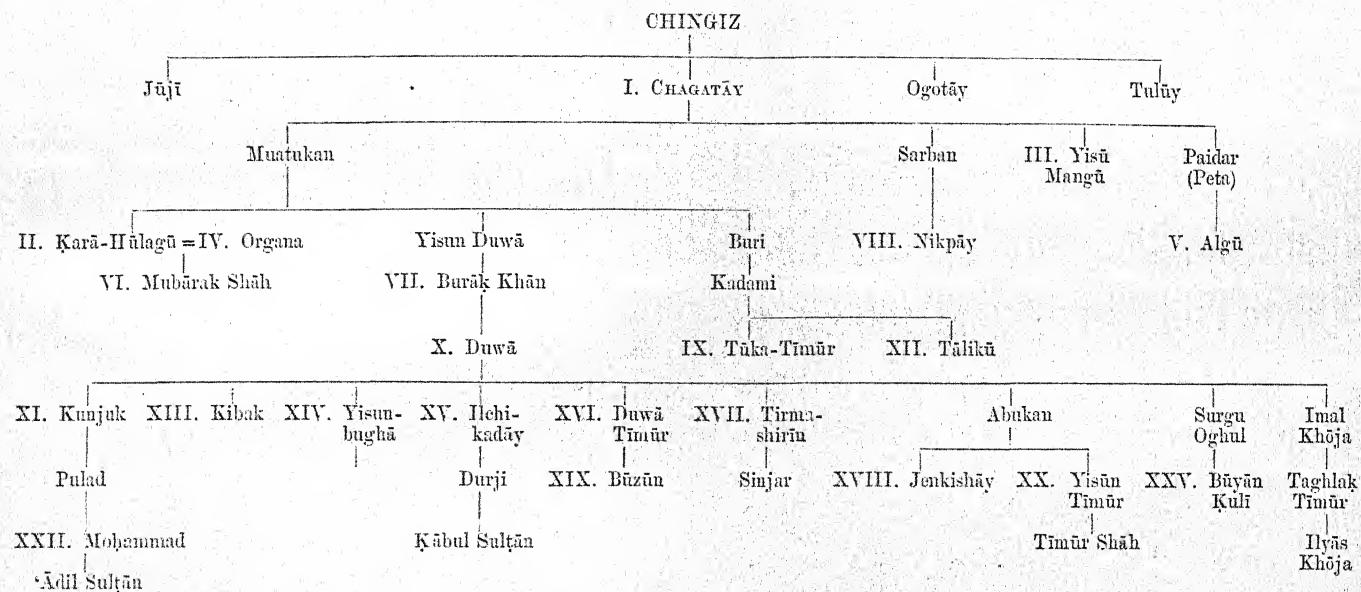
The Khānātes founded by three sons of Chingiz—Ogotāy, Tulūy, and Jūjī—have in turn been noticed. There remains Chagatāy, who was allotted the appanage of Mā-warā-l-nahr, or Transoxiana (Bukharia), with part of Kāshghar, Badakhshān, Balkh, and Ghazna, and who founded the Khānate of those regions. The history of his descendants is very scantly recorded, and, beyond occasional raids over the Persian border and internal disputes, nothing of note has been set down. Two members of Ogotāy's family ('Alī and Dānishmandja) intrude themselves into the series, proving the presence of Ogotāy chiefs of rank and importance in the Chagatāy dominions (pp. 210, 265). The genealogy and chronology of this branch are alike doubtful; and the following list is merely tentative.

A.H.		A.D.
624	Chagatāy	1227
639	Karā-Hūlāgū	1242
645	Yisū Mangū	1247
650	Karā-Hūlāgū (<i>restored</i>)	1252
650	Orgāna Khātūn	1252
659	Algū	1261
664	Mubārak Shāh	1266
664	Burāk Khān	1266
668	Nikpāy	1270
670	Tūka-Timūr	1272
c. 672	Duwā Khān	c. 1274
706	Kunjuk Khān	1306
708	Tālikū	1308
709	Kibak Khān	1309
709	Yisunbughā	1309
c. 718	Kibak Khān (<i>restored</i>)	1318
721	Ilchikadāy	1321
721	Duwā Timūr	1321
722	Tirmashirīn	1322
730-4?	Sinjar?	1330-4?
734	Jingishay	1334
c. 735	Būzūn	c. 1335
c. 739	Yisun Timūr	c. 1339
c. 741	‘Alī (of Ogotāy stock)	c. 1340
c. 743	Mohammad	c. 1342
744	Kazan	1343
747	Dānishmandja (of Ogotāy stock)	1346
749	Būyān Kuli	1348
—760		—1358

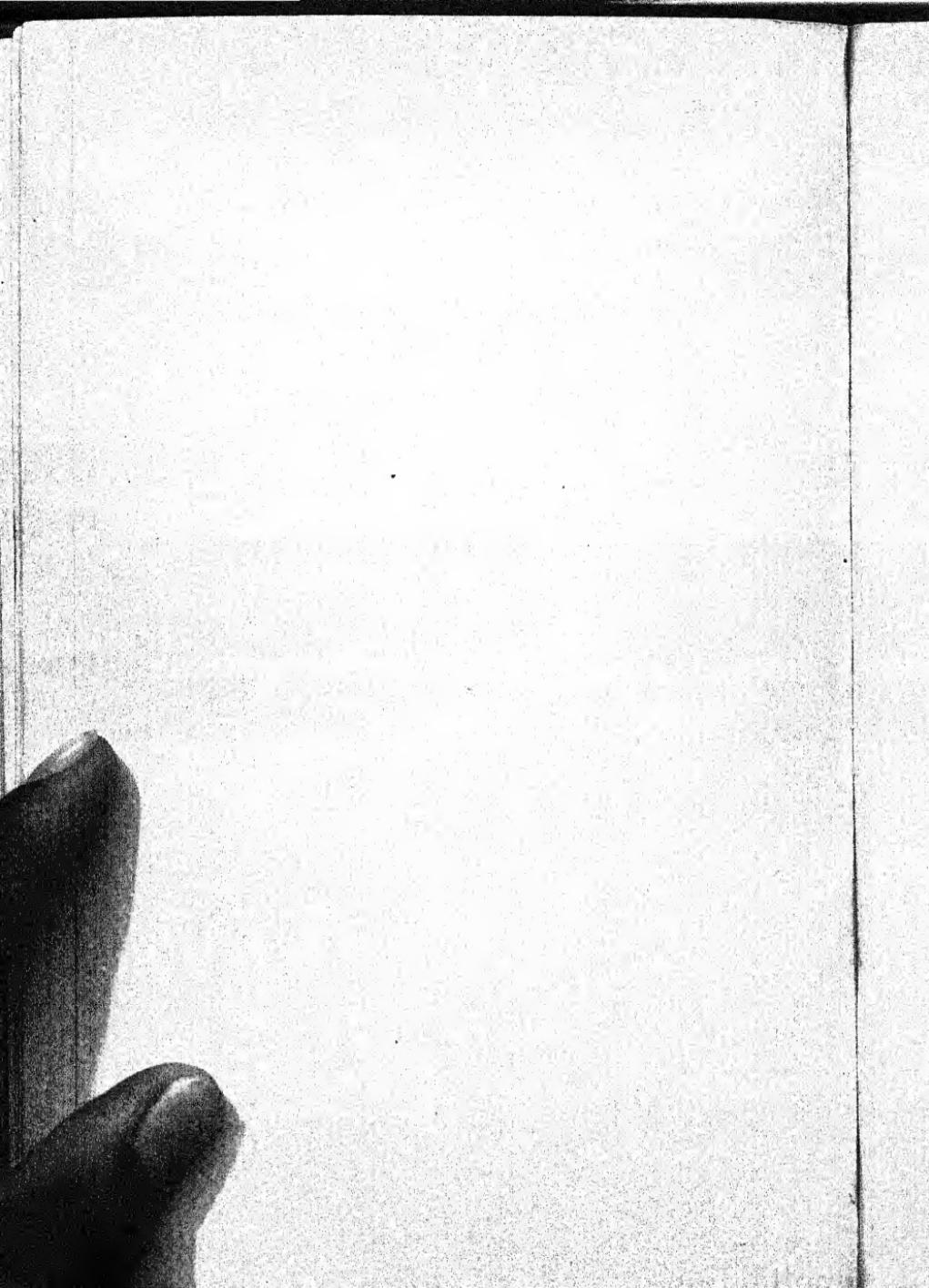
[Anarchy and rival chiefs, until
771 Supremacy of Timūr 1370.]

THE HOUSE OF CHAGATĀY*

(To face p. 242.)



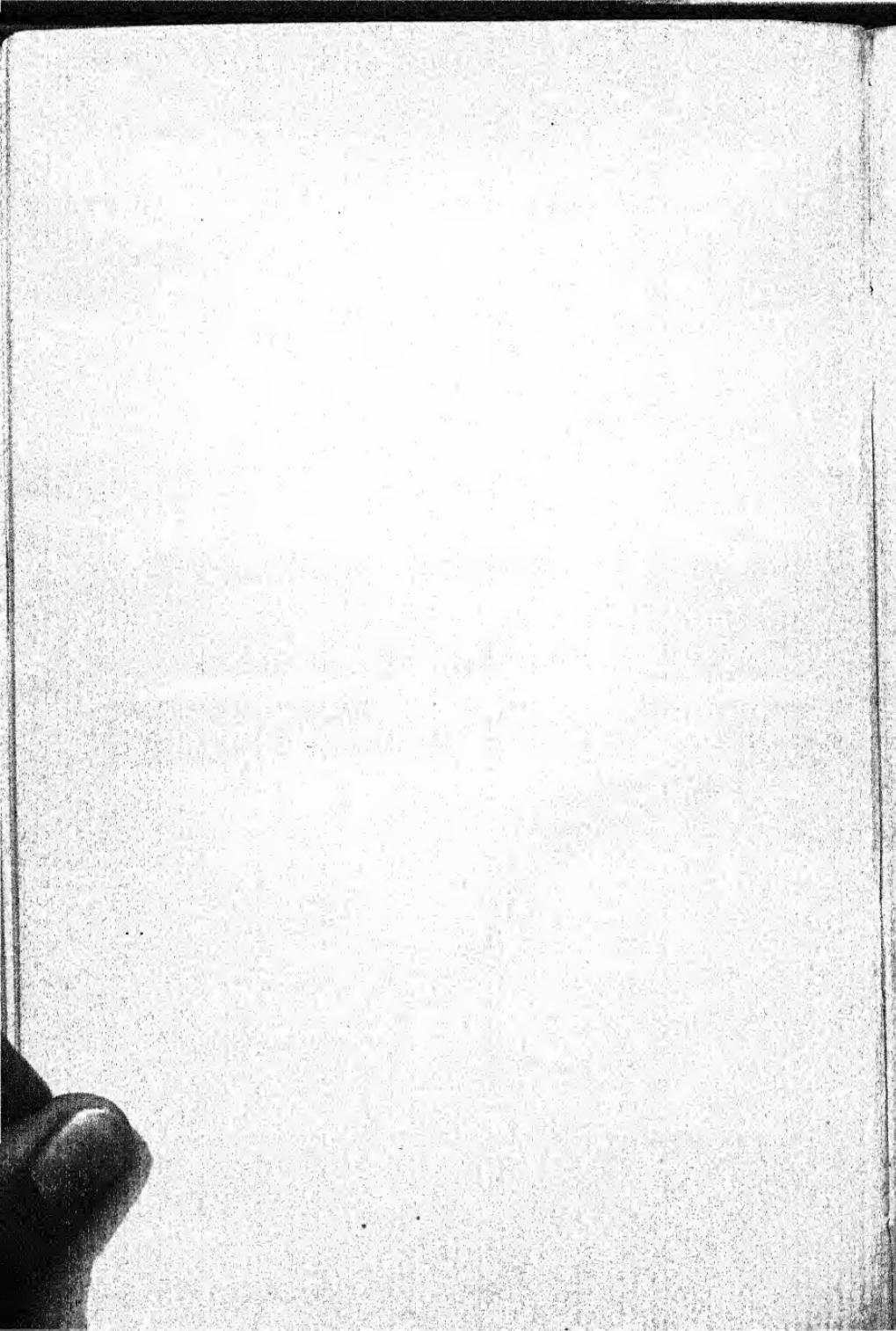
* This table has been kindly arranged for me by Sir Henry Howorth



XII. PERSIA

SÆC. XIV—XIX

- 86. JALAYRS (—'IRĀK)
 - 87. MUZAFFARIDS (FĀRS)
 - 88. SARBADĀRIDS (KHURĀSĀN)
 - 89. KARTS (HERĀT)
 - TĪMŪRID(S) (*See XIII*)
 - 90. KARĀ-KUYUNLĪ (ADHARBĪJĀN)
 - 91. AK-KUYUNLĪ (ADHARBĪJĀN)
 - 92. SAFĀVIDS
 - 93. AFGHĀNS
 - 94. AFSHĀRID(S)
 - 95. ZANDS
 - 96. KĀJĀRS
- SHĀHS
OF
PERSIA



XII. PERSIA

S.EC. XIV—XIX

On the decay of the power of the Persian Mongols a number of prominent chiefs and provincial governors asserted their independence. Of these the Jalayrs were the most powerful, and held the provinces of -'Irāk and Adharbījān, in which they were succeeded by the Turkomāns of the Black and White Sheep. The more eastern provinces were ruled by the Muzaaffarids, but not without a severe struggle with Abū-Ishāk and other members of the family of Mahmūd Shāh Injū, whose seat was Ispahān. In the north-east, Khurāsān was for a time divided between the Sarbadārīds and the Kart Maliks of Herāt. Timūr swept across Persia in 1384–93, and his descendants held part of the country for a century. At the beginning of the 16th century, however, Shāh Ismā'il the Ṣafavid established his authority over all the provinces governed by the Timūrids, Turkomāns, and minor dynasties, and presently added Khurāsān, since which time the modern kingdom of the Shāhs of Persia has remained practically unchanged in its boundaries, save for some losses on the west to Turkey.

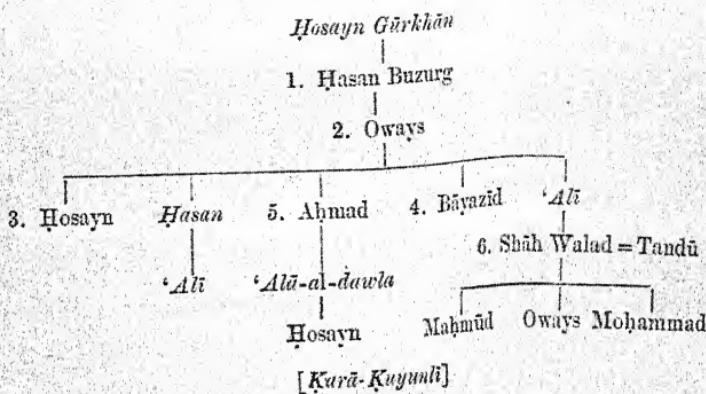
A.H.		A.D.
736—814	86. JALAYRS	1336—1411
	(—IRĀK, ETC.)	

The chiefs of the tribe of Jalayrs, also called Ilkānians, became the leading family in Persia after the death of the Mongol Abū-Sa'īd. Their head, Shaykh Ḥasan Buzurg ('the Great'), as has been seen (pp. 219, 220), set up three puppets on the Mongol throne; after which he assumed sovereign functions himself, and taking possession of -Irāk made Baghdaḍ his capital. His son Oways, who succeeded him in 757 (1356), took Adharbijān and Tabriz from the Golden Horde (759), and added Mōṣil and Diyār-Bakr to his dominions (766). Husayn, his successor, was engaged in wars with his neighbours the Muẓaffarids of eastern Persia, and with the Turkomāns of the Black Sheep, who had made themselves dominant in Armenia and the country south of Lake Van; until the latter agreed to become his allies (779). On his death in 1382 (784), the kingdom was divided between his two sons; Adharbijān and -Irāk falling to Sultān Aḥmad, and part of Kurdistān

(for a year) to Bāyazīd. On the invasion of Timūr, who overran northern Persia and Armenia in 1384-7, and reduced Baghdād, Mesopotamia, Diyār-Bakr, and Vān in 1393 (796), Sultān Ahmād fled to Egypt, where he took refuge with the Mamlūk Sultān Barkūk, who assisted him to recover Baghdād after Timūr's return to Samarqand. From this time until Timūr's death in 1405 (807) Sultān Ahmad's life was spent in losing and recapturing his dominions, and when in 808 he was once more actual ruler of Baghdād, his breach with Karā-Yūsuf the Turkomān and his ensuing invasion of Adharbījān ended in his defeat and death, 1410 (813). His nephew Shāh Walad continued to govern Baghdād until the arrival of the Black Sheep in 1411; and Shāh Walad's widow, Tandū (who had previously been married to the Mamlūk Barkūk) reigned at Wāsiṭ, -Baṣra, and Shūstar (doing homage, however, to the Timūrid Shāh Rukh) till 819, when her stepson succeeded to the government, and was followed by his brothers Oways (822-829) and Mohammad, and by their cousin Husayn, who was killed by the Black Sheep Turkomāns.*

* See Sir H. H. Howorth, *History of the Mongols*, iii, 654-679.

A.H.		A.D.
736	Shaykh Hasan Buzurg	1336
757	Shaykh Oways	1356
777	Hosayn	1374
784-5	Bāyazid (in Kurdistān)	
784	Sultān Ahmād	1382
	(Repeatedly expelled by Timūr 796-807)	
813	Shāh Walad	1410
—814		—1411



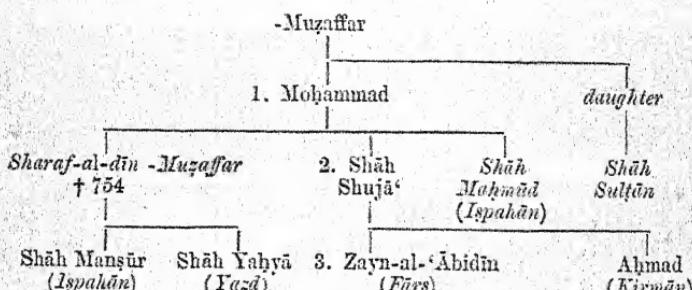
A.H.	A.D.
713—795	87. MUZAFFARIDS 1313—1393

(FĀRS, KIRMĀN, AND KURDISTĀN)

The Amīr -Muẓaffar, founder of this dynasty, a grandson of Ghiyāth-al-dīn Hājjī of Khurāsān, after holding various posts at the court of the Mongols of Persia, was appointed governor of Maybūd near Iṣpahān. His son Muḥāriz-al-dīn Muḥammad succeeded him in his government in 1313 (713), and received the much more important command of Yazd in Fārs in 1319 (719) from the Mongol Abū-Sa'īd. Kirmān was added in 1340 (741), and after a prolonged struggle with Abū-Ishāk Injū, Muḥammad captured Shīrāz and all Fārs in 1353 (754), and added Iṣpahān in 1356 (758), when Abū-Ishāk was executed. After carrying his arms successfully as far north as Tabrīz, Muḥammad was deposed and blinded in 1357 (759), and, although restored for a brief space, died in a second exile in 1364 (765). His successors retained the government of Fārs, Kirmān, and Kurdistān until the irruption of Timūr in 1387.* The poet Ḥāfiẓ lived at the court of Shāh Shujā'.

* Howorth, iii, 693—716.

A.H.		A.D.
713	Mubāriz-al-dīn Muḥammad b. -Muẓaffar	1313
759	Jalāl-al-dīn Shāh Shujā'	1357
786-9	Mujāhid-al-dīn 'Alī Zayn-al-'Abidīn <i>(Expelled by Timūr)</i>	1384- —1387
789	Shāh Yahyā (at Yazd) Sultān Ahmad (at Kirmān) Shāh Manṣūr (at Ispahān)	contemporary 1387
—795		—1393



A.H.	A.D.
737—783	88. SARBADĀRIDS 1337—1381
(KHURĀSĀN)	

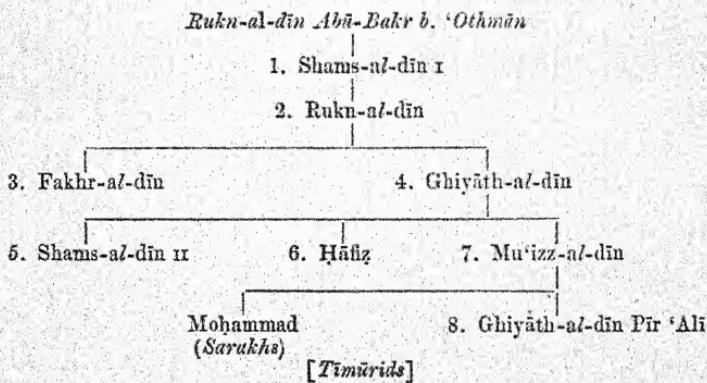
‘Abd-al-Razzāk, a native of the village of Bashtīn in Khurāsān, and at one time in the service of the Ilkhān Abū-Sa‘īd, in 1337 (737) headed a rebellion of his countrymen against the oppression of the local governor. The rebels took the name of *Sar-ba-dār* or “Head to the gibbet” in token of the neck-or-nothing-ness of their cause. Nevertheless they obtained possession of Sabzawār and the neighbouring district, and held it for nearly half a century, during which period twelve successive chiefs assumed the command, nine of whom suffered violent deaths.

A.H.	A.D.
737	‘Abd-al-Razzāk b. Fadl-Allāh
738	Wajih-al-dīn Mas‘ūd b. Fadl-Allāh
744	Ay-Timūr Mōhammād
746	Isfandiyār
747	Fadl-Allāh
748	Shams-al-dīn ‘Alī
753	Yahyā
756	Zahīr-al-dīn
760	Haydar -Kaşshāb
760	Luṭf-Allāh
761	-Hasan -Dāmīghānī
766	‘Alī -Mu‘ayyad
—783	[Abolished by Timūr] —1381

A.H.	A.D.	
643—791	89. KARTS (HERĀT)	1245—1389

The Maliks of Herāt of the Kart race of Ghōr had held their government from the early days of the Mongol rule in Persia. As the Mongols grew weak, the Karts became an important power in Khurāsān, until Herāt was conquered by Timūr in 1381 (783), and, after a period of vassalage, the dynasty was extinguished in 1389 (791).

A.H.	A.D.
643	Shams-al-din I
677-82	Rukn-al-din, <i>contemp.</i> 1278-83
684	Fakhr-al-din
708	Ghiyāth-al-din
729	Shams-al-din II
730	Hāfiẓ
732	Mu'izz-al-din
772	Ghiyāth-al-din Pir 'Ali
—791	—1389



A.H. A.D.
780-874 90. KARĀ-KUYUNLĪ 1378-1469

TURKOMANS OF THE BLACK SHEEP

(ADHARBIJĀN, ETC.)

In the last quarter of the fourteenth century a clan of Turkomāns, known as the Black Sheep, from the device on their standard, dominated the country south of the lake of Van, and, having allied themselves with the Jalayr Sultān Hosayn, established a dynasty in Armenia and Adharbījān. Karā-Yūsuf, the second chief of the line, was several times driven into exile by Timūr, but as often returned, and after the conqueror's death in 1405 (807) resumed his former dominions, and in 1411 added those of the Jalayrs. The Black Sheep were superseded in 1469 (874) by Uzun Hasan of the rival clan of the White Sheep.

A.H.		A.H.
780	Karā-Mohammad	1378
c. 790	Karā-Yūsuf	c. 1388
802	<i>Invasion of Timur</i>	1400
808	Karā Yūsuf (<i>restored</i>)	1405
823	Iskandar	1420
841	Jahān Shāh	1437
872	Hasan 'Alī	1467
—874		—1469

[Ak-Kuyuntı]

A.H.

91. AK-KUYUNLÌ

A.D.
1378-1502

TURKOMANS OF THE WHITE SHEEP.

(ADHĀRBĪJAN, ETC.)

The White Sheep or Ak-Kuyunlı succeeded their rivals the Black Sheep in Adharbijān and Diyār-Bakr, but after some thirty years of sole authority they were defeated by Shāh Ismā'il the Ṣafavid at the great battle of Shurūr in 1502 (907), and the dynasty soon afterwards expired.

A.H.		A.D.
780	Karâ-Yûluk 'Othmân	1378
809	Hamza	1406
848	Jahângîr	1444
871	Uzun Hasan	1466
883	Khalil	1478
884	Ya'kûb	1479
896	Baysunkûr*	1490
897	Rustam	1491
902	Alîmad	1496
903	Murâd	1497
905	Alwand	1499
906	Mohammad	1500
907	Murâd (<i>restored</i>)	1501
		—1502

[Safavids]

* 'Ali and Masih were rival claimants in 896.

A.H.

907—1311 92—6. SHĀHS OF PERSIA 1052—1893

A.D.

The series of the Shāhs of Persia is composed of five distinct dynasties of different races: the Ṣafavids, Afghāns, Afshārids, Zands, and Kājārs. Of these the first claimed Arab lineage, for the Ṣafavids traced their descent from the seventh Imām Mūsā -Kazam († 183), of the family of Hosayn the grandson of the prophet Moḥammad (p. 72). Many shaykhs of the family acquired a reputation for sanctity, and among these the most celebrated saint was Shaykh Ṣafi-al-dīn of Ardabil, from whom his descendants took their name of Ṣafawī or *Safavid*. It was not till four generations after Shaykh Ṣafi that one of his descendants, Haydar, added the rôle of warrior to the profession of saint. He engaged in a contest with Uzun Hasan of the White Sheep Turkomāns, and his third son Ismā'īl, preserving a continuity of policy, seized Shirwān, utterly defeated the Turkomāns at the battle of Shurūr in the spring of 1502 (907), and making Tabrīz his capital proceeded to conquer all Persia. The Timūrid governors and other petty dynasts were rapidly subdued, and in a few years Shāh Ismā'īl's arms had advanced through Khurāsān as far as Herāt, besides annexing the southern provinces,

till his dominions stretched from the Oxus to the Persian Gulf, from Afghānistān to the Euphrates. His territories now marched with those of the ‘Othmānlīs, and the religious antagonism between the Shi‘ite Ṣafavids and the Sunnite ‘Othmānlīs, embittered by the wide-spread Shi‘ite propaganda in Asia Minor, brought about a war. Selīm the Grim, after massacring or imprisoning 40,000 Shi‘ites in his Asiatic dominions, led a campaign against Shāh Ismā‘il. At the head of 80,000 horsemen and 40,000 foot, Selīm marched upon Persia and forced the Shāh to give battle at Chāldirān (1514), when the fine generalship of Sinān Pasha and the valour of the Janizaries won the day. Selīm entered Tabriz in triumph, and after annexing Diyūr-Bakr and some surrounding districts abandoned the idea of further conquests in the East in favour of an invasion of Egypt. From this time onwards there have been frequent contests over the Turkopersian frontier, and provinces in Georgia and Armenia have been taken and re-taken, but the general boundary has not greatly varied, except when Murād IV conquered Baghdađ and annexed Mesopotamia to the Turkish Empire in 1638. In the like manner the northern frontier was long contested by the Uzbegs; and Afghānistān has been

alternately part of India and part of Persia, until the establishment of an independent dynasty by Ahmad Durrānī in 1747. Bābar, the founder of the Mogul empire in India, was an ally of Shāh Ismā'il, and his son Humāyūn was aided in his recovery of Hindūstān by Shāh Tahmāsp. The greatest of the Ṣafavid kings was Shāh 'Abbās (1587–1629), who, seconded by Sir Anthony Shirley, the organizer of the Persian army, recovered several of the western provinces from the 'Othmānlis, and whose reign was celebrated for the cultivation of the arts and literature, the increase of public works, and the observance of an enlightened foreign policy. He belonged to the great epoch which produced such rulers as Sulaymān the Great, Akbar, and Elizabeth.

The Ṣafavid dynasty practically ended when the *Afghāns* under Maḥmūd rose in revolt, seized Herāt and Mashhad, defeated Shāh Hosayn, and after a seven months' siege took the capital Iṣpahān in 1722 (1135). Members of the Ṣafavid family, however, still retained a vestige of authority, chiefly in Mazandarān, and after ten years of anarchy, revolts, and Russian and Turkish invasions, Nādir Kuli the *Afshārid* Turk, made use of the pretext of restoring the enfeebled Ṣafavids, to seize the

supreme power, to which he soon added the avowed as well as the real sovereignty in 1736 (1148). Nūdir Shāh not only maintained the Persian kingdom in its fullest extent, but subdued Afghānistān, seized Kābul and Kandahār (1737), pushed on to Lahore, defeated the Mogul army after an obstinate battle near Karnāl, and sacked Dehlī in March 1738 (1151). Peace was made, and for a time the Persian empire extended from the Indus to the Caucasus.

The Afshārid dynasty, numbering four Shāhs, ended in a period of anarchy, during which the Afghān Āzād held Adharbijān; ‘Alī Mardān the Bakhtiyārī, Ispahān; Mohammad Hosayn, the chief of the Kājārs, ruled Astarabād; and Karīm Khān the Zand fought with Shāh Rukh the Afshārid for the supreme throne. The *Zand* eventually got the upper hand, and from 1750 (1163) to 1779 (1193) governed all Persia except Khurāsān, where Shāh Rukh the Afshārid, though old and blind, still maintained some show of authority. On the death of Karīm Khān a contest was waged for a dozen years between his *Zand* successors and Ākā Mohammad the *Kājār*, which ended in the triumph of the latter, whose nephew in the fourth generation now reigns over the relics of a great people from his throne at Tīhrān.

TĪMŪR AND THE

(To face p. 268)

TĪMŪR

† 807

Jalāl-al-dīn M
Adharbijān and -'Iri

daughter

Sultān Hosayn, † 808

'Omar
Idharbijān
etc. 807

Mohammad

Suyur-
ghātmish
Kābul,
Kandahār,
821 † 830

Mohammad
Jūkī,
† 848

III.

Manuchahr

7. S^k
Tīm,
Herāt, Bā
55

Mas'ud
Kābul, etc.
830-43

Kāruchar
Kābul, etc.
843

Khalil

'Ahmād
in, 861
13

A.H.

907—1148

92. ŠAFAVIDS

A.D.
1502—1736

907	Ismā'īl I	.	.	.	.	.	1502
930	Tahmāsp I	.	.	.	.	.	1524
984	Ismā'īl II	.	.	.	.	.	1576
985	Mohammad Khudabanda	.	.	.	.	.	1578
985	'Abbās I	.	.	.	.	.	1587
1038	Šafi I	.	.	.	.	.	1629
1052	'Abbās II	.	.	.	.	.	1642
1077	Sulaymān I	.	.	.	.	.	1667
1105	Hosayn I	.	.	.	.	.	1694
1135	Tahmāsp II	.	.	.	.	.	1722
1144	'Abbās III	.	.	.	.	.	1731
—1148							—1736

93. AFGHĀNS

1135	Mahmūd	.	.	.	.	.	1722
1137	Ashraf	.	.	.	.	.	1725
—1142							—1729

94. AFSHĀRIDĀN

1148	Nādir	.	.	.	.	.	1736
1160	'Ādil	.	.	.	.	.	1747
1161	Shāh Rukh	.	.	.	.	.	1748
—1210							—1796

A.H.

A.D.

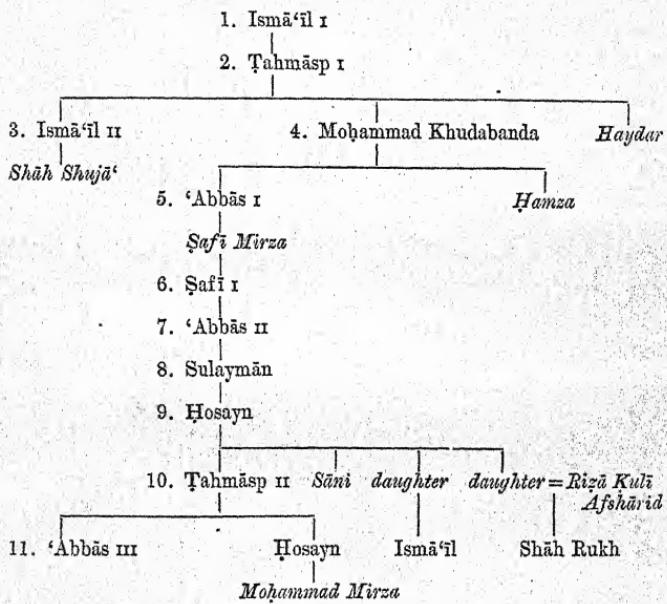
95. ZANDS

1163	Karim Khān	.	.	.	.	.	1750
1193	Abū-l-Fath	.	.	.	.	.	1779
1193	‘Alī Murād	.	.	.	.	.	1779
1193	Mohammad ‘Alī	.	.	.	.	.	1779
1193	Şādiq	.	.	.	.	.	1779
1196	‘Alī Murād (again)	.	.	.	.	.	1782
1199	Ja‘far	.	.	.	.	.	1785
1203	Lutf ‘Alī	.	.	.	.	.	1789
—1209							—1794

96. KĀJARS

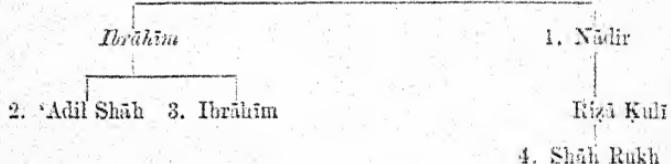
1193	Akā Mohammad	.	.	.	.	.	1779
1211	Fath ‘Alī	.	.	.	.	.	1797
1250	Mohammad	.	.	.	.	.	1834
1264	Nāṣir-al-dīn, <i>regnant</i>	.	.	.	.	.	1848

ŞAFAVIDS*

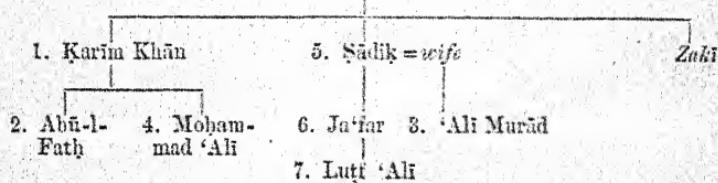


* The pedigrees of the Shāhs of Persia are abridged from the *Catalogue of Persian Coins in the British Museum*, by R. S. Poole, LL.D.

AFSHARIDS

Imām Kuli

ZANDS



KĀJARS

Mōhammad Hasan

1. Ākā Mōhammad

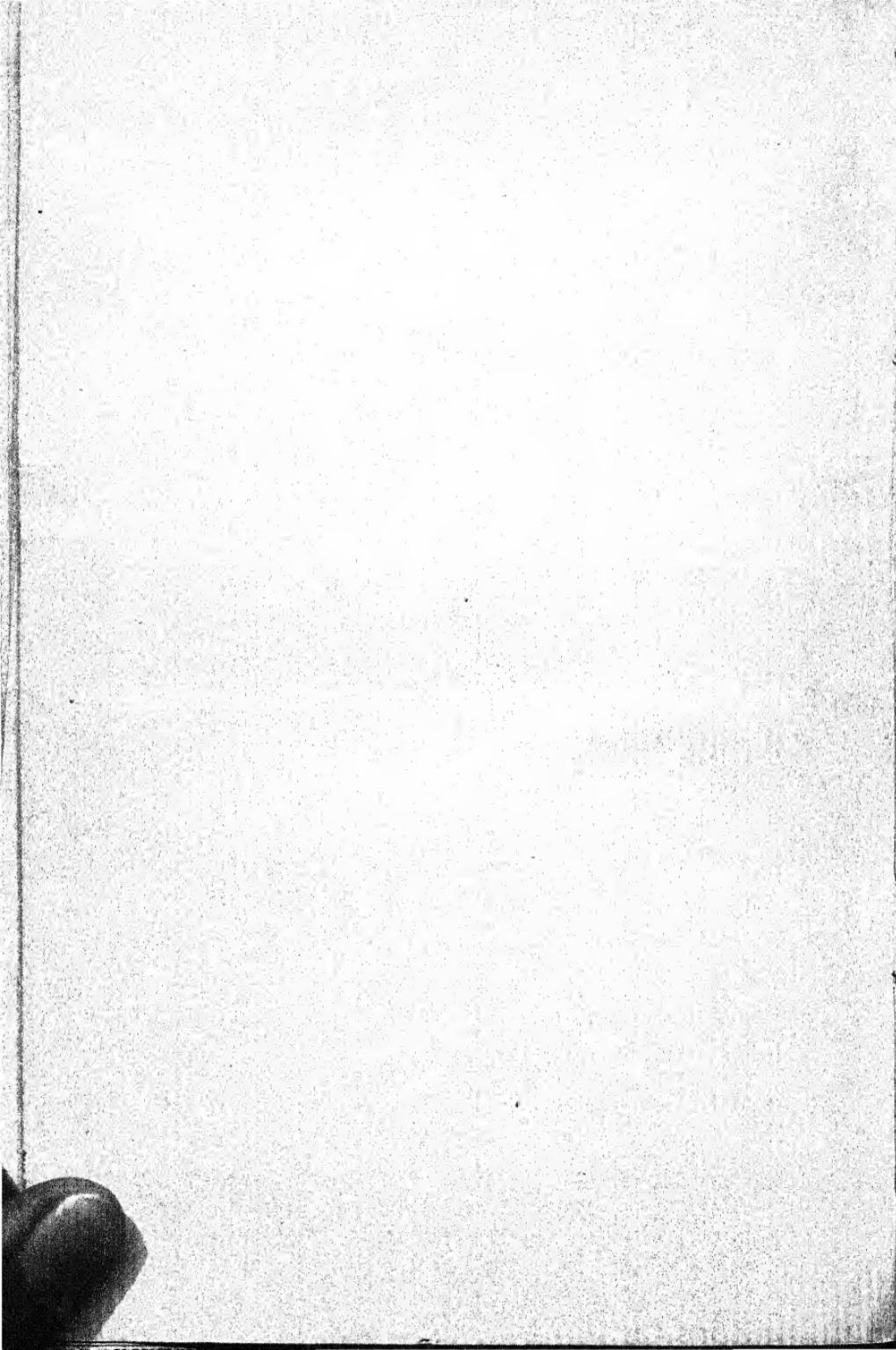
2. Fath 'Alī



XIII. TRANSOXIANA

SÆC. XIV—XIX

- 97. TĪMŪRIDΣ
- 98. SHAYBĀNIDΣ
- 99. JĀNIDΣ OF ASTRAKHĀN
- 100. MANGITS
- 101. KHĀNS OF KHOKAND
- 102. KHĀNS OF KHIVA



XIII.—TRANSOXIANA

S.EC. XIV—XIX

A.H.

771—906

97. TĪMŪRIDS

A.D.

1369—1500

Tīmūr, or Tīmūr Lang (Tīmūr the Lame), commonly corrupted into Tamerlane, was related to the family of Chingiz Ḳāān, and one of his ancestors had been Vizir to Chagatāy the son of Chingiz and ruler of Transoxiana. Tīmūr, who was born in 1335 (796), was appointed to the government of Kash by Tughā-Tīmūr, (p. 220), and became Vizir to the Chagatāy Khān Suyurghātmish, whose authority he completely usurped before 1369 (771), though he allowed the Khān and his successor Maḥmūd to retain the nominal sovereignty until 1397 (800). In 1380 (782) Tīmūr began a long series of campaigns in Persia; and in seven years overran Khurāsān, Jurjān, Mazandarān, Sijistān, Afghānistān, Fārs, Adharbijān, and Kūrdistān. An invasion by Tōktāmish, the Khān of the Golden Horde, called his attention nearer home in 1388, but in 1391 (793) he inflicted a total defeat on the Khān, which, however, had to be repeated in 1395

(797). Meanwhile in 1393 he had taken Baghdād from the Jalayrs, and had reduced Mesopotamia. In 1397 he entered northern India, and in the following year (801) raided Kashmīr and Dehlī. His next great movement was to the west. In 1401 he invaded Anatolia, and took Sīwās and Malatia; and in 1402 (804) totally routed the 'Othmānlī Turks at Angora and took Sulṭān Bāyazīd prisoner (p. 185). He reinstated the minor princes of Asia Minor, and, having subdued Syria and taken Aleppo and Damascus (803), he received the homage of their former possessor, the Mamlūk Sultān of Egypt. Whilst on the march for a still more ambitious campaign against China, Timūr died at Otrār, 1405 (807), aged 70.

The conquests of Timūr raised the kingdom of *Mawarā-l-nahr* ('Beyond the River' Oxus) or Transoxiana to an importance it had never before attained. Samarqand became the capital of an empire which stretched, in name at least, from Dehlī to Damascus, and from the Sea of Aral to the Persian Gulf; and although much of Timūr's conquest was rather a raid than an annexation, yet Transoxiana remained for some time the centre of a kingdom which embraced most of Persia and Afghānistān besides the provinces beyond the Oxus. But Timūr's

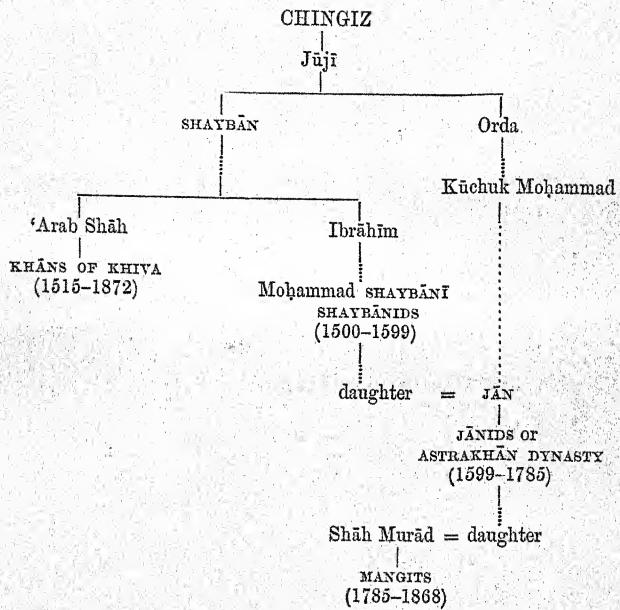
empire was too unwieldy to be maintained in all its original vastness. When the petty dynasties of Persia, Karts and Sarbadārīds, Muzaaffarids and Jalayrs, had been swept away, and the Turks had been driven out of Anatolia, and all Western Asia from the Hindū Kūsh to the Mediterranean trembled before one man, a reign of terror and not an organized empire had been established. As soon as the great conqueror was dead, Ottomans, Jalayrs and Turkomāns began to recover their lost provinces in the west. Although Timūr's descendants retained their hold of the north of Persia for a century, they were able to offer but a feeble resistance to the rising power of the Ṣafavids; and when in the sixteenth century the line of Shaybān (of the house of Chingiz) succeeded to the capital of Tamerlane, the dominions of his descendants had shrunk to the limits which the Khānate of Bukhārā long afterwards preserved. The table (facing p. 268) of Timūr's descendants, who struggled with one another for the disjointed fragments of his empire, shows one cause of their weakness; there were too many rivals. Shāh Rukh, indeed, for a while succeeded in subduing the jealousies of his kinsmen and maintaining the power and dignity of the empire; but after his death in 1447 (850) his

dominions were split up into various petty principalities, which made way for the *Safavids* in Persia and the *Shaybānids* in Transoxiana. Yet the line did not become extinct with the loss of Timūr's dominions. His descendant Bābar founded a new empire in Hindūstān which, known to us as that of the 'Great Moguls,' lasted down to the present century (see XIV.).

A.H.		A.D.
771	Timūr	1369
	[771 Suyūrghātmish, nominal Khān 790-800 Mahmūd , ,]	
807-12	Khalil	1404-9
807	Shāh Rukh	1404
850	Ulugh Beg	1447
853	'Abd-al-Latīf	1449
854	'Abd-Allāh	1450
855	Abū-Sa'īd	1452
872	Aḥmad	1467
899	Mahmūd	1493
900	<i>Anarchy</i>	1494
—906		—1500

[*Shaybānids*]

CONNEXION OF THE TRANSOXINE KHANATES



A.H.

906—1007

A.D.

98. SHAYBĀNIDS

1500—1599

Whilst the three sons of Maḥmūd, the last Tīmūrid Sultān of Transoxiana, were fighting over the ruins of an empire, a new power was approaching, which made an end of all the princes of Mā-warā-l-nahr and re-established a strong government in the place of anarchy. This was the Uzbeg horde led by Moḥammad Shaybānī, almost the last of the great warriors of the lineage of Chingiz. The early history of the family of Shaybān has been mentioned (pp. 238–40). Their home-line remained in Siberia as Czars of Tiumen; but a large proportion of the clan migrated to Transoxiana under Shaybānī, overthrew the rival princes of Tīmūr's line, and founded the Uzbeg kingdom, which survived in the Khānates of Bukhārā and Khiva until their submission to Russia within the last quarter of a century. This Uzbeg kingdom was ruled by several successive dynasties. First, the Shaybānids governed Transoxiana for the whole of the sixteenth century, leaving Khwārizm

(Khiva) to be ruled by its own line of Khāns (p. 278), who were also descended from Shaybān, and abandoning Khurāsān to the Ṣafavids. Next, the Jānids or Astrakhān dynasty, connected in the female line with the Shaybānids, governed the same gradually diminishing territory during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. Thirdly, their connexions by marriage, the Mangits, usurped the Khānate of Bukhārā, which was now greatly restricted by the growth of the neighbouring Khānate of Khoṭkand, by the rise of various independent principalities at Tashkand, Uratippa, and elsewhere, and by the aggrandizement of the Durrānids of Afghānistān. Finally Bukhārā, Khiva, and Khoṭkand, all fell before the aggression of Russia in 1868-1872.

A.H.		A.D.
906	Mohammad Shaybānī	1500
916	Köchkünji	1510
937	Abū-Sa'īd	1530
940	'Obayd-Allāh	1533
946	'Abd-Allāh I	1539
947	'Abd-al-Latīf	1540
959	Nūrūz Alymad	1551
963	Pir Mohammad I	1555
968	Iskandar	1560
991	'Abd-Allāh II	1583
1006	'Abd-al-Mu'min	1598
1007	Pir Mohammad II	1599

[Astrakhān]

Samarqand was the capital of the Shaybānids, but there was generally a powerful, and sometimes independent, government at Bukhārā. More than once the governor of Bukhārā was practically the ruler of Transoxiana, and this province became almost as much the Dauphiné of Samarqand under the Shaybānids as Balkh was under the succeeding dynasty of Astrakhān.

SUB-DYNASTY OF BUKHĀRĀ

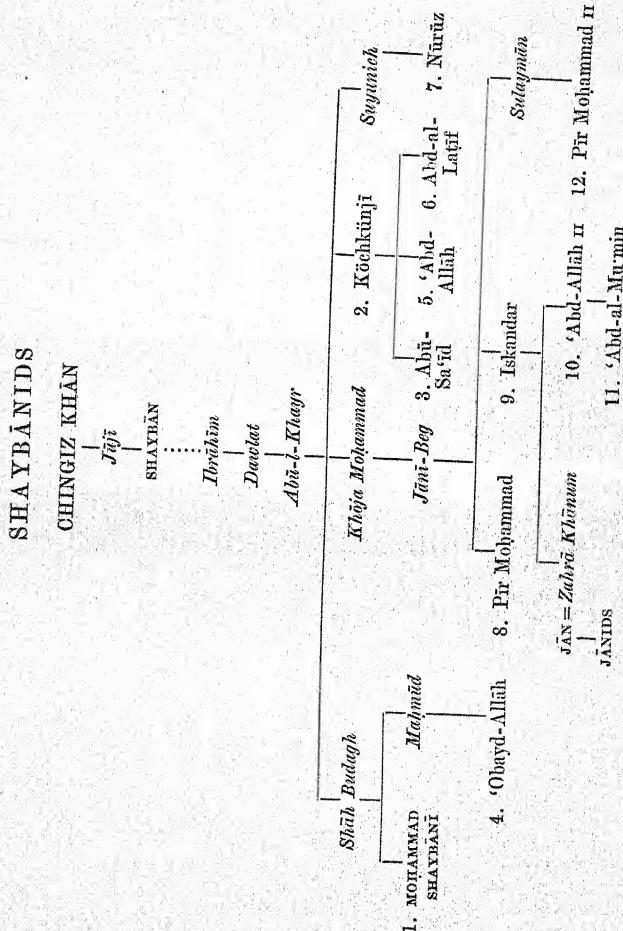
A.H.		A.D.
947	'Abd-al-'Azīz	1510
957	Yūr Moḥammad	1549
961	Burhān Sultān	1553
964	'Abd-Allāh (<i>who united Sāmārkānd in 986, and became from 991 'Abd-Allāh II of the Chief Khānate, q.v.</i>)	1556

SUB-DYNASTY OF SAMARKAND

968	Khusrū Sultān	1560
975	Sultān Sa'īd	1567
980	Juvanmard 'Alī	1572
986	'Abd-Allāh of Bukhārā	1578

SHAYBĀNIDS

273



A.H.

1007—1200

A.D.

99. JĀNIDS

1599—1785

OR ASTRAKHĀN DYNASTY

When the Russians absorbed the Khānate of Astrakhān or Hājjī Tarkhān (p. 229) in the middle of the 16th century, two of the dispossessed chiefs, Yār Məhammad and his son Jān took refuge at Bukhārā with Iskandar the Shaybānid, who presently gave his daughter in marriage to Jān. The issue of this marriage, Bākī Məhammad, succeeded (after a year's interval) his maternal uncle 'Abd-Allāh II, and he and his descendants, during most of the 17th century, ruled Samarkand, Bukhārā, Farghāna, Badakhshān, and Balkh, which last province was sometimes independent. Their power gradually decayed; the Durrānids eventually gained possession of all their Cisoxine territories (1752 ff.); a rival Khānate sprang up at Khoqand (Farghāna) about 1700; and the Jānids were finally ousted in 1785 by the chiefs of the Mangit tribe, who had possessed the real power for some years before the actual dethronement of the last Jānid, Abū-l-Ghāzī.

A.H.		A.D.
1007	Bākī Mūhammad	1599
1014	Vālī Mūhammad*	1605
1017	Imām Kūlī († 1060)	1608
1050	Nāqīr Mūhammad († 1061)	1640
1057	‘Abd-al-‘Azīz	1647
1091	Subhān Kūlī †	1680
1114	‘Obayd-Allāh‡	1702
1117	Abū-l-Fayd §	1705
1160	‘Abd-al-Mu‘min	1747
1164	‘Obayd-Allāh II	1751
1167	Mūhammad Rahīm (<i>Mangit</i>)	1753
1171	Abū-l-Ghāzī	1758
—1200		—1785

[*Mangits*]

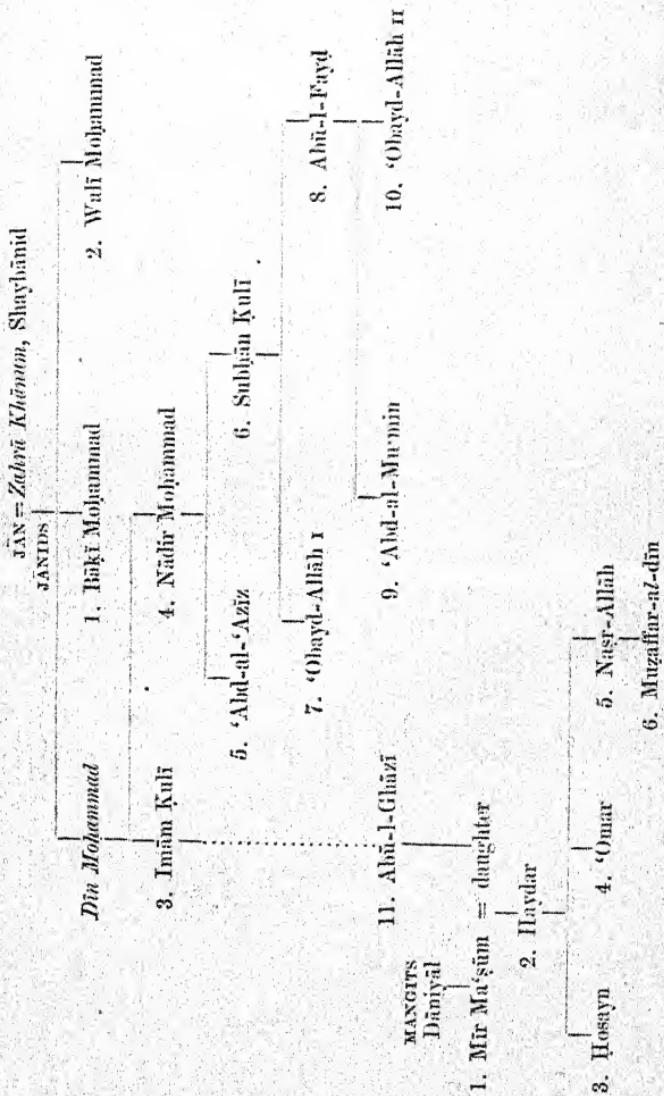
* Governed Balkh from 1007.

† Previously ruled Balkh for 23 years.

‡ Makīm Khān held Balkh 1114–1119.

§ Ruled only beyond the Oxus.

JĀNIDS AND MANGITS



A.H. A.D.
1200—1284 100. MANGITS 1785—1868

The Mangits, or "Flat-noses," a tribe akin to the Nogāys, left their Kipchak camping-grounds to follow the fortunes of Mohammad Shaybānī at the beginning of the 16th century. Under the Astrakhān dynasty they gradually increased in influence, and in the second half of the eighteenth century their chiefs became the vizirs of the rulers of Bukhārā and eventually supplanted their masters. Their dominions had shrunk considerably from the wide extent of the Shaybānid kingdom, and Ma'sūm Shāh's wars with the Durrānids for the recovery of the Cisoxine territory were rewarded with but temporary success. The present Khān has been tributary to Russia since the campaign of 1868.

A.H.		A.D.
1200	Mir Ma'sūm Shāh Murād	1785
1215	Haydar Tora	1800
1242	Hosayn	1826
1242	'Omar	1826
1242	Naṣr-Allāh	1827
1277	Muzaffar-al-din	1860
—1284	<i>Tributary to Russia</i>	—1868

A.H.

c. 921—1289 101. KHĀNS OF KHIVA c. 1515—1872

A.D.

Khwārizm or Khiva, which had once furnished an ambitious line of Shāhs of its own (p. 176), was an appanage of the house of Jūjī, and never properly belonged to the Khānate of Transoxiana; up to the time of Tīmūr it was held by the Golden Horde. After the confusion of the Tīmūrid period, the Uzbegs of Mohammad Shaybāni occupied Khiva as well as Transoxiana, and about 1515 an independent Uzbeg Khānate was established there, the early history of which is exceedingly obscure. Wars were constantly waged with Bukhārā with varying success. Nādir Shāh of Persia conquered Khiva in 1740 and a Persian governor ruled there for a year. Finally General Kaufmann annexed it on the part of Russia in 1872.

A.H.

		A.D.
c. 921	Ilbars I	c. 1515
c. 931	Sultān Hājjī	c. 1525
	Hasan Kuli	
	Šufyān	
	Bujugha	
	Avanak	
	Kal	
c. 946	Akatāy	c. 1540
953	Dost	1546

A.H.		A.D.
965	Hājjī Mōhammad I	1558
1011	‘Arab Mōhammad I	1602
1032	Isfandiyār	1623
1053	Abū-l-Ghāzī I	1643
1074	Anusha	1663
c. 1085	Mōhammad Arank	c. 1674
1099	Ishāk Akā Shāh Niyāz	1687
1114	‘Arab Mōhammad II	1702
	Hājjī Mōhammad II	
1126	Yadighār	1714
1126	Arank	1714
1127	Shir Ghāzī	1715
114x	Ilbars II	173x
c. 1153	<i>Annexation by Nādir Shāh</i>	1740
1154	Tagir (for Nādir Shāh)	1741
1154	Abū-Mōhammad	1741
115x	Abū-l-Ghāzī II	174x
1158	Kaip	1745
c. 1184	Abū-l-Ghāzī III	c. 1770
1219	Iltazar	1804
1221	Mōhammad Rahīm	1806
1241	Allāh Kūlī	1825
1258	Rahīm Kūlī	1842
1261	Mōhammad Amin	1845
1271	‘Abd-Allāh	1855
1272	Ḳutlugh Mōhammad	1855
1272?	Sayyid Mōhammad	1856?
1282	Sayyid Mōhammad Rahīm	1865
—1289	[<i>Annexation by Russia</i>]	—1872

A.H.

c. 1112—1293

102. KHĀNS OF

A.D.

KHOKAND

c. 1700—1876

Shāh Rukh, who claimed to be a descendant of Chingiz Khān, made himself independent in Farghāna and founded the Khānate of Khoķand about 1700. The chronology of the earlier Khāns is uncertain. In 1800 Tashkand was annexed by Khoķand. The Khānate passed into the possession of Russia in 1876.

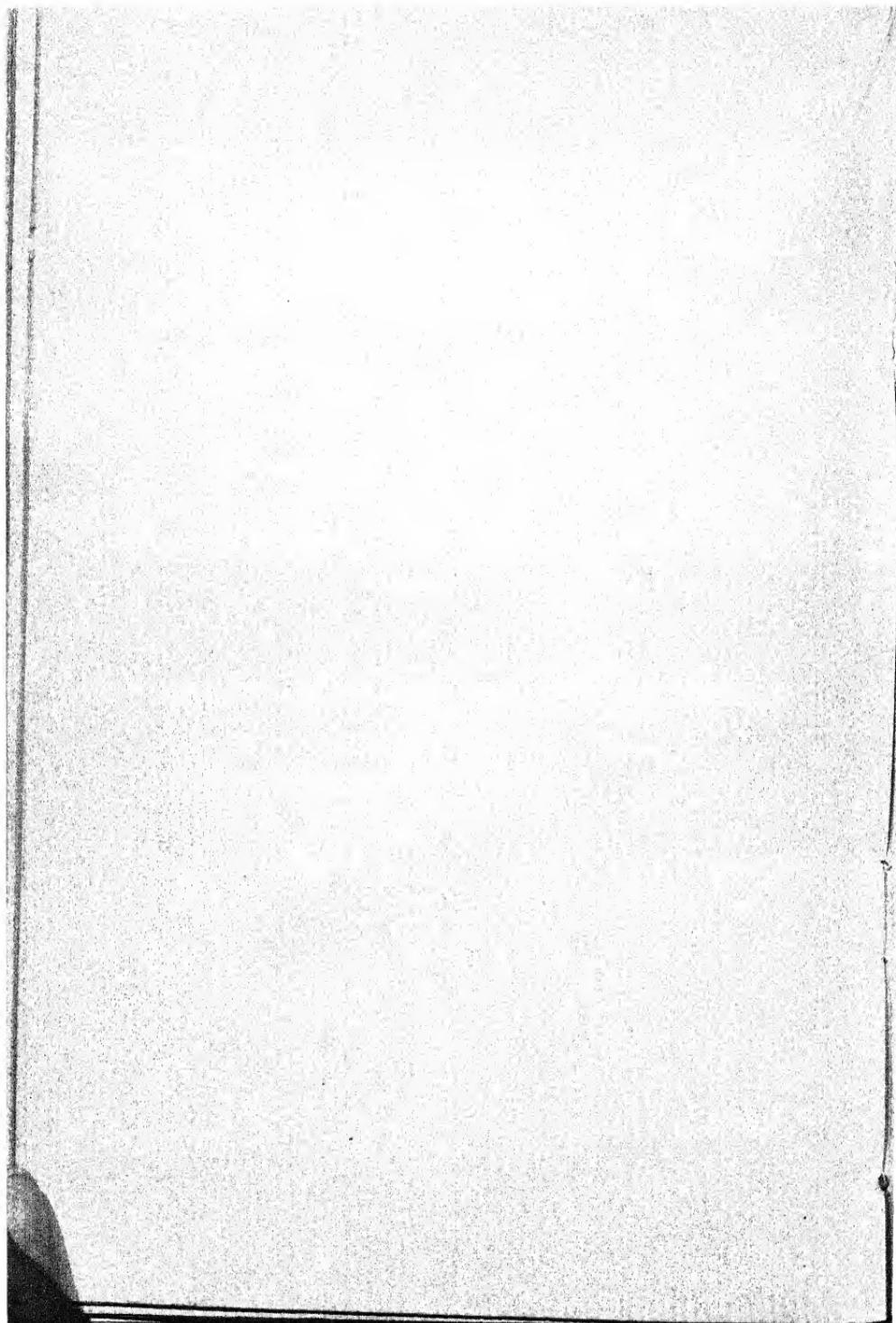
A.H.

A.H.		A.D.
c. 1112	Shāh Rukh Beg	c. 1700
	Rahīm	
	‘Abd-al-Karīm	
	Erdeni	
1184	Sulaymān	1770
1184	Shāh Rukh II	1770
1184?	Narbuta	1770?
1215	‘Alīm	1800
1224	Mohammad ‘Omar	1809
1237	Mohammad ‘Alī	1822
c. 1256	Shir ‘Alī	1840
1261	Murād	1841
c. 1261	Khudāyār	1845
1273	Malla	1857
1275	Shāh Murād	1859
c. 1277	Khudāyār (2nd reign)	1861
c. 1280	Sayyid Sultān	1864
1288	Khudāyār (3rd reign)	1871
1292	Nāṣir-al-dīn	1875
—1293	[Annexed by Russia]	—1876

XIV. INDIA
AND AFGHĀNISTĀN

SÆC. X—XIX

103. GHAZNAWIDS
104. GHŌRIDS
105. SULTĀNS OF DEHLI
106. KINGS OF BENGAL
107. KINGS OF JAUNPŪR
108. KINGS OF MĀLWA
109. KINGS OF GUJARĀT
110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH
111. BAHMANIDS OF THE DECCAN
112. 'IMĀD SHĀHS OF BERĀR
113. NIZAM SHĀHS OF AHMADNAGAR
114. BARĪD SHĀHS OF BIDAR
115. 'ĀDIL SHĀHS OF BIJĀPŪR
116. KUTŪB SHĀHS OF GOLKONDA
117. MOGUL EMPERORS OF HINDŪSTĀN
118. AMĪRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN



XIV. INDIA
AND AFGHĀNISTĀN

SÆC. X—XIX

No considerable part of India ever belonged to the Caliphate. Soon after their conquest of Herāt, indeed, the Arabs pushed on to Kābul in 664 (44) and thence descended to Multān; but this reconnaissance did not lead to continuous occupation. An advance from the south produced more permanent results. Piratical expeditions by sea to the mouths of the Indus were frequent in the early days of Islām, and in 711 (92) Mohammad Kāsim, a nephew of -Hajjāj, the celebrated governor of -Baṣra, conquered Sind from the coast as far as Multān, and although no attempt was made to enlarge this dominion, the province continued to be ruled by Arab governors for nearly two centuries.

The conquest of Hindūstān by the Moḥammadans, however, sprang not from Sind but from Afḡhānistān. The early annexation by the Arabs of the mountainous country

south of the Hindū Kūsh had been nominal and temporary, and Ya'kūb b. Layth the Saffārid of Sijistān (p. 129) was the first to establish a settled Mohammadan government at Kābul. Here his dynasty was succeeded by governors appointed by the Sāmānids (p. 131), and it was Alptigīn, one of the local governors of the Sāmānids, who laid the foundations at Ghazna of the first independent Mohammadan dynasty in Afghānistān.

Henceforward for two centuries Ghazna was the capital of a powerful dynasty to which it gave the name of *Ghaznawids*. The incursions of the Ghaznawids into India and their settlement at Lahore formed the true beginning of Muslim rule in Hindūstān. The Ghaznawid kingdom at Lahore prepared the way for Mohammad b. Sām the Ghōrid and his successors the Sultāns of Dehlī, who brought the whole of northern India under Mohammadan sway. The invasion of the Mongols under Bābar put an end to the divisions which had weakened the Dehlī kingdom in its later years, and Bābar's grandson Akbar organized the splendid Empire of the Great Moguls which lasted down to the present century.

A.H.
351—582

103. GHAZNAWIDS

A.D.
962—1186

(AFGHĀNISTĀN AND PANJĀB)

Among the Turkish slaves whom the Sāmānid princes delighted to honour with the chief posts in the government of their dominions, Alptigīn rose by favour of 'Abd-al-Malik to be commander of the forces in Khurāsān, but, being deprived of this office on the death of his patron, he retired in dudgeon in 962 (351) to the city of Ghazna, in the heart of the Sulaymān mountains, where his father had been governor under the Sāmānids, and where the son had succeeded to his authority. In the mountain fastnesses he could safely defy the ill-will of his masters in the plains; but he died in a year's time without enlarging the dominion he had assumed; nor did his son Ishāk or his slave Balkātigīn enhance the power of the Ghaznawids. The true founder of the dynasty was Sabaktigīn, another slave of Alptigīn, and the husband of his daughter. Sabaktigīn widened his territories on both sides; in India by the defeat of the Rājputs and the establishment of a government at Peshāwar: in Persia by the acquisition of Khu-

rāsān, of which he was appointed governor by the Sāmānid Nūh in 994 (384) in reward for his assistance in quelling a rebellion in Transoxiana. Sabaktigīn out of loyalty or prudence accepted the position of a vassal of the Sāmānids, but the vassalage was nominal; he had become more powerful than his liege-lord before his death in 997 (387).

Mahmūd of Ghazna, the son of Sabaktigīn, is one of the greatest figures in Mohammadan history. After overcoming his younger brother Ismā'il, who had forced a contest, he repudiated the supremacy of the feeble representative of the Sāmānids, and received an investiture for the governments of Khurāsān and Ghazna direct from the Caliph of Baghdađ, 'the dispenser of powers which he himself no longer enjoyed.* Having made peace with his powerful neighbours the Īlak Khāns, who were then giving the *coup de grâce* to the expiring Sāmānids, Mahmūd began a series of campaigns in India. Twelve several

* It is commonly asserted that Mahmūd then adopted the title of Sultān, which had never before been assumed by a Mohammadan ruler: but the statement is not warranted by his coins, whereon he styles himself occasionally Amīr and Sayyid, and very rarely Malik, but never Sultān. The first of the dynasty to use the new title was Ibrāhim, who doubtless imitated the Seljūks, who were the earliest to adopt the style of Sultān, according to the evidence of the coins. It is singular that this first of Indian Sultāns should be described as a 'professed devotee,' who copied Korāns and left seventy-six children.

times, between 1001 and 1024, he descended from his highlands into the plains of Hindūstān, and, gradually enlarging the scope of his expeditions, beyond Kashmīr and the Panjāb, at length he occupied Kanauj and Muttra (1017) and seized Sōmnāth and Anhalwāra, the capital of Gujarāt, 1024 (415). These expeditions were more or less raids undertaken with a view to plunder and to satisfy the righteous iconoclasm of a true Muslim, and the 'Idol-Breaker' returned to Ghazna laden with costly spoils from the Hindū temples of Sōmnāth and Muttra; but they led to far-reaching results. The way into India had been opened; the Panjāb had been permanently annexed; and the kingdom of Gujarāt had accepted a rāja from the hands of its conqueror.

Besides his Indian wars, Maḥmūd beat off the attack of the Ilak Khān, reduced Ghōr (1010) and the country of the Upper Marghāb (1012), and even annexed Transoxiana with its two great cities of Samarkand and Bukhārā in 1016 (407). Towards the close of his reign he discovered a serious danger in the growing power of the Seljūk chiefs Tughril and Chagar Beg, whom he had at first unwisely encouraged; but, after reducing them to apparent submission in 1027 (418), he did not live to witness their

final triumph. On his return from an expedition into the heart of the old Caliphate, in which he took Ispahān from the Buwayhids (p. 142), Maḥmūd died at Ghazna in the spring of 1030 (421). His magnificent encouragement of science, art, and literature, was no less remarkable than his genius as a general and statesman. He founded and endowed a university at Ghazna, and his munificence drew together perhaps the most splendid 'assemblage of literary genius,' including the poet Firdausī, that any Asiatic capital has ever contained.* Ghazna was enriched with palaces and mosques, aqueducts and public works, beyond any city of its age: for Maḥmūd had known how to learn from India, as well as how to plunder it.

The empire which had thus been founded stretched from Lahore to Samarkand and Ispahān; but it was soon lopped of its western limbs. In a few years the Seljūks (p. 151), after defeating Mas'ūd the son of Maḥmūd near Merv, had taken possession of all the Persian and Transoxine provinces of the Ghaznawids, from Balkh and Khwārizm to Ispahān and -Rayy (1037-1045); and the rulers of Ghazna learned to turn their eyes to the east, now that the west was closed to them. Lahore

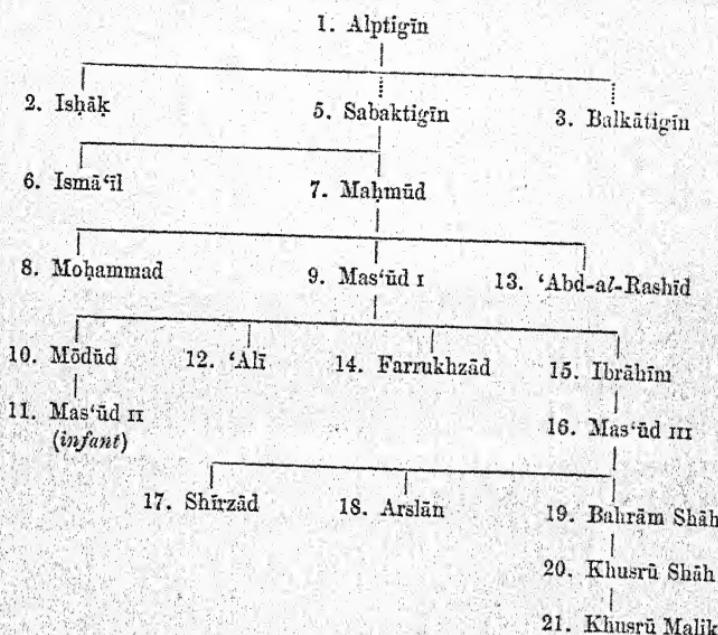
* Elphinstone, *History of India*, 341-5 (5th ed. 1866).

became their capital when Ghazna fell to the Ghōrids in 1161. Thus the losses in the west confirmed the settlement in Hindūstān, and when in 1186 (582) the successors of Mahmūd, who had not emulated his ambition, gave place to the hardy Afghāns of Ghōr, the Indian provinces soon separated from the highlands; and thus began the series of independent Mohammadan dynasties of India.

A.H.		A.D.
351	Alptigin	962
352	Ishāk	963
355	Balkātīgīn*	966
362	Pīrī	972
366	Sabaktagīn	976
387	Ismā'īl	997
388	Mahmūd, Yamin-al-dawla	998
421	Mohammad, Jalāl-al-dawla	1030
421	Mas'ūd I, Nāṣir-din-Allāh	1030
432	Mōdūd, Shihāb-al-dawla	1040
440	Mas'ūd II	1048
440	'Alī Abū-l-Hasan, Bahā-al-dawla	1048
440	'Abd-al-Rashid, 'Izz-al-dawla	1049
444	Tughrīl (usurper)	1052
444	Farrukhzād, Jamāl-al-dawla	1052
451	Ibrāhīm, Zāhir-al-dawla	1059
492	Mas'ūd III, 'Alā-al-dawla	1099
508	Shirzād, Kamāl-al-dawla	1114
509	Arslān, Sultān-al-dawla	1115
512	Bahrām Shāh, Yamin-al-dawla	1118
547	Khusrū Shāh, Mu'izz-al-dawla	1152
555	Khusrū Malik, Tāj-al-dawla	1160
—582	[Ghōrids]	—1186

* On the chronology of the early Ghaznawids see E. E. Oliver, *The Decline of the Sāmānis*, in *Journ. As. Soc. Bengal*, lv. pt. i. 1886.

GHAZNAWIDS



(.... Dotted lines indicate the relation of master to slave.)

A.H.
543—612

104. GHŌRIDS

A.D.
1148—1215

(AFGHĀNISTĀN, HINDŪSTĀN)

From early times the mountainous district of Ghōr (or Ghūr), between Herāt and Ghazna, had been the seat of a small but practically independent dynasty, who usually made the fortress of Firuz-kōh their headquarters. Mahmūd of Ghazna had reduced this principality in 1010 (401), when the Afghāns of Ghōr were ruled by Mohammad b. Sūrī; and the descendants of this chief continued to govern at Firuz-kōh and Bāmiyān under the orders of the Ghaznawids, with whom they allied themselves by marriage. The execution of one of the family (Kuṭb-al-dīn Mohammad) by his father-in-law Bahrām Shāh the Ghaznawid was avenged by the capture of Ghazna in 1148 (548) by the murdered man's brother, Sayf-al-dīn Sūrī, the ruler of Ghōr; but in the following year Bahrām Shāh succeeded in re-entering his capital, and tortured the invader to death. This second act of barbarity brought down a signal punishment upon Ghazna

at the hands of a third brother, 'Alā-al-dīn Ḥosayn, surnamed Jahān-sōz, or 'world-incendiary,' from the ferocity with which he gave up the splendid city of Maḥmūd the idol-breaker to fire and sword. Contemptuously leaving the ashes of Ghazna, 'Alā-al-dīn returned to Ghōr; and after a brief captivity in the hands of Sultān Sinjar the Seljūk of Khurāsān, he died in 1161 (556) in a time of anarchy, when the Ghuzz Turkomāns swept over Afghānistān and for a while abolished both Ghōrid and Ghaznawid governments.

The Ghuzz soon wended their migratory way into Persia, and on their departure two brothers, nephews of the 'World-Incendiary,' became the leaders of the Ghōrid family. The elder, Ghiyāth-al-dīn b. Sūm, had taken Ghazna from the Ghuzz in 1173 (569), and annexed Herāt two years later. He remained titular sovereign of all the wide possessions of his family until his death in 1202 (599). The younger brother, however, Shihāb-al-dīn, afterwards styled Mu'izz-al-dīn, and commonly known as Mohammad Ghōrī, was the real ruler and extender of the kingdom. He conquered part of Khurāsān from the Seljūks, and then began a series of campaigns in India, in which he reduced Sind and Multan (571),

where Arab governors had made Muslim rule familiar; subdued the Ghaznawids in their last retreat at Lahore in 1186 (582); and then proceeded to attack the leader of the Chohān Rājputs, Prithwī Rāja of Ajmīr. His first onslaught was repulsed with terrible loss (587), but in the following year, 1192, a hard-fought battle on the same field of Thaneswar ended in the total defeat of the Rājputs, and the death of Prithwī Rāja and many others of the 150 princes who had assembled for the defence of Hindūstān. The victory meant nothing less than the submission of nearly the whole of northern India; for Kanauj fell in 1194, and Gwāliōr, Bandākhand, Bihār, and Bengal were successively reduced by the generals of Mohammad Ghōrī. For the first time the whole of Hindūstān admitted, in a greater or less degree, Mohammadan sway.

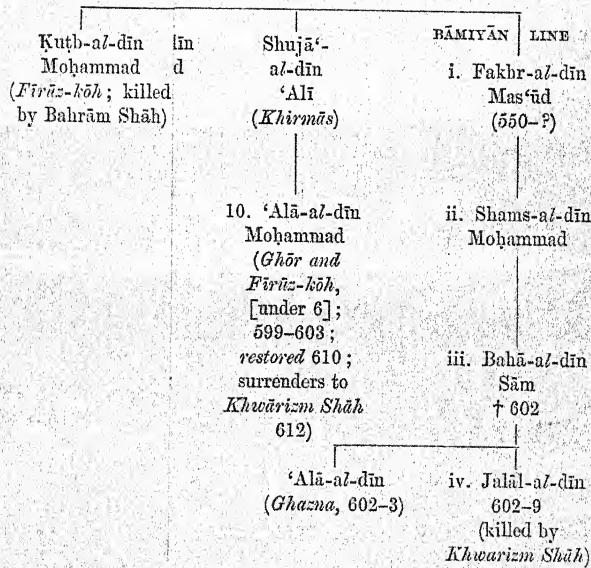
So long as his brother lived, Mohammad Ghōrī always remained a loyal viceroy, but on Ghiyāth-al-dīn's death in 1202 (599) he succeeded to the supreme authority, when his first duty was to defend his realm against the Khwārizm Shāh, who had overrun Persia and was forcing his way into Afghānistān. In the midst of the confusion of this invasion, Mohammad Ghōrī was assassinated by a party

of Ghakkars in 1206 (602). His dynasty did not long survive him. His nephew Maḥmūd was indeed proclaimed Sultān throughout the wide dominions conquered by the uncle; but the unity of the kingdom vanished with its founder. The Turkish slaves who had served as generals under Moḥammad Ghōrī assumed independent power. Kuṭb-al-dīn Aybak became the first of the Slave Kings of Dehlī; Nāṣir-al-dīn Kubācha ruled in Sind; and Yildiz governed Ghazna. The titular successor of the great Ghōrid, from his capital of Firūz-kōh, reigned over little more than western Afghānistān (Ghōr and Herāt) with part of Khurāsān; and from all these the Ghōrids were expelled by the armies of the *Khwārizm Shāh* in 1215 (612). Long afterwards, however, their descendants recovered some relics of their ancient dominions, and the *Kart* princes of Herāt traced their origin to the family of Moḥammad Ghōrī.

The opposite table shows the relationship and places of government of the chief members of the Ghōrid family.*

* For further details see E. Thomas, *Supplementary Contributions to the Series of the Coins of the Kings of Ghaznī* (1859).

(To face p. 204)





A.H.
602—962

105. SULTĀNS OF DEHLĪ 1206—1554
(HINDŪSTĀN)

A.H.

Mohammad Ghōrī, after conquering northern India to the mouth of the Ganges, either by his own campaigns or by those of his generals, appointed his slave Kuṭb-al-dīn Aybak to act as his viceroy at Dehlī; and on the death of the master in 1206 (602) the slave proclaimed himself sovereign of Hindūstān, and founded the first Mohammadan dynasty which ruled exclusively in India; for hitherto Mohammadan India had been but an outlying province of the kingdom of Ghazna. This dynasty, the first of five which preceded the Mogul conquest, is commonly known as the *Slave Kings*. The greatest of the line was Altamish (more correctly Iltutmish), who subdued the governor of Sind, Nāṣir-al-dīn Kubācha; compelled the viceroy of Bengal to acknowledge the supremacy of Dehlī; repelled the attempt of Yildiz to revive in India the kingdom of which the Khwārizm Shāh

had robbed him at Ghazna; and in turn withstood the attempts of Jalāl-al-dīn, the son of that Shāh, to set up his rule in Hindūstān when driven over the Hindū-Kūsh by the Mongols of Chingiz Khān. Fortunately for India these Mongols stopped short at the Indus, though their raids were a frequent source of alarm for many years. Altamish vigorously maintained his authority over the whole country north of the Vindhya mountains; and the Caliph of Baghdađ, for the first time recognizing a distinct Mohammadan kingdom of India, gave its sovereign the sanction of a formal diploma of investiture from the spiritual head of Islām. Rid̄iya, the daughter of Altamish, was the only woman who ever sat on the throne of Dehli, until Queen Victoria figuratively took her seat there in 1858. Under the later Slave Kings the Hindūs began to pluck up the courage which had oozed away before the arms of Mohammad Ghōrī and Altamish; and Balban had to sternly suppress many serious native outbreaks, which were in some degree the fruit of his policy of getting rid of the Slave governors—a policy which led to the subversion of his own dynasty.

The *Khaljī* Turks, the second Muslim dynasty of India, began to extend Mohammadan rule beyond the Vindhyas

into the Deccan. 'Alā-al-dīn Muḥammad re-conquered Gujerāt, 1297; took Chitor and temporarily subdued the Rajputs, 1303; and his eunuch general Malik Kafūr seized Deogiri and Warangal, and founded a Deccan province of the Dehlī kingdom. The extent of the dominion, however, tended towards disruption. After power had again changed hands, and a Turkish slave had established the *Taghlakid* dynasty, Muḥammad b. Taghlaq, a man of remarkable but bizarre genius, perceived the impossibility of ruling the Deccan from Dehlī, and accordingly sought to transplant by force both court and population from the northern capital to Deogiri, which he re-named Dawlatābād, the 'seat of government.' But he could not check the disintegrating process which had begun; whole provinces revolted, and he was ever on the wing from end to end of his empire to suppress rebellion; and his successors were forced to witness the separation of province after province from the central stock, until the Sultān of Dehlī sometimes commanded but a small district round his capital. The invasion of Timūr, who turned northern India into a shambles in 1398-9, hastened the catastrophe. The *Sayyids* and *Lōdīs*, who followed the house of Taghlaq, held but one govern-

ment out of the many that now prevailed in Hindūstān. Bengal, Jaunpūr, Mālwa, and Gujerāt were the seats of independent Mohammadan dynasties, and the Rājputs and the Hindūs of the Deccan had recovered much of their former possessions.

The irruption of the Moguls under Bābar, who established his authority over most of northern India, save Bengal, in 1526–30, was too brief to accomplish the work of re-uniting the scattered fragments of the empire of 'Alā-al-dīn the Khaljī. After Bābar's death the Moguls were driven out of India by Shīr Shāh and the Afghāns of Bengal 1539–40 (946–7), and the courage and genius of the Afghān conqueror almost availed to restore the waning prestige of the Mohammadan power. But the provinces refused to obey an Afghān sovereign, and their disunion opened the way for the return of Bābar's son Humāyūn in 1554 (962) and the establishment under Akbar of the famous Mogul Empire, which lasted to the present century.

A. SLAVE KINGS

A.H.		A.D.
602	Aybak, Kuṭb-al-dīn	1206
607	Ārām Shāh	1210
607	Altamish (Iltutmish), Shams-al-dīn	1210
633	Fīrūz Shāh I, Rukn-al-dīn	1235
634	Ridiya	1236
637	Bahrām Shāh, Mu'izz-al-dīn	1239
639	Mas'ūd Shāh, 'Alā-al-dīn	1241
644	Maḥmūd Shāh I, Nāṣir-al-dīn	1246
664	Balban, Ghiyāth-al-dīn	1265
686	Kay-Kubād, Mu'izz-al-dīn	1287

B. KHALJĪS

689	Fīrūz Shāh II, Jalāl-al-dīn	1290
695	Ibrāhim Shāh I, Rukn-al-dīn	1295
695	Moḥammad Shāh I, 'Alā-al-dīn	1295
715	'Omar Shāh, Shihāb-al-dīn	1315
716	Mubārak Shāh I, Kuṭb-al-dīn	1316
720	Khusrū Shāh, Nāṣir-al-dīn	1320

C. TAGHLAKIDS

A.H.		A.D.
720	Taghlaq Shāh I, Ghīyāth-al-dīn	1320
725	Mohammad II b. Taghlaq	1324
752	Fīrūz Shāh III	1351
790	Taghlaq Shāh II	1388
791	Abū-Bakr Shāh	1388
792	Mohammad Shāh III	1389
795	Sikandar Shāh I	1392
795	Mahmūd Shāh II	1392
797	Naṣrat Shāh (<i>interregnum</i>)	1394
802	Mahmūd II restored	1399
815	Dawlat Khān Lōdī	1412

D. SAYYIDS

817	Khiḍr Khān	1414
824	Mubārak Shāh II, Mu'izz-al-dīn	1421
837	Mohammad Shāh IV	1433
847	'Ālim Shāh	1443

E. LÖDĪS

855	Bahlūl Lōdī	1451
894	Sikandar II b. Bahlūl	1488
923	Ibrāhīm II b. Sikandar	1517
—930	<i>Invasion of Bābar</i>	—1526

F. AFGHĀNS

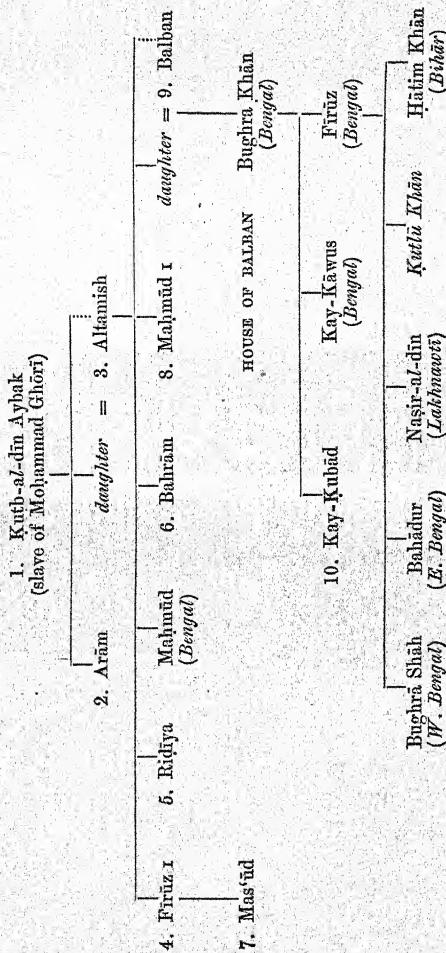
946	Shīr Shāh	1539
952	Islām Shāh	1545
960	Mohammad V, 'Adil Shāh	1552
961	Ibrāhīm III Sūr	1553
962	Sikandar Shāh III	1554

[*Mogul Emperors*]

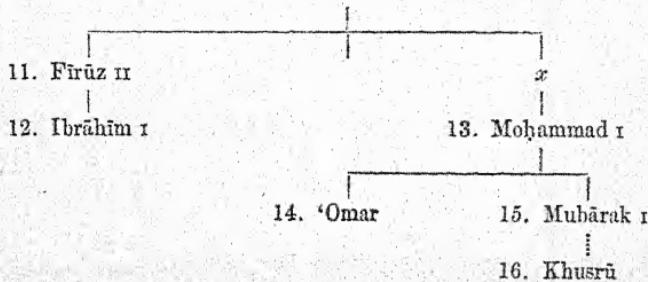
SULTANS OF DEHLI

301

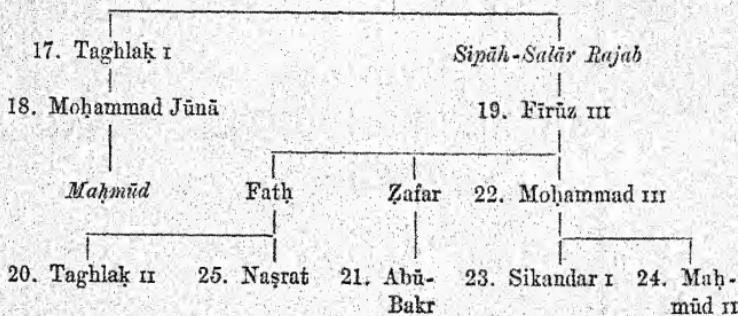
A. SLAVE KINGS



B. KHALJIS



C. TAGHLĀKIDS



D. SAYYIDS

27. Khidr

28. Mubārak II

Farid

29. Muḥammad IV

30. 'Ālim

F. AFGHĀNS

34. Shīr Shāh

x

Ghāzi Khān Sūr

38. Sikandar III

35. Islām Shāh

x

36. Muḥammad

'Adil

37. Ibrāhīm III Sūr

*Firuz**Shīr Khān*

PROVINCIAL DYNASTIES OF INDIA

The Empire of Mohammad b. Taghlak included the whole of Hindūstān, together with Telingana and other districts in the Deccan. Before his death the more distant provinces began to grow into independence, and soon after the beginning of the fifteenth century the greater part of his dominions was in the hands of seven provincial Moḥammadan dynasties, besides the Hindū Rājas.

A.H.		A.D.
599—984	1. Governors and Kings of Bengal . . .	1202—1576
796—905	2. Sharķī Kings of Jaunpūr . . .	1394—1500
804—937	3. Kings of Mālwa . . .	1401—1530
799—980	4. Kings of Gujurāt . . .	1296—1572
735—995	5. Kings of Kashmir . . .	1334—1587
801—1008	6. Fārūkīds, Kings of Khāndesh . . .	1309—1599
748—933	7. Bahmanids, Kings of Kulgarga . . .	1347—1526

On the decay of the Bahmanids, the following five dynasties divided their dominions between them:—

890—980	8. Imād Shāhs of Berār . . .	1484—1572
896—1004	9. Nizām Shāhs of Ahmādnagar . . .	1490—1595
897—1018	10. Barid Shāhs of Bidar . . .	1492—1609
895—1097	11. ‘Ādil Shāhs of Bijāpūr . . .	1489—1686
918—1098	12. Kuṭb Shāhs of Golkonda . . .	1512—1687

The Hindūstān dynasties were absorbed into the Mogul Empire by Akbar, and those of the Deccan succumbed to the attacks of Aurangzīb.

A.H.		A.D.
599—984	106. GOVERNORS AND	1202—1576
	KINGS OF BENGAL	

Mohammad Bakhtiyār, the conqueror and first governor of Bengal, subdued but a small part of the present province, chiefly in the neighbourhood of his capital Lakhnawtī. In the early part of the thirteenth century Sonārgāon and Sātgāon became seats of Mohammadan governors, and the name Bangāla included these as well as Lakhnawtī. Firūzābād (Pandūah) was the capital of the triple province, until in 1446 (850) the seat of government was again moved to Lakhnawtī, which was now first called Gaur, and remained the capital until 1564 (972), when it was succeeded by Tāndah. The governors of Bengal sometimes also held Bihār, and occasionally Chittagong and Orīsa. When the Dehli kings grew weak, the Bengal governors waxed independent, and several dynasties assumed kingly powers. Humāyūn occupied Bengal in 944-6, but after the successful defeat of the Moguls by Shīr Shāh in 1539 (946) governors were again appointed, and again (960) founded independent dynasties. In 982, however, Bihār fell before the arms of Akbar, and by 1576 (984) the Mogul was supreme in Bengal.

A. GOVERNORS

A.H.		A.D.
599	Mohammad Bakhtiyār Khaljī	1202
602	'Izz-al-din Mohammad Shirān	1205
605	'Alā-al-din Mardān	1208
608	Ghiyāth-al-din 'Iwaz	1211
624	Nāṣir-al-din Maḥmūd	1226
627	'Alā-al-din Jānī	1229
627	Sayf-al-din Aybak	1229
631	'Izz-al-din Tughril Tughān Khān . .	1233
642	Kamar-al-din Tamar Khān-Kirān . .	1244
644	Ikhtiyār-al-din (Mughith-al-din) Yūsbak .	1246
656	Jalāl-al-din Mas'ūd Malik Jānī . .	1258
657	'Izz-al-din Balban	1258
659?	Mohammad Arslān Tatar Khān. . . .	1260?
	Shir Khān	
	Amin Khān	
677	Mughith-al-din Tughril	1278
681	*Nāṣir-al-din Bughrā Khān	1282
691	Rukn-al-din Kay-Kāwus	1291
702	Shams-al-dīn Firuz Shāh	1302
718	Shihāb-al-din Bughrā Shāh (West Bengal)	1318
710	Ghiyāth-al-din Bahādur Shāh (East Bengal)	1310
719	" , , (All Bengal)	1319
723-6	Nāṣir-al-din . . . (Lakhnawti)	1323-5
725-31	Bahādur Shāh restored, with Bahrām (East Bengal)	1324-30
731-9	Bahrām Shāh (alone)	1330-8
726-40	Kadr Khān (Lakhnawti)	1325-39
724-40	'Izz-al-din A'zam-al-mulk . . . (Satgāon)	1323-39

* The following six governors belonged to the family of Balban, the Sultan of Dehlī, see the genealogy p. 301.

B. KINGS

A.H.		A.D.
739—984		1338—1576
739—50	Fakhr-al-din Mubārak Shāh	(East Bengal)
750—3	Ikhtiyār-al-dīn Ghāzī Shāh	(East Bengal)
740—6	‘Alā-al-dīn ‘Alī Shāh	(West Bengal)

HOUSE OF ILYĀS

740—6	Shams-al-dīn Ilyās Shāh (contending in West Bengal)	1339—45
746	“	(West Bengal)
753—9	“	(all Bengal)
759—92	Sikandar Shāh r b. Ilyās	1358—89
792	Ghiyāth-al-dīn A’zam Shāh b. Sikandar (<i>rebels</i> 1370) <i>reigns</i>	1389
799	Sayf-al-dīn Hamza Shāh b. A’zam	1396
809	Shams-al-dīn b. Hamza	1406

HOUSE OF RĀJA KĀNS

812	Shihāb-al-dīn Bāyazid Shāh (with Rāja Kāns)	1409
817	Jalāl-al-dīn Mohammad Shāh b. Rāja Kāns .	1414
835	Shāms-al-dīn Alīmad Shāh b. Mohammad .	1431

HOUSE OF ILYĀS (*restored*)

846	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh r	1442
864	Rukn-al-dīn Bārbak Shāh b. Maḥmūd r . .	1459
879	Shams-al-dīn Yūsuf Shāh b. Bārbak	1474
886	Sikandar Shāh rr b. Yūsuf	1481
886	Jalāl-al-dīn Fath Shāh b. Maḥmūd r . . .	1481

HABSHI KINGS

A.H.		A.D.
892	Sultān Shāhzāda Bārbak	1486
892	Sayf-al-dīn Fīrūz Shāh I	1486
895	Nāṣir-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh II b. Fatḥ Shāh (of <i>Ilyās</i> stock)	1489
896	Shams-al-dīn Abū-l-Naṣr Muẓaffar Shāh	1490

HOUSE OF HOSAYN SHĀH

899	‘Alā-al-dīn Hosayn Shāh	1493
925	Nāṣir-al-dīn Naṣrat Shāh b. Hosayn	1518
939	‘Alā-al-dīn Fīrūz Shāh II b. Naṣrat	1532
939	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh III b. Hosayn (partial rule 1526)	1532
—944	(<i>Conquest by Humāyūn</i>)	—1537

HOUSE OF MOHAMMAD SŪR

960	Shams-al-dīn Mohammad Sūr Ghāzī Shāh	1552
962	Bahādur Shāh (Khidr) b. Mohammad Sūr	1554
968	Ghiyāth-al-dīn Jalāl Shāh b. Mohammad Sūr	1560
971	(Son of preceding)	1563

HOUSE OF SULAYMĀN KĀRĀRĀNĪ

971	Sulaymān Khān Kārārānī (Bihār and Bengal)	1563
980	Bāyazīd Shāh b. Sulaymān	1572
980	Dāwūd Shāh b. Sulaymān	1572
—984	[<i>Mogul Emperors</i>]	—1576

A.H.		A.D.
796—905	107. SHARKĪ KINGS OF JAUNPŪR	1394—1500
	(‘KINGS OF THE EAST’)	

Khwāja-Jahān, the vezir of Mahmūd of the house of Taghlak, deserted his youthful sovereign and founded an independent government at Jaunpūr, whence he and his successors held sway for a time over Bihār, Oudh, Kanauj, and Barāich, with considerable state, as their noble monuments testify; and made war upon their former masters at Dehli (which they twice besieged), and their neighbours the kings of Mālwa. In 1476 (881, or according to some historians 879) Jaunpūr was conquered by Sikandar b. Bahlōl and reunited to Dehli; but the adherents of the banished Hosayn Shāh endeavoured for some years to restore the fallen dynasty.

A.H.		A.D.
796	Khwāja-Jahān	1394
802	Mubārak Shāh	1399
803	Shams-al-dīn Ibrāhīm Shāh Sharqī b. Mubārak	1400
841	Maḥmūd Shāh b. Ibrāhīm	1441
861	Mohammad Shāh (jointly with his father Maḥmūd)	1450
862	Hosayn Shāh b. Maḥmūd	1458
—905	fled to Bengal 881, died 905	—1500

[Sultāns of Dehli]

1479

for date
of conquest
of Dehli
by Bahlōl
shāh + 1479

A.H.

804—937

108. KINGS OF MĀLWA

A.D.

1401—1530

Mālwa was among the old Rājput kingdoms which longest withstood the Mohammadan invasion. It had boasted one of the most illustrious of the ancient Hindū dynasties, who made their capital, Ujjayn, a seat of learning and science. Three centuries of contest elapsed before it was subdued, in the time of Sultān Balban of Dehlī. Its natural boundaries were the Narbadā on the south, the Chambal on the north, and Gujarāt and Bandalkhand on the west and east. Under the Khaljī kings, however, it included Hūshangābād, Ajmīr, Rantambhor, and Elichpūr, and even Chitōr was sometimes forced to pay tribute. Its Mohammadan capital, Mandū, founded by Hūshang Ghōrī, stood on a spacious plateau surrounded by precipices, and was famous for its palaces and mosques.

Two successive Mohammadan dynasties reigned in Mālwa. The first was founded by Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī, a governor of the king of Dehlī, and consisted of himself, his son, and his grandson. The second dynasty was established

by Maḥmūd Khaljī, the vezir of the grandson of Dilāwar, and fell when Mālwa was annexed in 1530 (937) by the neighbouring king of Gujarāt, with whom the rulers of Mālwa had waged perpetual war. The Khaljis were a fighting race, and had carried the arms of Mālwa to the gates of Dehlī in the north and Bidar in the south, whilst with the Rājputs of Chitōr and Chanderī their hostilities were unceasing.*

I. GHŌRĪS

A.H.		A.D.
804	Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī	1401
808	Hūshang (Alp Khān) b. Dilāwar . . .	1405
838	Mohammad Ghaznī Khān b. Hūshang . .	1434

II. KHALJĪS

839	Maḥmūd Shāh i Khaljī	1435
880	Ghiyāth Shāh b. Maḥmūd	1475
906	Nāṣir Shāh b. Ghiyāth	1500
916	Maḥmūd ii b. Nāṣir	1510
—937	[Kings of Gujarāt]	—1530

* The list of the Kings of Kashmir should follow here; but their chronology is so uncertain that an accurate table can hardly be constructed. See my *Catalogue of the Coins of the Muhammadan States of India*, xlvi, 68.

A.H.

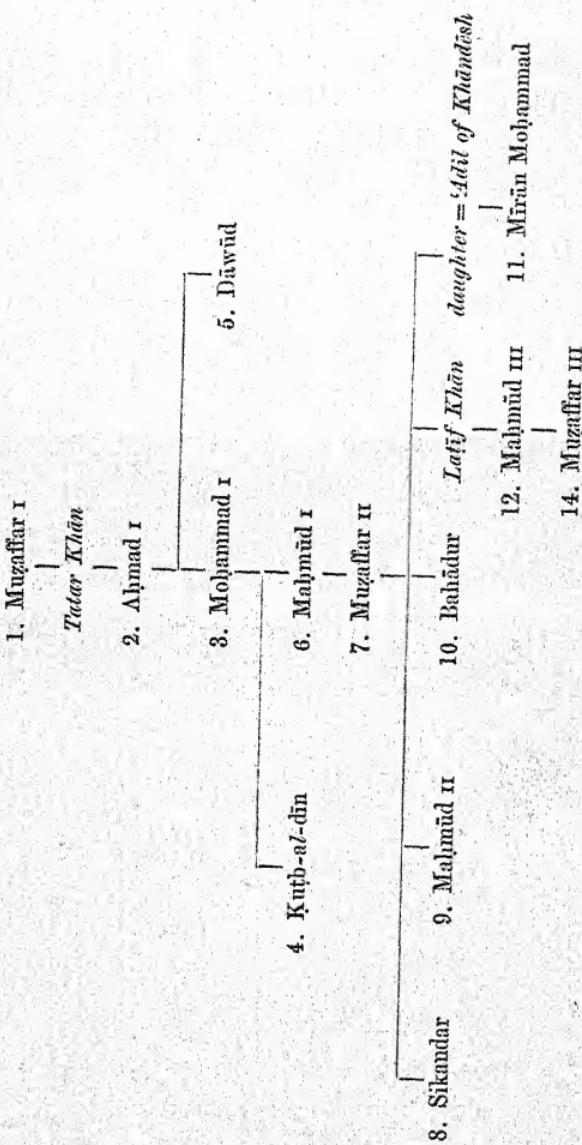
799—980 109. KINGSS OF GUJARĀT 1396—1572 A.D.

Gujarāt owed its long immunity from Moḥammadan subjection to its inaccessible position, beyond the great desert and the hills connecting the Vindhya with the Aravali range, which rendered it difficult to invade except by sea. It was not until the time of 'Alā-al-dīn of Dehlī, at the close of the 13th century, that Gujarāt became a Moḥammadan province. At the end of the 14th century it became independent again, but its rulers were now Muslims instead of Hindūs. Zafar Khān, the son of a Rājput convert, was appointed to the government of Gujarāt in 794, and assumed independence in 1396 (799). He found himself surrounded by enemies, Rājput rājas and wild tribes of Bhils, and possessed of but a narrow territory between the hills and the sea, including, however, a considerable stretch of the coast, as far as Sūrat at least. He soon enlarged his dominions by the conquest of Īdar and Diu; plundered Jhalor; and even took possession of Mālwa for a space in 1407. Ahmād Shāh I, his successor, founded Ahmādābād, which became the capital of the dynasty and afterwards of the Mogul

province, and is still an important city. Mahmūd Shāh i not only carried on the traditional wars of his family with Mālwa and Khāndēsh, but added the stronghold of Jūnagarh in Kattīwār, and Champanīr, to his dominions, and kept a large fleet to subdue the pirates of the islands and to attack the Portuguese; to whom Bahādur Shāh, the conqueror of Mālwa, conceded the right to build a factory at Diu, and at whose hands he met his death. The last years of the dynasty were clouded by the intrigues of factious nobles, and the kings became mere puppets; until Akbar's conquest in 1572 (980) restored prosperity to the harassed province.

A.H.		A.D.
799	Muzaffar Shāh i Zafar Khān	1396
814	Aḥmad Shāh i	1411
846	Mohammad Karīm Shāh	1443
855	Kuṭb-al-dīn	1451
863	Dāwūd Shāh	1458
863	Mahmūd Shāh i Baykara	1458
917	Muzaffar Shāh ii	1511
932	Sikandar Shāh	1525
932	Nāṣīr Khān Mahmūd ii	1525
932	Bahādur Shāh	1526
943	Mirān Mohammad Shāh Fārūkī (of Khāndēsh)	1536
944	Mahmūd Shāh iii	1537
961	Aḥmad Shāh ii	1553
969	Muzaffar Shāh iii Ḥabīb	1561
—980	[Mogul Emperors]	—1572

KINGS OF GUJARĀT



A.H.

A.D.

801—1008 110. KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH 1399—1599

Nāṣir Khān, the first Mohammad ruler of Khāndesh who asserted his independence of the kingdom of Dehlī, claimed to be descended from the caliph 'Omar. He was related by marriage to the kings of Gujerāt, from whose dominions Khāndesh (comprising the lower valley of the Taptī) was separated only by a belt of forest. The capital Burhānpūr was founded near the fortress of Asīrgarh. Akbar took Burhānpūr and received the homage of its king in 1562; but Khāndesh was not fully incorporated in the Mogul Empire until 1599 (1008), when Asīrgarh fell after a six months' siege.

A.D.						A.H.
772	<i>Malik Rāja</i>	.	.	.	.	1370
801	Nāṣir Khān	.	.	.	.	1299
841	Miran ‘Ādil Khān I	.	.	.	.	1437
844	Miran Mubārak I	.	.	.	.	1441
861	‘Ādil Khān II	.	.	.	.	1457
909	Dāwūd Khān	.	.	.	.	1503
916	‘Ādil Khān III	.	.	.	.	1510
926	Miran Muhammad Shāh I	.	.	.	.	1520
942	Miran Mubārak II	.	.	.	.	1535
974	Miran Muhammad II	.	.	.	.	1566
984	‘Ali Khān	.	.	.	.	1576
1005	Bahādur Shāh	.	.	.	.	1596
—1008	[<i>Mogul Emperors</i>]					—1599

THE DECCAN

A.H.	III. BAHMANIDS	A.D.
748—933		1347—1526

(KINGS OF KULBARGA, ETC.)

The Deccan was partly conquered by Mohammadans for the first time by 'Ala-al-din Mohammad of Dehli, who in 1294 seized Deogiri and Elichpür and thus formed a new province south of the Sātpura mountains. Mohammad b. Taghlak enlarged the Deccan province by an invasion of Telingana in 1322, and for a time made Deogiri (re-named Dawlatābād) the capital of his empire. Among the numerous revolts which disturbed his reign that of the recently organized province of the Deccan was the earliest to achieve independence. From 1347 for nearly two centuries the Bahmanid kings of Kulbarga, Warangal and Bidar, held sway over the northern half of the Deccan above the Kistna. Their founder was Hasan Gāngū, an Afghān in the employment of a Brahman at Dehli. He rose to high office under the Taghlak Sultāns and received the title of Zafar Khān. When the revolt against Mohammad b. Taghlak broke out in the Deccan, Hasan placed himself at the head of

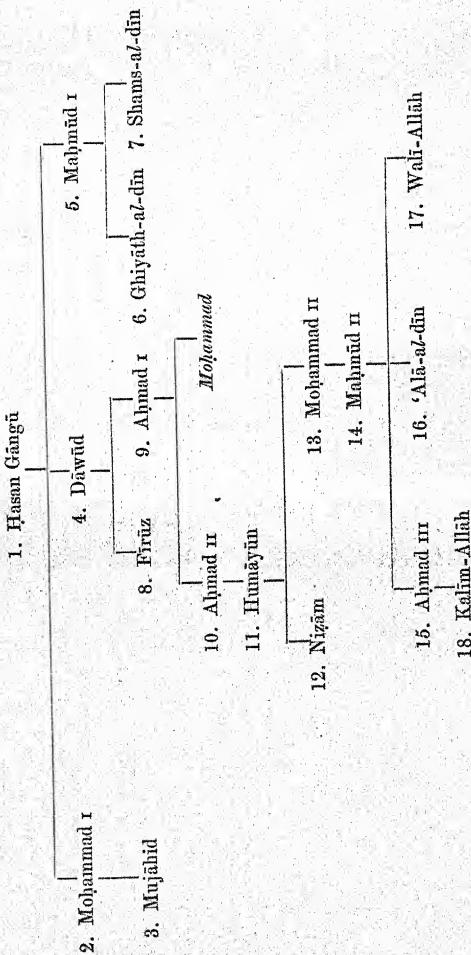
the insurgents, drove the royal troops from the country, and ascended the throne at Kulbarga under the style of 'Alā-al-dīn Ḥasan Gāngū Bahmānī.* His dominions marched on the north with Berār, on the east with Telingana, whilst the river Kistna and the sea formed the southern and western boundaries. They included the greater part of the modern Bombay Presidency south of Sūrat and most of the Nizām's territory. In addition, the Rajas of Telingana and Vijāyanagar were from time to time compelled at the point of the sword to pay homage and tribute. Under 'Alā-al-dīn Aḥmad II the Konkan was reduced and the neighbouring kings of Khāndesh and Gujarāt were defeated. In 1471 Mohammad Shāh II carried his arms into Orīsa, seized Conjeveram, and made war in the south upon the Rāja of Belgāon; so that the Bahmanids' sway extended from sea to sea and included nearly the whole of the Deccan north of Mysore. The extension of territory was followed by a new division into provinces, and the division led to disintegration. Yūsuf 'Ādil Shāh, a successful general of Mohammad Shāh II, declared the independence of the

* See an article by James Gibb in *Numismatic Chronicle*, III. i. 91-115; and my *Catalogue of the Coins of the Muhammadan States of India in the British Museum*, lxii-lxvi.

new province of Bijāpūr; Nizām-al-mulk prepared the way for the separation of Junayr; ‘Imād-al-mulk was proclaimed king in Berār, and the loss of these provinces was speedily followed by the independence of the rest and the extinction of the parent dynasty. The ‘Imād Shāhs of Berār, Nizām Shāhs of Ahmādnagar, Bārid Shāhs of Bidār, Adil Shāhs of Bijāpūr, and Kūtb Shāhs of Golkonda divided the kingdom of the Bahmanids amongst them.

A.H.		A.D.
748	Hasan Gāngū ‘Alā-al-dīn Zafar Khān	1347
759	Mohammad Shāh I	1358
776	Mujāhid Shāh	1375
780	Dāwūd Shāh	1378
780	Mahmūd Shāh I	1378
799	Ghiyāth-al-dīn	1397
799	Shams-al-dīn	1397
800	Tāj-al-dīn Fīrūz Shāh	1397
825	Aḥmad Shāh I	1421
838	‘Alā-al-dīn Aḥmad Shāh II	1435
862	‘Alā-al-dīn Humāyūn Shāh	1457
865	Nizām Shāh	1461
867	Mohammad Shāh II	1463
887	Mahmūd Shāh II	1482
924	Aḥmad Shāh III	1518
927	‘Alā-al-dīn Shah	1520
929	Wali-Allāh Shāh	1522
932	Kalīm-Allāh Shāh	1525

BAHMANIDS



A.H.			A.D.
890—980	112. 'IMĀD SHĀHS		1484—1572
	(BERĀR)		
890	Fath-Allāh		1484
910	'Alā-al-dīn		1504
e. 936	Daryā		e. 1529
e. 968	Burhān		e. 1560
976	Tufāl (usurper)		1568
—980			—1572

[*Nizām Shāhs*]

A.H.			A.D.
896—1004	113. NIŻĀM SHĀHS		1490—1595
	(AHMADNAGAR)		
896	Alḥmad i b. Nizām Shāh		1490
914	Burhān i		1508
961	Hosayn		1553
972	Murtaḍā		1565
996	Mirān Hosayn		1588
997	Ismā'īl		1589
999	Burhān ii		1590
1003	Ibrāhīm		1594
1004	Alḥmad ii		1594
1004	Bahādur*		1595

[*Mogul Emperors*]

* Murtaḍā ii reigned nominally from 1598–1607; and the province then came under the domination of Malik Amber.

A.H.		114. BARĪD SHĀHS (BIDAR)	A.D.
897—e. 1018		114. BARĪD SHĀHS (BIDAR)	1492—e. 1609
897	Kāsim I.	.	1492
910	Amīr I	.	1504
945	‘Alī	.	1549
990	Ibrāhīm	.	1562
997	Kāsim II	.	1569
1000	Mirza ‘Alī	.	1572
e. 1018	Amīr II	.	e. 1609
895—1097		115. ‘ĀDIL SHAHS (BIJĀPŪR)	1489—1686
895	Yūsuf ‘Ādil Shāh.	.	1489
916	Ismā‘il	.	1511
941	Mallū	.	1534
941	Ibrāhīm I	.	1535
965	‘Alī I	.	1557
987	Ibrāhīm II	.	1579
1035	Mohammad	.	1626
1070	‘Alī II	.	1660
—1097		[Mogul Emperors]	—1686
918—1098		116. KUTB SHĀHS (GOLKONDA)	1512—1687
918	Sultān Kuli	.	1512
940	Jamshīd	.	1543
957	Subhān Kuli	.	1550
957	Ibrāhīm	.	1550
989	Mohammad Kuli	.	1581
1020	Abd-Allāh	.	1611
1083	Abū-l-Hasan	.	1672
—1098		[Mogul Emperors]	—1687

A.H.

932—1275 117. MOGUL EMPERORS 1525—1857
 OF HINDŪSTĀN

A.D.

Bābar, the Mongol conqueror of Hindūstān, was descended in the fifth generation from Timūr (see the genealogical table p. 268) and was born in 1482, in Farghāna, where his father was governor. Driven from his native province by the Uzbegs of Shaybānī about 1504, Bābar sought his recompense in the subjection of Afghānistān. He took possession of Badakhshān in 1503 (909), occupied Kābul in the following year, and annexed Kandahār in 1507. For many years he meditated the invasion of India, but it was not until 1525 (932) that he felt himself strong enough to descend at the head of his Turks (he abhorred the name of Mongol*) upon the Panjāb and occupy Lahore. On the 20th April 1526 he signally defeated the army of Sultān Ibrāhīm Lōdī of Dehli on the historic plain of Pānīpat, and the victory was followed by the rapid

* In Arabic Mughal, whence the English Mogul or Moghul.

occupation of Dehlī and Agra, and the submission of the northern parts of Hindūstān, from the Indus to the borders of Bengal. Bābar died in 1530 (937) before he could subdue the kingdoms of Bengal, Gujarāt and Mālwa; still less had he approached the Deccan.

His son Humāyūn, though but nineteen years of age, endeavoured to complete his father's work. His attempt to reduce the united kingdom of Gujarāt and Mālwa was, however, abortive; and the Afghāns of Bengal, led by the genius of Shīr Shāh, the usurping king of Bihār, succeeded after an obstinate struggle in driving Humāyūn step by step to the west. A treacherous attack on the Mogul camp at Chonsa in 1539 (946) banished them from Bengal; and a total defeat at Kanauj in the following year gave Shīr Shāh the command of all Hindūstān (but not Gujarāt), and compelled Humāyūn to seek refuge, first in Sind, and then in Persia. Fifteen years passed before the Mogul Emperor returned to re-conquer his empire. Meanwhile Shīr Shāh, after laying the foundations of the administrative organization which Akbar afterwards perfected, died, and the disunion among his successors paved the way for the invader. In 1555 Humāyūn recovered Dehlī, and there died in January 1556 (963).

Humāyūn had only begun the work of reconquest; it was left to his son Akbar, a youth of fourteen, to finish it. The boy's guardian Bayrām Khān, a Turkomān, utterly defeated the Indian forces under Hīmū on the 5th November 1556 on the same plain of Pānīpat where Bābar had won his great victory. By this single blow Akbar found himself master of the better part of Hindūstān, and, young as he was, he soon took the reins of power into his own hands. Dehlī and Agra were his by the victory of Pānīpat; Gwālior fell in 1558 (966), Jaunpūr in 1559, and Mālwa and Khāndēsh were temporarily overrun in 1561–2. Rājputāna submitted after the storming of Chitōr in 1567 (975), and Gujarāt was reduced in 1572 (980). Bengal, which had nominally admitted the Mogul sovereignty, rose in rebellion, but was subdued in 1575–7 (983–4). Kashmir was annexed in 1587 and Kandahār six years later.*

'Akbar was too wise to meddle seriously in Deccan politics. All he wanted was to secure himself against invasion from the south; and with this view he annexed the rugged borderland of Khāndēsh, and used its capital,

* See my *History of the Mogul Emperors of Hindustan illustrated by their Coins*, xii. ff.

Burhānpūr, with the rocky fastness of Asīrgarh, [which had withstood his siege and his English gunners for six months before it succumbed in 1601 (1008),] as outposts to defend his southern frontier. He also subdued Berār and took the fortress of Ahmadvār (1600).^{*} The kings of Bijāpūr and Golkonda paid him homage and offered him tribute: but he never attempted annexation in the Deccan, beyond securing his frontier; nor had the Deccan *sūbah* or province, even in this limited sense, been organized as thoroughly as the rest of the empire at the time of his death in 1605 (1014).

The true successor of Muḥammad b. Taghlak in his dreams of Deccan conquest was Aurangzib, the sixth Mogul Emperor. As governor during Shāh-Jahān's reign in 1636–43 he had organized the four divisions of the Deccan province — Dawlatābād (including Ahmadvār), Khāndesh, Telingana, and Berār; and he made the king of Golkonda a vassal in 1656. The fratricidal struggle which preceded his accession to the throne at Dehlī in 1659 (1069), and the work of ordering his administration, diverted his attention from the Deccan for some years; and it was not till 1681 that he began that long series

* See my *Aurangzib* (Rulers of India) pp. 144–204.

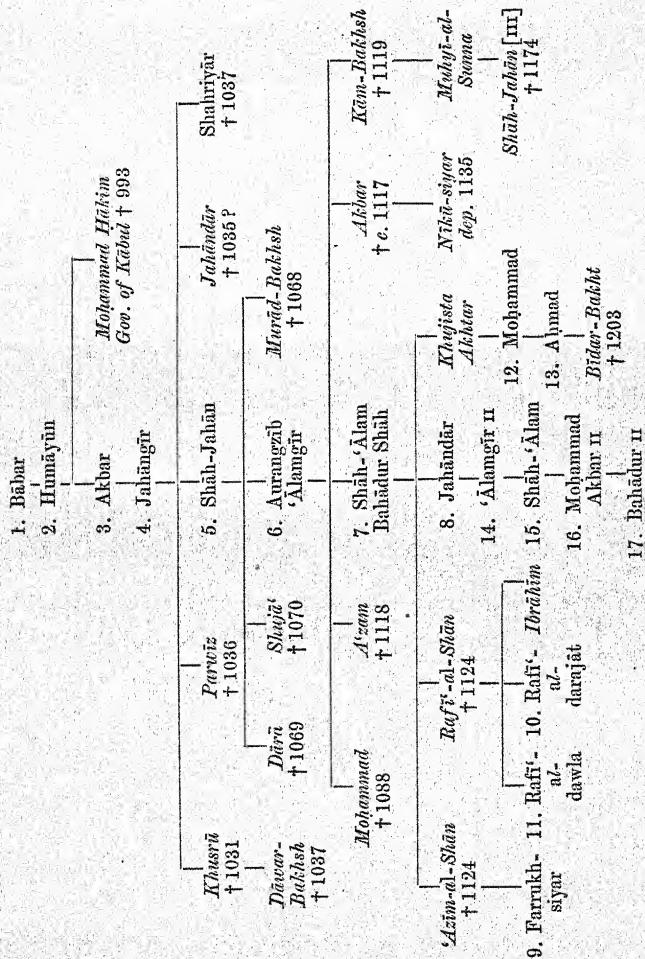
of campaigns in the south which did not end till his own death twenty-six years later. He besieged and took Bijāpūr in 1686 and Golkonda in 1687, and put an end to the dynasties of the 'Ādil and Ḳutb Shāhs. But against the new power of the Marāthas which had arisen in the Deccan in the middle of the 17th century he could make no head; and though his armies traversed the Deccan in all directions and took many forts, the country and its hardy mountaineers were never subdued. Yet when Aurangzīb died in 1707 his dominions stretched from Kābul to the mouths of the Hūgli, and from Sūrat across Haydarābād to Masulipatan and even Madras. All India, save the apex of the Deccan, was his in name; but except in forts and cities, the possession was nominal in the south.

The empire of the Great Moguls began to break up after the death of Aurangzīb. His successors were for the most part weak and debauched; and the rising powers of the Sikhs, Jāts, and Marāthas were young and strong. The invasions of Nādir Shāh in 1738, and Ahmad Durrānī in 1748, 1757, etc., were signs of the feebleness of the empire. Fifty years after Aurangzīb's death the Marāthas were supreme in the south, except where the newly-

founded dynasty of the Nizām kept them at arm's length, and were pushing their way through Gujarāt up to Dehlī; the Rājputs had ceased to acknowledge the Mogul supremacy; the Sikhs were gradually winning the mastery of the Panjab from the Afghāns; the Jāts were practically independent near Agra; Oudh was virtually a separate kingdom, and so was Bengal; though the little patches of territory at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras scarcely portended the great future of the East India Company. The progress of the Company's arms need not be related here. The battle of Plassey (1757) and Buxar (1764) laid the ghost of the Mogul Empire, though the fiction of Mogul sovereignty was maintained till 1857. The last three emperors were pensioners of the British Crown; and Bahādur II, after upsetting his puppet-throne by joining in the Mutiny, died in exile at Rangoon in 1862.

A.H.		A.D.
932	Bābar, Zahir-al-dīn*	1526
937	Humāyūn, Naṣir-al-dīn	1530
963	Akbar, Jalāl-al-dīn	1556
1014	Jahāngīr, Nūr-al-dīn	1605
1037	<i>Dāwar-Bakhsh</i>	1627-8
1087	Shāh-Jahān, Shihāb-al-dīn	1628
1068	<i>Murād-Bakhsh (in Gujarat)</i>	1658
1068-70	<i>Shujā' (in Bengal)</i>	1658-60
1069	Aurangzib 'Ālamgīr, Muḥyī-al-dīn	1659
1118	<i>A'zam Shāh</i>	1707
1119-20	<i>Kām-Bakhsh</i>	1708
1119	Shāh-'Alam Bahādur Shāh I, Kuṭb-al-dīn	1707
1124	Jahāndār, Mu'izz-al-dīn	1712
1124	Farrukh-siyar	1713
1131	Rafi'-al-darajāt, Shams-al-dīn	1719
1131	Rafi'-al-dawla Shāh-Jahān II	1719
1131	<i>Nikū-siyar</i>	1719
1132	<i>Ibrāhīm</i>	1720
1131	Mohammad, Nāṣir-al-dīn	1719
1161	Aḥmad	1748
1167	'Alamgīr II, 'Aziz-al-dīn	1754
1173-4	<i>Shāh-Jahan III</i>	1759-60
1173	Shāh-'Alam, Jalāl-al-dīn	1759
1202-3	<i>Bidar-Bakht</i>	1788
1221	Mohammad Akbar II	1806
1253	Bahādur Shāh II	1837
—1275	[Great Britain]	—1857

* Bābar and most of his successors had the Arabic name Mohammad in addition to their Persian names. In the list, the names of usurpers and pretenders are printed in italics.



A.H.

1160—1311 118. AMĪRS OF AFGHĀNISTĀN 1747—1893
A.D.

The modern history of Afghānistān as an independent State begins in 1747. After the deposition of the Ghōrids, the country ceased to possess a dynasty of its own,* and merely formed part of a larger kingdom. It became a province of the Il-khāns of Persia, and then of the Timūrid empire; and after the establishment of the Moguls in India, it was sometimes part of their dominions and sometimes belonged to the Shāhs of Persia; or, more often, was divided between the two. Kābul and Kandahār were generally in the possession of the Moguls until after the death of Aurangzīb, whilst Herāt belonged to Persia. In 1737 Nādir Shāh, the Afshārid ruler of Persia, seized Kābul and Kandahār and made his memorable descent upon India. After his assassination in 1747 the Afghāns resolved to be independent of Persia, and chose Ahmad Khān the chief of the Abdālī or Durrānī tribe to be their Shāh. The post of vezir, or second man in the state, was conferred

* The line of the Kart Maliks were a local exception at Herāt (p. 252).

upon Jamāl Khān the hereditary chief of the rival tribe of the Bārakzais. Henceforward for nearly a century this arrangement subsisted: the Shāh was a Durrānī and the Vezīr a Bārakzai.

Aḥmad Shāh reduced all Afghānistān, conquered Herāt and Khurāsān, invaded India repeatedly, occupied Dehlī for a time, and annexed Kashmīr, Sind, and part of the Panjab; but his Indian possessions gradually passed over to the growing power of the Sikhs, who had become masters of the Panjab before the end of the 18th century. A massacre of the Bārakzais by Zamān Shāh, Aḥmad's grandson, instead of diminishing, increased the influence of the hereditary vezīrs, who exercised the chief power during the nominal reign of Maḥmūd Shāh and the early reign of Shāh Shujā'. Several attempts were made to oust them from their dominant position; but the blinding and murder of Fath Khān Bārakzai in 1818 was the signal for the deposition of the Durrānī dynasty, and after some years of anarchy Dost Moḥammad, the brother of the murdered Vezīr, took possession of the throne (1826), as the first Bārakzai Amīr of Afghānistān.

During the decline of the later Durrānīs the claim of Persia to the possession of Herāt had been pressed by force

of arms. Since its conquest by Ahmad Shāh the city had been held by various Afghān princes, with little dependence upon the central government. In 1816 the Persians had attacked Herāt, but had been repulsed by Fath Khān the Bārakzai. In 1837, urged on by Russia, the Shāh of Persia again advanced upon the 'key of Afghānistān,' and again, after a ten months' siege, protracted by the splendid defence of Eldred Pottinger, was forced to retire (1838). When Dost Mohammad showed signs of encouraging Russian overtures, the British Government of India, excited by the narrow escape of Herāt, and alarmed at the unfriendly attitude of the Amīr, declared war, and the Afghān campaigns and disasters of 1839–1842 ensued. Shāh-Shujā', the representative of the deposed Durrānīs, was in an evil day restored to the Amirate, and Sir William Macnaghten was posted at Kābul as British Resident. Dost Mohammad had surrendered and remained passive, but his son Akbar Khān continued the resistance of the Bārakzais. In Nov. 1841 Macnaghten and Burnes were treacherously murdered, and of the sixteen thousand British troops and camp followers who left Kābul under a safe-conduct only one escaped to tell the tale of slaughter. The massacre was avenged by Pollock's army

in 1842, and the Afghāns thenceforward, for nearly forty years, were allowed to manage their own internal affairs. Dost Mohammad died in 1863, the subsidized ally of England; and the history of Afḡhānistān since his death has consisted chiefly in the struggles of his sons and grandsons for the throne. A second attempt to force a British Resident at Kābul upon the Amīr, as a check upon the envoys of Russia, led to the defeat and deposition of Shīr ‘Alī, the murder of Cavagnari, and the campaigns of Stewart and Roberts in 1879–81. The Amīr ‘Abd-al-Rahmān, then established by the British, has since, on the whole, succeeded in holding the mastery over his refractory subjects.

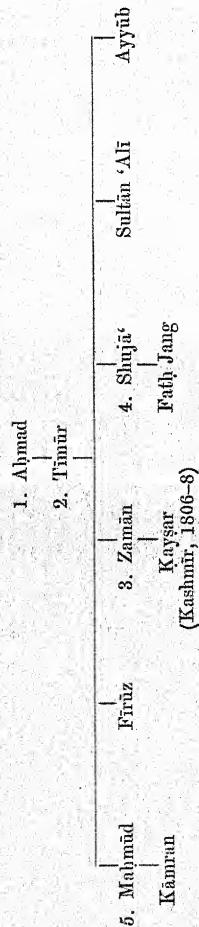
A.H.	DURRĀNIS*	A.D.
1160	Aḥmad Shāh	1747
1187	Tīmūr Shāh	1773
1207	Zamān Shāh	1793
1216	Shujā'-al-mulk (Shāh Shujā')	1801
1218	Shujā' (2nd reign)	1801
1224	Mahmūd (2nd reign; latterly at Herāt, to 1245)	1803
1233	'Alī Shāh (at Kābul)	1809
1233	Ayyūb Shāh (at Peshāwar and Kashmīr)	1817
1245	Kāmrān (at Herāt, to 1258)	1817
1255	Shujā' (3rd reign)	1829
1258	Fath Jang (fled the same year)	1839
		1842

BĀRAKZAIS

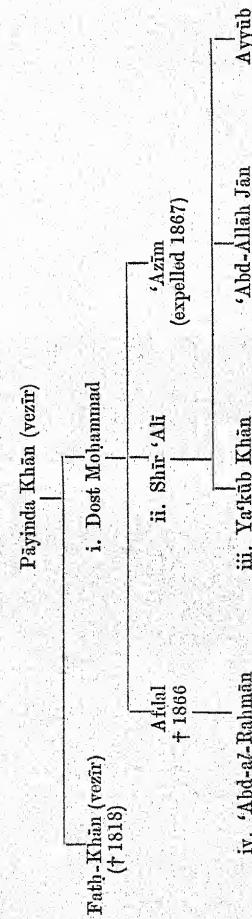
1242	Dost Mohammad	1826
1255-8	Shujā' restored	1839-42
1280	Shīr Ali	1863
	(Afḍal and 'Azīm at Balkh and Kābul 1865-7)	
1296	Ya'kūb Khān	1879
1296	'Abd-al-Rahmān Khān regnant	1879

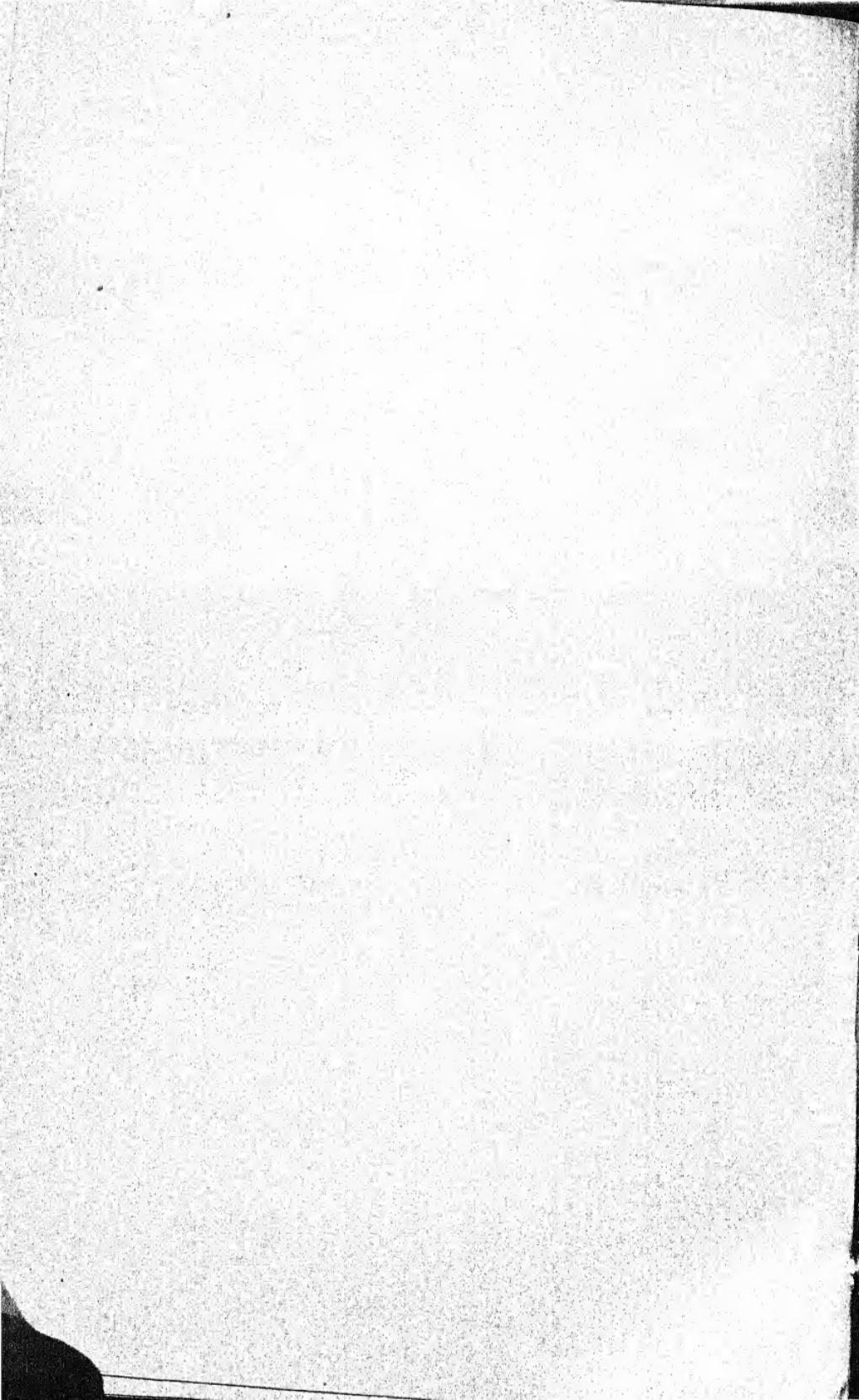
* The list and pedigree of the Durrānis is adapted from an article by M. Longworth Dames in the *Numismatic Chronicle*, iii. viii. 325-63 (1888).

DURRĀNĪS



BĀRAKZAI'S





INDEX TO RULERS*

- 'Abd-al-Hamid, 'Othmānlīs, 195
 Abāgā, *Īl-Khān of Persia*, 220
 Abāk, *Būrid*, 161
 'Abbād -Mu'tadid, *Abbādid*, 25
 'ABBĀDIDS, 25; 20, 27, 42
 'Abbās, uncle of Mohammad, 3
 'Abbās, *Khēdīves*, 85
 'Abbās, *Safavids*, 259
 'Abbās, *Zuray'īd*, 97
 'ABBAŚID CALIPHS, 12, 13; 3, 6,
 7, 19, 34, 36, 42, 60, 67, 68,
 69, 74, 89, 109, 111, 123, 140,
 151, 165, 188, 217, 286, 296
 'ABBAŚID CALIPHS OF EGYPT, 3
 'Abd-al-'Azīz Mānsūr, *Aznīrid*, 26
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Dūlāfid*, 125
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Hafṣid*, 50
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Jānid*, 275
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Mamlūk*, 83
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Marinid*, 57
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, 'Othmānlī, 195
 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Shaybānid*, 272
 'Abd-al-Hakk, *Marinid*, 57
 Abd-al-Halim, *Marinid*, 57
 'ABDALĪS *see DURLĀNĪS*
 'Abd-al-Kādir, *Yafūrid*, 91
 'Abd-al-Karīm Satuk, *Īlak*, 135
 'Abd-al-Karīm, *Khōkand*, 280
 'Abd-allāh, *Aghlabids*, 37
 'Abd-allāh b. Tāshfīn, *Almoravid*,
 41, 42
 'Abd-allāh -Ādil, *Almohad*, 47
 'Abd-allāh, *Fatīmid*, 71
 'Abd-allāh, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
- 'Abd-Allāh, *Golden Horde*, 230
 'Abd-Allāh, *Hāndānid (Yanān)*, 95
 'Abd-Allāh Abū-l-Hayja, *Ham-*
 dānid of -Mōsīl, 111
 'Abd-Allāh, *Hasānī Sharīf*, 61
 'Abd-Allāh, *Khīra*, 279
 'Abd-Allāh, *Marīnid*, 58
 'Abd-Allāh, *Omayyād of Cordova*,
 21
 'Abd-Allāh, *Rasūlid*, 99
 'Abd-Allāh, *Shaybānid*, 271, 272
 'Abd-Allāh, *Tūhīrid*, 128
 'Abd-Allāh, *Timūrid*, 268
 'Abd-Allāh, *Zayrid*, 25
 'Abd-Allāh, *Yafūrid*, 91
 'Abd-Allāh, *Ziyādīd*, 91
 'Abd-al-Latīf, *Shaybānid*, 271
 'Abd-al-Latīf, *Timūrid*, 268
 'Abd-al-Majīd, *Fātīmid*, 71
 'Abd-al-Majīd, 'Othmānlī, 195
 'Abd-al-Malik, *Anīrid*, 26
 'Abd-al-Malik, *Hasānī Sharīf*, 61
 'Abd-al-Malik 'Imad-al-dawla,
 Hādīd, 26
 'Abd-al-Malik, *Jahwarīd*, 25
 'Abd-al-Malik, *Omayyād*, 9
 'Abd-al-Malik, *Sāmanīd*, 132
 'Abd-al-Mu'mīn, *Almohad*, 45, 47
 'Abd-al-Mu'mīn, *Jānid*, 275
 'Abd-al-Mu'mīn, *Shaybānid*, 271
 'Abd-al-Nābī, *Mahdīd*, 96
 'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Afghān*, 334
 'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
 'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Marīnid*, 58

* The first number refers to the dynastic list in which the name occurs. In the case of identical names the alphabetical order of the dynasties is followed. Where two or more identical names occur in the same dynasty, the dynastic name is put in the plural. Prefixed words like *Abū*, *Banū*, *Ibn*, must be sought under the second name.

- 'Abd-al-Rahmān, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21; 6, 19, 20
 'Abd-al-Rahmān Abū-Tāshfīn, *Zayānid*, 51
 'Abd-al-Rashīd, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 'Abd-al-Razzāk, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 'Abd-al-Wahhāb, *Tūhirid* (Yaman), 101
 'Abd-al-Wāhid -Makhlū', *Almohad*, 47
 Abd-al-Wāhid -Rashīd, *Almohad*, 47
 'Abish, *Salgharid*, 173
 Abū-Bakr, *Almoravid*, 42, 43
 Abū-Bakr, 'Āmirid, 26
 Abū-Bakr, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171
 Abū-Bakr, *Ayyūbid*, 77, 78
 Abū-Bakr Shāh, *Dehli*, 300
 Abū-Bakr I -Shāhid, *Hafṣid*, 50
 Abū-Bakr II Abū-Yahyā -Mutawakkil, *Hafṣid*, 50
 Abū-Bakr, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Abū-Bakr Abū-Yahyā, *Marinid*, 57
 Abū-Bakr, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 4, 9
 Abū-Bakr, *Salgharid*, 173
 Abū-l-Hasan, *Naṣrid*, 28
 Abū-Sa'id, see Sa'id, Abū-
 ADHARBĪJĀN, *Atābeqs of*, 171; 160
 -'Ādid Abū-Mohammad 'Abd-Allah, *Fātimid*, 71
 -'Ādil, *Afshārid*, 259
 -'Ādil, *Almohad*, 47
 -'Ādil Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, (Saphadin), *Ayyūbid*, 76-8
 -'Ādil II Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, *Ayyūbid*, 77
 -'Ādil Giray, *Krim*, 236
 -'Ādil Zayn-al-dīn Kitbughā, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -'Ādil -Mustā'in ('Abbāsid Caliph), *Mamlūk*, 83
 -'Ādil Badr-al-dīn Salāmish, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -'Ādil, *Ortukid*, 168
 -'Ādil Khān, *Khāndesh*, 315
 -'Ādil Shāh, *Dehli*, 300
 -'Ādil Shāhs, 321; 318
 Adsai, *Mongol*, 215
 'Ādud -al- dawla Abū-Shujā' Khusrū, *Buwayhid*, 141
 'Ādud-al-dīn Alp-Arslān, *Seljūk*, 153; 151
 -Afdal Nūr-al-dīn 'Alī, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Afdal, *Afghan*, 334
 -Afdal -'Abbās, *Rasūlid*, 99
 AFGHĀNISTĀN, Amīrs of, 330-5
 AFGHĀNS OF DEHLI, 300, 303
 AFGHĀNS, Shāhs of Persia, 259
 Afrāsiyāb, *Hazāraspids*, 175; 174
 AFSHĀRID, Shāhs of Persia, 259
 -Aghlab Abū-'Akāl, *Aghlabid*, 37
 AGHLABIDS, 36, 37; 6, 70
 Ahmad Shāh, *Afghan*, 334; 257, 326, 330
 Ahmad, *Aghlabid*, 37
 Ahmad, Āk-Kuyunlı, 254
 Ahmad, Armenia, 170
 Ahmad Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Ahmad Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Ahmad Mu'izz-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141; 139, 140
 Ahmad, *Dulafid*, 125
 Ahmad, *Fātimid*, 71
 Ahmad-Dhahabi, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
 Ahmad, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Ahmad Sayyid, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Ahmad Shaykh, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Ahmad Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 318
 Ahmad I -Fadl, *Hafṣid*, 50
 Ahmad II -Mustansir, *Hafṣid*, 50
 Ahmad, *Hasuni Sharīf*, 61
 Ahmad Naṣrat-al-dīn, *Hazārapid*, 175
 Ahmad Sayf-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Ahmad Sayf-al-dawla -Muqtadir, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Ahmad -Mustā'in, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Ahmad Abū-l-Fawāris, *Ikhshīdīd*, 69
 Ahmad Khān, *İlak Khāns*, 135

- Aḥmad, *İl-Khan of Persia*, 220
 Aḥmad Sultān, *Jalayr*, 246-8
 Aḥmad, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Aḥmad -Mustansir, *Marinid*, 58
 Aḥmad, *Marwānid*, 118
 Aḥmad, *Mogul*, 328
 Aḥmad Sultan, *Muẓaffurid*, 248
 Aḥmad -Mansūr, *Ortukid*, 168
 Aḥmad, *Othmānlīs*, 195
 Aḥmad, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Aḥmad, *Sāmānid*, 132
 Aḥmad, *Timūrid*, 268
 Aḥmad, *Tūlūnid*, 68, 67
 Aḥmad, *Wat'asid*, 58
 Akā Mohammad, *Kājār*, 260
 'Akāl, Abū-, *Aghlabid*, 37
 Akatāy, *Khiva*, 278
 Akbar, Jalal-al-din, *Mogul*, 328 ;
 305, 313, 315, 324-5
 Akbar II, *Mogul*, 328
 Akbarji, *Mongol*, 216
 Akhras, *Seljuk of Syria*, 154
 ĀK-KUYUNLI (*Turkomans of the
White Sheep*), 254
 Āksunkur Badr-al-dīn, *Armen.*, 170
 'Alā-al-dawla Mohammad, *Kūk-
wayhid*, 145
 'Alā-al-dawla Mas'ud, *Ghaznavid*,
 289 ; 288
 'Alā-al-dīn, *Bahmanids*, 318
 'Alā-al-dīn 'Ali, *Bengal*, 307
 'Alā-al-dīn Firuz, *Bengal*, 308
 'Alā-al-dīn Hosayn, *Bengal*, 308
 'Alā-al-dīn Jāni, *Bengal*, 306
 'Alā-al-dīn Mardān, *Bengal*, 306
 'Alā-al-dīn Mas'ud, *Dehli*, 299
 'Alā-al-dīn Mohammad, *Dehli*,
 299 ; 297, 316
 'Alā-al-dīn Hosayn Jahān-sōz,
Ghōrid, 292
 'Alā-al-dīn Mohammad, *Khwārizm
Shāh*, 177 ; 176, 179
 'Alā-al-dīn, *Seljuks of Rūm*, 155
 'Alam-al-dīn Abū-1-Ma'ali Ku-
 raysh, *'Oqaylid*, 117
 'Alamgīr Aurangzib, *Mogul*, 325-8
 'Alamgīr II, 'Azīz-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328
 Alfonso of Leon, 27, 42
 Algū, *Chagatāy*, 242
 'Alī -Sa'id, *Almohad*, 47
 'Alī, *Alturāvid*, 43
 'Alī -Afḍal, *Ayyābid*, 78
 'Alī Kūchuk, *Begtigīnid*, 165
 'Alī Fakhr-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 142
 'Alī 'Imād-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*,
 141 ; 136, 139
 'Alī, *Carmathian*, 91
 'Alī Chagatāy, 242 ; 241
 'Alī Ikbāl-al-dawla, *Denia*, 26
 'Alī -Zāhir, *Fatimid*, 71
 'Alī, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 'Alī Abū-l-Hasan, *Hamdānid*, 112
 'Alī Sayf-al-dawla, *Hamdānid*, 112
 'Alī -Wahid, *Hamdānid* (Yam.), 95
 'Alī -Nāṣir, *Hannādīd*, 21, 23
 'Alī, *Idrisiād*, 35
 'Alī Abū-l-Hasan, *Ikhshīdid*, 69
 'Alī Gürkān Jalāl-al-dīn, *Ilak*, 135
 'Alī, *Pir*, *Kart*, 252
 'Alī Khān, *Khāndesh*, 315
 'Alī, *Mahdīd*, 96
 'Alī, *Mamlūk*, 81
 'Alī Abū-l-Hasan, *Marwānid*, 57
 'Alī, Abū-, *Marwānid*, 118
 'Alī Sanad-al-dawla, *Mazyādīd*, 119
 'Alī Abū-l-Hasan, *Nāṣrid*, 28
 'Alī, *'Okaylid*, 117
 'Alī, *Orthodox Caliph*, 9 ; 3, 6
 'Alī Alpī, *Ortukid*, 168
 'Alī b. Rasūl, *Rasūlid*, 99
 'Alī -Mu'jahid, *Rasūlid*, 99
 'Alī -Mu'ayyad, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 'Alī Shams-al-dīn, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 'Alī Abū-Kāmil, *Sulayhid*, 92, 94
 'Alī, *Tāhirid* (Yaman), 101
 'Alī Mūrād, *Zand*, 260
 'Alī, *Zayrid*, 40
 'Alī, *Zuray'īd*, 97
 'Alī -A'azz -Murtadā, *Zuray'īd*, 97
 'Alīds, 127 ; 6, 33, 35, 129, 136
 'Ālim, *Khoṭkand*, 280
 'Ālim Shāh, *Dehli*, 300

- Allâh Kuli, *Khiva*, 279
 Almanzor (*Vezîr*), 20
 ALMOHADES (-MUWAHHIDS), 45-
 47; 27, 39, 43, 49
 ALMORAVIDES (-MURÂBITS), 41-
 43; 20, 27, 39, 45
 Alp-Arghû Shams-al-din, *Hazâr-*
aspid, 175
 Alp-Arslân 'Aqûd-al-din, *Seljûk*,
 153; 151
 Alp-Arslân -Akhras, *Seljûk*, 154
 Alpî, *Ortukids*, 168
 Alptigin, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 285
 Altamish, *Dehlî*, 299; 295-6
 Alwand, *Ab-Kuyunî*, 254
 -Amin, *'Abbâsid*, 12
 Amin Khân, *Bengal*, 303
 Amin Mohammad, *Khiva*, 279
 Amîr-al-Umarâ, 140, 171
 -Amîr, Abû-'Ali -Manşûr, *Fatîmid*,
 71
 -Amîr Abu-Thâbit, *Mârinid*, 57
 -Amîr, *Tâhirids* (Yaman), 101
 'AMIRIDS (Valencia), 26
 'Amr b. -Layth, *Safârid*, 130
 Amurath, *Othmânîs*, 195; 185
 Anaz, *Burid*, 161
 Anusha, *Khiva*, 279
 Anûshîrwân, *Il-Khân*, 220
 Anûshîrwân, *Ziyârid*, 137
 Anushtigûn, *Khwârizm Shâh*, 177
 Arab chiefs, 89, 109 ff.
 'Arab Shâh, *Gold Horde*, 230; 239
 'Arab Mohammad, *Khiva*, 279
 Arâm Shâh, *Dehlî*, 299
 Arank, *Khiva*, 279
 Arank Mohammad, *Khiva*, 279
 Arghûn, *Il-Khân Persia*, 220; 174
 Arîkbuka, *Mongol*, 211
 ARMENIA, SHÂHS OF, 170
 Arpâ, *Il-Khân of Persia*, 220
 Arslân, see Alp-Arslân, Karâ-
 Arslân, Kizil-Arslân, etc.
 Arslân Tatar Khân, *Bengal*, 306
 Arslân, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Arslân Khân, *Ilak Khâns*, 135
 Arslân Girây, *Krim*, 237
 Arslân, *Seljûk* of -'Irâk, 154
 Arslân, *Seljûks* of *Kirmân*, 153
 Arslân, *Zangids*, 163
 As'ad, *Ya'furid*, 91
 Ashraf, *Shâh of Persia*, 259
 -Ashraf Mûsâ, *Ayyûbid*, 77
 -Ashraf Muzaффar-al-din Mûsâ,
Ayyûbid, 78
 -Ashraf Chûpâni, 220
 -Ashraf Sayf-al-din Bars-bey,
Mamlûk, 83 [83]
 -Ashraf Sayf-al-din Inâl, *Mamlûk*,
 -Ashraf Jânbalât, *Mamlûk*, 83
 -Ashraf Sayf-al-din Kait-Bey,
Mamlûk, 83
 -Ashraf Kânşûh -Ghûrî, *Mamlûk*,
 83
 -Ashraf Salâh-al-din Khalil, *Mam-
 lûk*, 81
 -Ashraf 'Alâ-al-din Küjük, *Mam-
 lûk*, 81
 -Ashraf Naşir-al-din Sha'bân,
Mamlûk, 81
 -Ashraf Tûmân-Bey, *Mamlûk*, 83
 -Ashraf Ismâ'il, *Rasûlid*, 99
 -Ashraf 'Omar, *Rasûlid*, 99
 ATÂBEGS, 157 ff.
 'Atîya Abû-Duâba, *Mirdâsid*, 115
 Atîzîz, *Khwârizm Shâh*, 177
 Aurangzib 'Alamgîr, *Mogul*, 325-8
 Avanak, *Khiva*, 278
 -Awhad Najm-al-din Ayyûb, *Ay-
 yûbid*, 78
 Aybak, *Bengal*, 306
 Aybak, Kuþb-al-din, *Dehlî*, 298;
 294-5
 Aybak, *Mamlûk*, 81
 AYDÎN AMIRS, 184-5
 Aynân, Abû-, *Marînid*, 57
 Ay-Timûr, *Sarbâdârid*, 251
 Ayyûb Shâh, *Afghân*, 384
 Ayyûb, *Ayyûbids*, 77, 78, 80, 98
 AYYÛBIDS, 74-79; 67, 80, 167, 170
 AYYÛBIDS of the Yaman, 98
 A'zam Shâh, *Bengal*, 307

A'zam Shâh, *Mogul*, 328
 'Azîm, *Afghân*, 334
 -'Azîz Ghîyâh-al-dîn Mohammad, *Ayyûbîd*, 78
 -'Azîz 'Imâd-al-dîn 'Othmân, *Ayyûbîd*, 77
 -'Azîz Abû-Manṣûr Nazâr, *Fâtimid*, 71
 -'Azîz, *Hammâdîd*, 40
 -Azîz Jamâl-al-dîn Yûsuf, *Mamlûk*, 83 [328]
 'Azîz-al-dîn 'Alamgîr II, *Mogul*,
 'Azîz Shaykh, *Golden Horde*, 230

BÂBAR, *Zâhir-al-dîn, Mogul*, 328; 257, 298, 322
 Bâd of Kayfâ, 118
 Bâdis, *Hammâdîd*, 40
 Bâdis, *Zayrid*, 25, 40 [138]
 Badr Nâsîr-al-dîn, *Hasanwayhid*,
 Badr-al-dîn Aksunkur, *Armen*, 170
 Badr-al-dîn Lu'lû, *Zangîd*, 162-3
 Bahâ-al-dawla Firûz, *Buwayhid*,
 141, 117
 Bahâ-al-dawla, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Bahâ-al-dawla, *Mazyadid*, 119
 Bahâdur Girêy, *Kiran*, 236
 Bahâdur Shah, *Bengal*, 306
 Bahâdur Shah Khîdr, *Bengal*, 308
 Bahâdur Shah, *Gujarât*, 313
 Bahâdur Shah, *Khândesh*, 315
 Bahâdur Shah, *Mogul*, 328; 327
 Bahîlî Lôdî, *Dehli*, 300
 BAHMANIDS, 316-319
 Bahram Shâh, *Bengal*, 306
 Bahram Shâh, *Dehli*, 299
 Bahram Shâh, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Bahram, *Seljûk of Kirmân*, 153
 BAHRÎ MAMLUKS, 80-82
 Bajazet (Bayazid), 'Othmânîs, 195; 184, 187, 266
 Bakhtiyâr Khalîjî, *Bengal*, 306
 Bakhtiyâr, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Bâki Mohammad, Jânîd, 275
 Balak, *Ortukid*, 167
 Balban 'Izz-al-dîn, *Armenia*, 170

Balban, *Bengal*, 306
 Balban, *Dehli*, 299; 296, 306n
 Balkatîgîn, *Ghaznavid*, 289; 176
 BANÛ-Nâsr, etc. See NASRIDS, etc.
 Baraka, *Golden Horde*, 230; 225
 Baraka Khân, *Mamlûk*, 81
 BÂRAKZAIS, 334; 331-3
 Bârbak, *Bengal*, 307
 Barbarossa, Khayr-al-dîn, 49, 55,
 189; Urûj, 55
 Bargiyâruk Rukn-al-dîn, *Seljûk*, 153
 BARID SHÂHS, 321; 318
 Barkûk, *Mamlûk*, 81, 83; 247
 Bars-Bey, *Mamlûk*, 83
 Bâtu, *Golden Horde*, 230; 208-9,
 222-4, 226, 233, 238
 Bâyan, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Bâyazid Shâh, *Bengal*, 307
 Bayazid, *Jalayr*, 248
 Bâyazid (Bajazet), 'Othmânîs, 195;
 184, 187, 266
 Baybars, *Mamlûks*, 81
 Baydû, *Il-Khân of Persia*, 220
 Baysunkur, *Âk-Kuyunlu*, 254
 Beg Pâlâd, *Golden Horde*, 232
 BEGTEGÎNIDS, 165
 Begtimur Sayf-al-dîn, *Armenia*, 170
 BENGAL, GOVERNORS OF, 306
 BENGAL, KINGS OF, 307
 Berbers, 33, 39, 41, 70
 Beys of Tunis, 56
 Bidar-Bakht, *Mogul*, 328
 Bilbey, *Mamlûk*, 83
 Bilkîn, *Mongol*, 215
 Birdi-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230; 224
 Bistûn, *Ziyârid*, 137
 BLUE HORDE, 224, 230
 Boabdil of Granada, 28; 27
 Bodi, *Mongol*, 216
 Bughra Khân, *Bengal*, 306
 Bughrâ Khân Mahmud, *Ilak*, 135
 Bughrâ Khân Hârûn, *Ilak*, 135
 Bughra Shah, *Bengal*, 306
 Bujudha, *Khiva*, 278
 Bulukkin, *Hammâdîd*, 40
 Bulukkîn Yûsuf, *Zayrid*, 39, 40

- Bundukdārī Baybars, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Burāk Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Burāk, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Burāk Hajjib, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Burhān Sultān, *Shaybānid*, 272
 BŪRIDS, 161
 BURJ MAMLUKS, 83
 BUWAYHIDS, 139-144; 109, 112, 117, 118, 132, 136, 137, 138, 288
 Büyān Küli, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Buyantu, *Mongol*, 215
 Buzün, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Buzurg Hasan, *Jalayr*, 248
- CALIPHS, 3-15; *see* 'ABRĀSID
 CARMATHIANS, 90, 91, 126
 Chagar Beg Dāwūd, *Seljūk*, 151, 287
 CHAGATĀY KHĀNS, 241-2; 205, 210
 Chaghratigin, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Chakra, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Charles Martel, 5
 Charles v, 49, 55
 Chimitāy, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Chingiz Khān, *Mongol*, 215; 77, 177, 179, 202-4, 296
 Chūpān, 218-220
 Cid, 42
 CORDOVA, OMAYYADS OF, 21, 22
 Corsairs, 49, 55-6
 CRIMEA, KHĀNS OF, 236
 Crusaders, 75-6, 80, 166-7
- DĀMIGHĀNT, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 DĀNISHMANDIDS, 156
 Dānishmandja, *Chagatāy*, 242; 241
 Dārā, *Mogul*, 329
 Dārā, Ziyārid, 137
 Darwish, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Dāwar-Bakhsh, *Magul*, 328
 Dawlat Birdī, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Dawlat Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Dawlat Khān Lōdī, *Dehli*, 300
 Dāwūd -Nāṣir, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 Dāwūd Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Dāwūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
 Dāwūd Shāh, *Gujarat*, 313
- Dāwūd Khān, *Khāndesh*, 315
 Dāwūd, *Ortukids*, 168
 Dāwūd, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Dāwūd Chagar Beg, *Seljūk*, 151, 287
 Dāwūd Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljūk* of 'Irāk, 154
 Dayan, *Mongol*, 216; 213
 Daylamī, *Rassid Imām*, 102
 DAYLAMIDS, *see* BUWAYHIDS
 Dehlī, SULTĀNS OF, 299-301
 Delbek, *Mongol*, 215
 DENIA, KINGS OF, 26
 Deyls of Algiers, 56
 Dhahabi, *Filali Sharif*, 61
 Dhū-l-Nūn, *Dānishmandid*, 156
 Dhū-l-NŪNIDS, 25
 Dhū-l-Yamīnayn, *Tāhirid*, 128
 Dilāwar Khān Ghōrī, *Māluca*, 311
 Dost, *Khiva*, 278
 Dost Mohammad, *Afghān*, 331-4
 Dragut (Torghūd), *Corsair*, 56, 189
 Dubays, Nūr-al-dawla, *Mazyad*, 119
 Dukāk, *Seljūk* of Syria, 154
 Dulaf, *Dulajid*, 125
 Dulaf Abū-Kāsim, *Dulajid*, 125
 DULAJIDS, 125
 DURRĀNIS, 330-5
 Duwā Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Duwā Timūr, *Chagatāy*, 242
- ELBEK, *Mongol*, 215
 Engke Soriktu, *Mongol*, 215
 Erdani, *Khoṭand*, 280
- FĀDIL, Abū-l-, *Mirdāsid*, 115
 Fadl, *Hafṣid*, 50
 Fadl-Allāh, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 Fāiz Abū-l-Kāsim 'Isā, *Fātimid*, 71
 Fakhr-al-dawla Abū-l-Hasan 'Alī, *Buwayhid*, 142
 Fakhr-al-dīn Mubārak Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Fakhr-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252
 Fakhr-al-dīn Karā-Arslān, *Ortukid*, 168

- Fakīh Mūhammad, *Nasrid*, 28
 Faraj, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Faramarz Zāhir-al-dīn, *Kākwayh-id*, 145
 Fāris, Abū-, *Hasanī Sharif*, 61
 Fāris, Abū-, *Hafṣid*, 50
 Fāris, Abū-, *Marinid*, 58
 Fāris - Mutawakkil, *Marinid*, 58
 Farrukh-siyar, *Mogul*, 328
 Farrukhzād, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Fārūkī KINGS OF KHĀNDĒSH, 315
 Fārūkī Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Fath Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Fath 'Ali, *Kājar*, 260
 Fath Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Fath, Abū-l-, *Zard*, 260
 Fatik, *Nayākhids*, 92
 Fātimā, 60, 70
 Fātmids, 70, 73; 39, 41, 67, 74,
 112, 114, 118
 Favāris, Abū-l-, *Ikhshidid*, 69
 Fayd, Abū-l-, *Jānid*, 275
 Fida, Abū-l-, *Ayyubid*, 77, 79
 FILALI SHARIFS, 61
 Firuz, Tāj-al-dīn, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Firuz Shāh, *Bengal*, 306
 Firuz, *Buwayhid*s, 141
 Firuz Shāh, *Dehli*, 299
 Fullād Sattūn Abū-Mansūr, *Bu-wayhid*, 141
 GANGU, Hasan, *Bahmanid*, 316-8
 Gaykhātū, *Il-Khan* of Persia, 220
 Gegeñ, Mongol, 215
 Ghadanfir, *Hamdānid*, 112
 -Ghalib, *Nasrid*, 28
 -Ghāni, *Nasrid*, 28
 Gharāt, Abū-l-, *Zuray'id*, 97
 Ghāzi, *Ayyubids*, 78
 Ghāzi Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Ghāzi, *Dānishmandid*, 156
 Ghāzi Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Ghāzi, *Zangids*, 163
 Ghāzi, Abū-l-, *Jānid*, 275
 Ghāzi, Abū-l-, *Khiva*, 279
 GHAZNAWIDS, 289; 7, 132, 137
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ghāzi, *Ayyubid*,
 78
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Mūhammad, *Ayyubid*,
 78
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn 'Iwaz, *Bengal*, 306
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn A'zam Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Bahādur Shāh,
 Bengal, 306 [308]
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Jalāl Shāh, *Bengal*,
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Maḥmūd Shāh,
 Bengal, 308
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Balban, *Dehli*, 299
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Taghlak, *Dehli*, 300
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn b. Sām, *Ghōrid*, 292
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Töktāmish, *Golden
 Horde*, 231
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Hazaraspid*, 175
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Pīr 'Ali, *Kart*, 252
 Ghiyāth Shāh, *Malwa*, 311
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn Mūhammad, *Seljūk*,
 153 [154]
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljūks of -'Irāk*,
 Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Seljūks of -Rūm*,
 155
 Ghōrids, 291-4; 176, 289
 Ghōrīs (KINGS OF MĀLWA), 311
 -Ghūrī, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Ghuzz, 153, 292
 Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 GOLDEN HORDE KHĀNS, 222-231
 GUJARĀT, KINGS OF, 312
 Gumishtigīn, *Dānishmandid*, 156
 Gun-Timūr, Mongol, 215
 Gürkān 'Ali, *İlak Khan*, 135
 GURKHĀNS, 176, 203-4
 HABBŪS, *Zayrid*, 25
 HARSHI KINGS OF BENGAL, 308
 -Hādi, 'Abbasid, 12 [103]
 -Hādi Mūhammad, *Imām of San'a*,
 -Hādi -Majid, *Imām of Sun'a*, 103
 -Hādi Najm-al-dīn Yāhiyā, *Rassid
 Imām*, 102

- Hādi Yāhŷā, *Rassid*, 91, 102
- Hāfiẓ Abū-1-Maymūn ‘Abd-al-Majid, *Fatimid*, 71
- Hāfiẓ, *Kart*, 252
- Hafṣ, Abū, *Almohad*, 47
- Hafṣ, Abū-, *Hafṣid*, 50
- HĀFSIDS, 49, 50 ; 46, 55
- Hajjāj, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
- Hājjī, *Mamlūks*, 81
- Hājjī Girāy, *Krim*, 235, 237
- Hājjī Mohammad, *Khiva*, 279
- Hakam I, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21
- Hākim Abū -‘Ali -Manṣūr, *Fati-*
mid, 71
- Hākim Girāy, *Krim*, 237
- Hamās, *Hamdānid* (Yaman), 95
- HAMDĀNIDS, 111-113
- HAMDĀNIDS of the Yaman, 95
- HAMĪD AMĪRS, 184-5
- Hammād, *Hammādid*, 40
- HĀMMĀDIDS, 39, 40 ; 43, 46
- Hammū, Abū-, *Zayānid*, 51
- HAMMŪDIDS, 23, 24, 25 ; 21
- Hamza, *Āk-Kuyunlı*, 254
- Hārūn al-Rashīd, *Abbāsid*, 12, 36
- Hārūn, *İlk Khāns*, 135
- Hārūn, *Tülük*, 68
- Hasan, *‘Alids*, 127, 129
- Hasan, Uzun, *Āk-Kuyunlı*, 253-5
- Hasan Gāngū, *Bahmanid*, 316-8
- Hasan Rukn-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 142 ; 139
- Hasan Kūchuk Chūpāni, 219, 220
- Hasan, *Golden Horde*, 230
- Hasan, *Hafṣid*, 50
- Hasan Buzurg, *Jalayr*, 248 ; 219, 220, 246
- Hasan, *Idrisid*, 35
- Hasan Tigīn, *İlk Khān*, 135
- Hasan Abū -‘Ali, *Marvānid*, 118
- Hasan Kuli, *Khiva*, 278
- Hasan ‘Ali, *Karā-Kuyunlı*, 253
- Hasan Abū-Hāshim, *Rassid*, 102
- Hasan Nāṣir -al - dawla, *Ham-*
dānid, 112
- Hasan -Mustansır, *Hammūdid*, 23
- Hasan -Dāmighānī, *Sarbadārid*, 251
- Hasan, *Zayrid*, 40
- Hasan, Abū-1-, *Ikhshidid*, 69
- HASANI SHARIFS, 61
- HASANWAYHIDS, 138
- Hātim, *Hamdānid* (Yaman), 95
- Haydar -Kāssāb, *Sarbadārid*, 251
- Haydar Tora, *Mangit*, 277
- Haydar, *Safavid*, 255
- Hazam, Abū-1-, *Jahwarid*, 25
- HAZĀRASPIDS, 174, 175
- Hasan, *Filātī Sharif*, 61
- Himyar, Abū-Saba, *Sulayḥid*, 94
- Hishām, *Filātī Sharif*, 61
- Hishām, *Hamdānid* (Yaman), 95
- Hishām, *Omayyad*, 9 ; 19
- Hishām, *Omayyads of Cordova*, 21
- HOEHE KHĀNS, TURKISTĀN, 134-5
- Horde, GOLDEN, 222-231
- Hosayn Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
- Hosayn Jahān-sōz, *Ghōrid*, 292
- Hosayn, *Hamdānid*, 112
- Hosayn, *Hazāraspid*, 175 [253]
- Hosayn, *Jalayrs*, 248 ; 219, 246,
- Hosayn Shāh, *Jaunpur*, 309
- Hosayn, *Mangit*, 277
- Hosayn, *Rasūlid*, 99
- Hosayn, *Safavid*, 259, 257
- Hosayn, *Seljuk of Kirmān*, 153
- Hosayn (*Vezir*), *Ziyādid*, 91
- HÜDRIDS, 26 ; 43 [217]
- Hülgū, *İl-Khān of Persia*, 220 ;
- Humāyūn Alā-al-dīn, *Bahmanid*, 318
- Humāyūn Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328 ; 257, 298, 305, 323
- Husām-al-dawla -Mukallad, *‘Okay-*
lid, 117
- Husām-al-dīn Timurtāsh, *Ortukid*, 168
- Husām - al - dīn Yūluk-Arslān,
Ortukid, 168
- Hūshang Shams-al-dīn, *Hazāras-*
pid, 175
- Hūshang Alp Khān, *Mālwā*, 311

- IIBISAN, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Ibrāhīm, *Aghlabids*, 37
 Ibrāhīm, *Almoravid*, 43
 Ibrāhīm Zāhir-al-dīn, *Armenia*, 170
 Ibrāhīm, *Bukhārā*, 239
 Ibrāhīm, *Dānishmandid*, 156
 Ibrāhīm Shāh, *Dehli*, 299, 300, 322
 Ibrāhīm, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Ibrāhīm ı Abū -Ishāk, *Hafṣid*, 50
 Ibrāhīm ıI -Mustansır, *Hafṣid*, 50
 Ibrāhīm Abū- Tāhir, *Hamdānid*, 112
 Ibrāhīm, *Hamdānid*, 111
 Ibrāhīm Tuғlāq, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Ibrāhīm Shāh Sharķī, Shams-al-dīn, *Jamnīpur*, 309
 Ibrāhīm, *Khedive*, 85; 67
 Ibrāhīm Abū-Sālim, *Murīnid*, 57
 Ibrāhīm, *Mogul*, 328
 Ibrāhīm, *‘Oṭaylid*, 117
 Ibrāhīm, *Omāyyad*, 9
 Ibrāhīm, *Ortukid*, 168
 Ibrāhīm, *Othmānlīs*, 195
 Ibrāhīm, *Sāmānid*, 132
 Ibrāhīm, *Timurid*, 175
 Ibrāhīm, *Yaⱻjurid*, 91
 Ibrāhīm, *Ziyādīd*, 91
 İdiku, 229
 İdris -Ma'mūn, *Almohad*, 47
 İdris, *Hamdānid*, 23
 İdris, *İdrisiād*, 35; 6
 İdrisiād, 35; 6, 36, 39, 70
 İkbāl-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26
 İkhsīnid, 69; 6, 67, 112
 İkhtiyār-al-dīn Ghāzi, *Bengal*, 307
 İkhtiyār-al-dīn Yūsbak, *Bengal*, 306
 İLAK KHĀNS OF TURKISTĀN (HOETHE), 134, 135; 132, 286
 İl-Aṛslān, *Khvārizm Shāh*, 177
 İlban, *Golden Horde*, 230
 İlbars, *Khiva*, 278, 279
 İlchikadāy, *Chagatāy*, 242
 İldiz Shams-al-dīn, *Atabeg of Adhārbījān*, 171
 İl-Ghāzī, *Ortukid*, 166-8
 İL-KHĀNS OF PERSIA, 217-221; 155, 172, 205, 330
 İltazar, *Khiva*, 279
 İltutmish, *Dehli*, 299
 İlyās Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 İmād-al-dawla Abū-l-Hasan ‘Alī, *Buwāyhid*, 141; 136, 139
 İmād-al-dawla, *Hūdīd*, 26
 İmād - al - dawla, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 İmād-al-dīn ‘Othmān, *Ayyūbid*, 77
 İmād-al-dīn Abū-Kalīmār -Marzubān, *Buwāyhid*, 141
 İmād - al - dīn ‘Alī Alpī - ‘Adil, *Ortukid*, 168
 İmād-al-dīn Kāward, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 153
 İmād-al-dīn Shāhānshāh, *Zangid*, 163
 İmād-al-dīn Zangi, *Zangids*, 163
 İmād-al-mulk, *Berār*, 318
 İMĀD SHĀHS, 320; 318
 İmām Kuli, *Janid*, 275
 İMĀMS, the Twelve, and the Seven, 72, 255
 İMĀMS OF SA'DA AND SAN'Ā, 102-3
 İmrān, *Zuray'īd*, 97
 İnal, *Mamluk*, 83
 İnāyat Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 İnjū, 245, 249
 İrān Shāh, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 153
 İsa, *Ayyūbid*, 78
 İsa, *Fatīmid*, 71
 İsa, *Ortukid*, 168
 İsfandiyār, *Khiva*, 279
 İsfandiyār, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 Ishāk, *Almoravid*, 43
 Ishāk, *Ghaznavid*, 289; 286
 Ishāk Akā Niyāz, *Khiva*, 279
 Ishāk Abū-l-Jaysh, *Ziyādīd*, 279
 Ishāk, Abū-, İnjū, 245, 249
 İskandar, *Kavū-Kuyunlu*, 253
 İskandar, *Şhaybanid*, 271
 İslām Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 İslām Shāh, *Dehli*, 300
 İsmā'il, *Ayyūbids*, 78, 79, 98

- Ismā'īl, *Būrid*, 161
 Ismā'īl -Zāfir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25
 Ismā'īl, *Fātimids*, 71
 Ismā'īl -Sāmīn, *Filālī Sharīf*, 61
 Ismā'īl, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Ismā'īl, *Khēdive*, 84, 85
 Ismā'īl -Sālih, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Ismā'īl, *Nāṣrids*, 28
 Ismā'īl, *Rasūlid*s, 99
 Ismā'īl, *Safavids*, 259; 245, 254-6
 Ismā'īl, *Sāmānid*, 132
 Ismā'īl -Sālih, *Zangid*, 163
 Ismā'īl Kuṭb-al-din, 170
 'Iwaz, *Bengal*, 306
 'Izz-al-dawla Bakhtiyār, *Buwayhid*, 141
 'Izz-al-dawla 'Abd-al-Rashīd, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 'Izz-al-dīn, *Seljūks of -Rum*, 155
 'Izz-al-dīn A'zam-al-mulk, *Bengal*, 306
 'Izz-al-dīn Aybak, *Mamlūk*, 81
 'Izz-al-dīn Balban, *Armenia*, 170
 'Izz-al-dīn Balban, *Bengal*, 306
 'Izz-al-dīn Mas'ud, *Zangid*s, 163
 'Izz-al-dīn Shirāz, *Bengal*, 306
 'Izz-al-dīn Tughril Tughān Khān, *Bengal*, 306
- JABAR Birdi, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Ja'far, *Zand*, 260
 Jahāndār, *Mogul*, 328
 Jahāngīr, *Ak-Kuyunlu*, 254
 Jahāngīr Nūr-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328
 Jahān-Shāh, *Karā-Kuyunlu*, 253
 Jahān-sōz, *Ghōrid*, 292
 Jahān-Timūr, *Īl-Khān*, 220
 Jahwar Abū-l-Hazām, 25
 JAHWARIDS, 25
 Jakmak, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Jalāl-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Jalāl-al-dawla, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Jalāl-al-dawla Nasr, *Mi'dāsid*, 115
 Jalāl-al-dīn Fātī Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Jalāl-al-dīn Mas'ud Malik Jānī, *Bengal*, 306
- Jalāl-al-dīn Mōhammad Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Jalāl-al-dīn Firūz, *Dehlī*, 299
 Jalāl-al-dīn, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Jalāl-al-dīn, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Jalāl-al-dīn Mōhammad Shāh, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Jalāl-al-dīn Suyurghātmish, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Jalāl-al-dīn Mangbartī, *Khwārizm Shah*, 177; 208, 296
 Jalāl-al-dīn, see Akbar, *Mogul*
 Jalāl-al-dīn Shāh Shujā', *Muzaffarid*, 250
 Jalāl-al-dīn Malik Shāh, *Seljūk*, 153; 151, 160, 162, 176
 JALAYRS, 246-248; 219, 220
 Jamāl-al-dawla Farrukhzād, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Jamāl-al-dīn Mōham., *Būrid*, 161
 Jān, 273-4
 Jānbalāt, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Jānī, *Bengal*, 306
 Jānī-Beg Maḥmūd, *Golden Horde*, 230; 224
 Jānī-Beg Girāy, *Krim*, 236
 JĀNIDS (ASTRAKHĀN), 274
 -Jāshānkīr, *Mamlūk*, 81
 JAUNPUR, KINGS OF, 309
 Jawhar, 70
 Jaysh Abū-l-'Asākir, *Tūlūnid*, 68
 Jaysh, Abū-l-, *Ziyādīd*, 91
 Jayyāsh, *Najāhid*, 92
 Jingishay, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Jiyaghātu, *Mongol*, 215
 John, St., Knights of, 56, 188
 Jūji, *Mongol*, 205, 222 ff.
 Juwanmard 'Alī, *Shaybānid*, 272
- KĀBŪS Shams-al-ma'ālī, *Ziyārid*, 137
 -Kādī, *Āmirīd*, 26
 -Kādir, *Abbāsid*, 12
 -Kādir, *Āmirīd*, 26
 -Kādir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25
 Kadr Khān, *Bengal*, 306

- Kâdr Khân, *Ilak Khân*, 135
 Kâfûr Abû-l-Misk, *Ikhshîdîd*, 69
 -Kâhir, 'Abbâsid, 12
 -Kâid, *Hammâdîd*, 40
 -Kâim, 'Abbâsid, 12
 -Kâim Abû-l-Kâsim Moâmmad, *Fâtimîd*, 71
 Kâimâz, 165
 Kaip, *Khiva*, 279
 Kait-Bey, *Mamlûk*, 83
 KÂJARS (SHÂHS OF PERSIA), 260
 KÂKWAYHIDS, 145
 Kal, *Khiva*, 278
 Kalâ'ûn, *Mamlûk*, 81
 Kalîm-Alâh Shâh, *Bahmanîd*, 318
 Kalinjâr, Abû-, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Kâm-Bukhsh, *Mogul*, 328
 Kamal-al-dawla Shirzâd, *Ghaznavîd*, 289
 Kamar-al-din Tamar, *Bengal*,
 -Kâmil Moâmmad, *Ayyâbid*, 77,
 78; 167
 -Kâmil Sayf-al-din Sha'bân, *Mamlûk*, 81
 Kâmil, Abû-, *Okaylid*, 117; *Mazayidî*, 119; *Mirdâsid*, 115
 Kamrân, *Afghân*, 334
 Kânsûh, *Mamlûks*, 83
 Kaplan Girây, *Krim*, 237
 Karâ-Arslân, *Ortukid*, 168
 Karâ-Arslân, *Seljûk of Kîrmân*, 153
 Karâ-dawlat Girây, *Krim*, 237
 Karâ-Hülagû, *Chagatây*, 242
 Karâ-KUYUNLÎ (*Turkomâns of the Black Sheep*), 253; 167
 Karâ-Moâmmad, *K-Kuyunlî*, 253
 Karâ-Yûluk, *Ak-Kuyunlî*, 254
 Karâ-Yûsuf, *K-Kuyunlî*, 253; 247
 KARAMAN AMIRS, 184-5
 Karârânî Sulaymân, *Bengal*, 308
 KARASÍ AMIRS, 184-5
 Karbukâ, 117
 Karîm Birdî, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Karîm Khân, *Zand*, 260
 KARMATHIANS, 90, 91, 126
 KARMTYÂN AMIRS, 184-5
- KART MALIKS, 252; 245, 294
 KASHMIR, KINGS OF, 304, 311n
 -Kâsim, *Dulajd*, 125
 -Kâsim -Ma'mûn, *Hammâdîd*, 21-3
 -Kâsim -Wâthik, *Hammâdîd*, 25
 Kâsim, *Kazimof*, 234
 -Kâsim -Mansûr, *Sanâ*, 103
 -Kâsim -Mansûr, *Rassid*, 102
 -Kâsim -Mukhtâr, *Rassid*, 102
 -Kâsim -Rassi Tarjumân-al-dîn,
Rassid Imâm, 102
 Kâsim, Abû-l-, *Ikhshîdîd*, 69
 Kâsim, *Mongol*, 229
 Kâssâb, *Savâdârid*, 251
 Kawâm-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Kawâm-al-dawla Karbukâ, 117
 Kâwâd Beg 'Imâd-al-dîn Karâ-
 Arslân, *Seljûk of Kîrmân*, 153
 Kaydû, *Mongol*, 209, 212
 Kay-Kâwus, *Bengal*, 306
 Kay-Kâwus 'Izz-al-dîn, *Seljûks*
of -Rûm, 155
 Kay - Khusrû Ghiyâsh - al - dîn,
Seljûks of -Rûm, 155
 Kay-Kubâd, *Dehlî*, 299
 Kay-Kubâd 'Alâ-al-dîn, *Seljûks of*
-Rûm, 155
 Kazan, *Chagatây*, 242
 Khâchân, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Khâlid, Abû-l-Bakâ, *Hajâsid*, 50
 KHALIFA, 3; see CALIPHS
 Khalil, *Ak-Kuyunlî*, 254
 Khalil, *Mamlûk*, 81
 Khalil, *Timûrid*, 268
 Khalîj, Mohammad Bakhtiyâr,
Bengal, 306
 KHALJIS, SULTANS OF DEHLI, 299,
 302; 296-7
 KHALJIS, KINGS OF MÂLWA, 311
 KHANDÊSH, KINGS OF, 315
 Khayr-al-din Barbarossa, 49, 55, 189
 KHEDIVES, 84, 85
 Khidr Khan, *Dehlî*, 300
 Khidr, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Khîdr Khân, *Ilak Khân*, 135
 KHIVA, KHANS OF, 278; 239

KHOKAND, KHĀNS OF, 280
 Khubilāy, Mongol, 215; 211, 212
 Khudabanda Mōhammad, *Safavid*, 259
 Khudāyār, *Khoqand*, 280
 Khumārawayh, *Tūlānid*, 68
 Khūshkadam, *Mamlük*, 83
 Khusrū, *Buwayhids*, 141
 Khusrū Frīz Abū-Ñaṣr -Rahīm, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Khusrū Malik, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Khusrū Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299
 Khusrū Shāh, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Khusrū Sultān, *Shaybānid*, 272
 Khwājā-Jahān, *Jauhpur*, 309
 KHWĀRIZM SHĀHS, 176-178; 171-2, 204, 217, 294-6
 Kibak, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Kibak, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Kildī Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Kiliç-Arslān, *Seljuks of -Rūm*, 155
 Kiliç Tafighāj Khān, *Iluk*, 185
 Kirwāsh, *Okaylid*, 117
 Kirmān Shāh, *Seljuks*, 153
 Kitbughā, *Mamlük*, 81
 KIZIL-AMADLĪ AMIRS, 184-5
 Kizil-Arslān 'Othmān, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171
 Köchküñji, *Shaybānid*, 271
 Koirjak, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Krim KHĀNS, 233-236
 Krim Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 Kubācha, Nāsir-al-din, 294-5
 Kubla Khān, 212
 Küchi, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Küchuk Mōhammad, *Golden Horde*, 232; 229
 Kudang, Mongol, 216
 Küjük, *Mamlük*, 81
 Kükburi Muzaffar-al-din, *Beg-tiginid*, 165
 Kuli, *Chagatāy*, 242; *Jānids*, 275; *Khiva*, 278
 Kūlnā, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Kuluk, Mongol, 215
 Kunjuruk Khān, *Chagatāy*, 242

Kurds, 74, 138
 Kushala, Mongol, 215
 Kutb al-dawla Ahmād, *İlk*, 135
 Kutb al-dīn Aybak, *Dehlī*, 299; 294-5
 Kutb al-dīn Mubārak, *Dehlī*, 299
 Kutb al-dīn, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Kutb al-dīn Mōhammad, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177
 Kutb al-dīn Mōhammad, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Kutb al-dīn Shāh-Jahān, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Kutb al-dīn İl-Għażi, *Ortukid*, 168
 Kutb al-dīn Sukmān, *Ortukid*, 168
 Kutb al-dīn, *Seljuks of -Rūm*, 155
 Kutb al-dīn Mōlūd, *Zangid*, 163
 Kutb al-dīn Mōhammad, *Zangid*, 163
 Kutb al-dīn Ismā'il, 170
 Kuta Shāhs, 321; 318
 Kutlugh Khāns, 179, 180
 Kutlugh Khātūn, 179
 Kutlugh Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Kutlugh Mōhammad, *Khiva*, 279
 Kuṭuz, *Mamlük*, 81
 Kuyuk, Mongol, 215; 208-9
 LĀJIN, *Mamlük*, 81
 Lamtuna Berbers, 41, 42
 Layth, *Saffārid*, 129
 Lingdan, Mongol, 216
 Lēnis, 300
 Lu'lū Badr-al-din, *Zangid*, 162-3
 Luṭf 'Alī, *Zand*, 260
 Luṭf-Allāh Sarbadā, *id*, 251
 MA'ADD, *Fātimids*, 71
 Maghrawa Berbers, 39
 Mahdi, *Abbāsid*, 12
 Mahdi Mōhammad, *Almohad*, 45
 Mahdi Abū-Mōhammad 'Obayd-Allāh, *Fātimid*, 70, 71
 Mahdi, *Hammūdīd*, 23, 25
 Mahdi, *Imāms of San'a*, 103
 Mahdi, *Rassid Ināns*, 102
 Mahdi, *Mahdīd*, 96

- Mahdī, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
 MAHDIDS, 96
 Mahmūd, *Afghān*, 334; 331
 Mahmūd, *Afghān Shāh of Persia*, 259; 257
 Mahmūd Shāh, *Bahmanids*, 318
 Mahmūd, *Bengal*, 306
 Mahmūd Shāh, *Bengal*, 307-8
 Mahmūd Shihāb-al-dīn, *Būrid*, 161
 Mahmūd Shāh, *Dehli*, 299, 300
 Mahmūd, *Ghaznavid*, 289; 286-8, 291
 Mahmūd, *Ghōrid*, 294
 Mahmūd, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Mahmūd Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Mahmūd, *Ilak Khāns*, 135
 Mahmūd Ghāzān, *Il-Khān*, 220
 Mahmūd Shāh Injū, 245, 249
 Mahmūd Shāh, *Jauṇpūr*, 309
 Mahmūd Sultān, *Khwārizm*, 177
 Mahmūd Shāh Khalji, *Mālwā*, 311
 Mahmūd, *Mirdāvid*, 115
 Mahmūd, *Mongol*, 210, 265
 Mahmūd, *Muzaffarid*, 250
 Mahmūd -Sāliḥ, *Ortukid*, 168
 Mahmūd, 'Othmānlīs', 195; 193
 Mahmūd Mughīth-al-dīn, *Seljuk of -Irāk*, 184; 167
 Mahmūd Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Seljuk*, 153
 Mahmūd, *Timūrids*, 268
 Mahmūd, *Zangids*, 163
 Mahmūdak, *Kazan*, 234
 Majd-al-dawla Abū-Tālib Rustam, *Buvayhid*, 142; 145 [168]
 Majd-al-dīn Isā-Zāhir, *Ortukid*,
 Majd Mohammad, *San'ā*, 103
 Makhlū, *Almohad*, 47
 Makhṣūd Girāy, *Krim*, 237
 Malik Rājā, *Khāndesh*, 315
 Malik Shāh Jalāl-al-dīn, *Seljūks*, 153; 151, 160, 162, 176
 Malik Shāh Mu'in-al-dīn, *Seljuk of -Irāk*, 154
 Malik Shāh, *Seljūks of -Rūm*, 155
 Malla, *Khokand*, 280
 MĀLWA, KINGS OF, 310, 311
 Mamāy, 227
 MAMLEK SULTĀNS, 80-85; 77, 101, 217, 226
 Ma'mūn, *Abbāsid*, 12, 123
 Ma'mūn, *Almohad*, 47
 Ma'mūn, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25
 Ma'mūn, *Hammūdid*, 21, 23
 Ma'n, *Hamdānid* (Yaman), 95
 Manchus, 214
 Mandaghol, *Mongol*, 216
 Mangbarī Jalal-al-dīn, *Khwārizm Shāh*, 177; 208, 296
 MANGITS, 277
 Mangli Girāy, *Krim*, 236, 237
 Mangū, *Mongol*, 215; 211
 Mangū-Timūr, *Golden Horde*, 230; 233, 238-9
 Mansūr, *Abbāsid*, 12
 Mansūr, *Amīrid*, 26
 Mansūr, *Armenia*, 170
 Mansūr Mohammad, *Ayyūbid*, 77
 Mansūr Ismā'il, *Fatimids*, 71
 Mansūr, *Fatimids*, 71
 Mansūr, *Hannālid*, 40
 Mansūr, *Iādās of San'ā*, 103
 Mansūr 'Izz-al-dīn 'Abd-al-'Azīz, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Mansūr Sayf-al-dīn Abū-Bakr, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Mansūr 'Alā-al-dīn 'Ali, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Mansūr Nūr-al-dīn 'Ali, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Mansūr Sayf-al-dīn Kalā'un, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Mansūr Husām-al-dīn Lājīn, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Mansūr Ṣalāh-al-dīn Mohammad, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Mansūr Fakhr-al-dīn 'Othmān, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Mansūr, *Marwānid*, 118
 Mansūr, Bāhā-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil, *Mazyadid*, 119
 Mansūr Shāh, *Muzaffarid*, 250
 Mansūr, *Nujāhid*, 92

- Mansûr (Almanzor), 20
- Mansûr Ahmad, *Ortukid*, 168
- Mansûr Ortuk-Asrlân, *Ortukid*, 168
- Mansûr 'Abd-Allâh, *Rassîd*, 102
- Mansûr 'Abd-Allâh, *Rasûlid*, 99
- Mansûr 'Omar, *Rasûlid*, 99
- Mausûr, *Sâmânîds*, 132
- Mansûr Saba, *Şulayhid*, 94
- Mansûr Tâj - al - dîn 'Abd - al Wahhâb, *Tâhirid* (Yaman), 101
- Mansûr, *Tujibid*, 26
- Mansûr, *Zayrid*, 40
- Mansûr, *Zuray'îd*, 97
- Manuchaher, *Ziyârid*, 137
- Mardân, *Bengal*, 306
- Mardawîj, *Ziyârid*, 136, 137
- Mardûd, *Golden Horde*, 230
- MARINIDS, 57-59 ; 47, 51
- Marjân (*Vezîr*), *Ziyâdid*, 91
- Marwân, *Omayyads*, 9
- Marwân, Abû-, *Hasanî Sharîfs*, 61
- MARWÂNIDS, 118
- Marzubân, *Buwayhid*, 141
- Masmuda Berbers, 42, 45
- Mus'ûd Yûsuf, *Ayyûbid*, 98
- Mas'ûd, *Bengal*, 306
- Mas'ûd Shâh, *Dehlî*, 299
- Mas'ûd, *Ghaznawid*, 289
- Mas'ûd, *Rasûlid*, 99
- Mas'ûd Wajîh-al-dîn, *Sarbadârid*, 251
- Mas'ûd Ghîyâth-al-dîn, *Seljûk* of -'Irâk, 154 ; 160 ; of -Rûm, 155
- Mas'ûd, *Zangids*, 163
- MAS'UD, BANÛ, 97
- Ma'sûm Shâh Murâd, *Mangit*, 277
- MAZYADIDS, 119, 120
- Miknasa Berbers, 39
- Ming, 213
- Miran Mohammad Shâh Fârûki, *Gujarat* and *Khândesh*, 313, 315
- MIRDÂSIDS, 114, 115
- Misk, Abû-l, Kâfûr, *Ikhshîdid*, 69
- Mo'âwiya, *Omayyads*, 9 ; 3
- Môdûd, *Ghaznawid*, 289
- Môdûd, *Ortukid*, 168
- Môdûd, *Zangid*, 163
- MOGUL EMPERORS, 328 ; 298, 305, 313, 315, 322-7
- Mohammad, the Prophet, 3, 188
- Mohammad, *Abbâdiâs*, 25
- Mohammad, Dost, *Afghân*, 331-4
- Mohammad, *Aghlabids*, 37
- Mohammad, *âk-Kuyunlî*, 254
- Mohammed, 'Alîd, 127
- Mohammad b. Tûmart, *Almohad*, 45
- Mohammad -Nâşir, *Almohad*, 47
- Mohammad -Mansûr, *Armenia*, 170
- Mohammad -Pahlawân Jahân, *Atâbeg of Adharbijân*, 171
- Mohammad, *Ayyûbid*, 77, 78
- Mohammad Shâh, *Bahmanids*, 318
- Mohammad Sûr, *Bengal*, 308
- Mohammad, *Bûrid*, 161
- Mohammad, *Chagatây*, 242
- Mohammad Gümishtigîn, *Dâniş-mandid*, 156 [316]
- Mohammad Shâh, *Dehlî*, 299, 300,
- Mohammad b. Taghlak, *Dehlî*, 300 ; 297, 316
- Mohammad, *Fâtimid*, 71
- Mohammad, *Filâlî Sharîf*, 61
- Mohammad, *Ghaznawid*, 289
- Mohammad b. Sâm, *Khârid*, 292-4
- Mohammad Bûlâk, *Gold. Horde*, 230
- Mohammad Karîm, *Gujarat*, 313
- Mohammad Küchuk, *Golden Horde*, 232 ; 229
- Mohammad, *Hafṣids*, 50
- Mohammad, *Hamdânîd*, 111
- Mohammad -Mahdî, *Hammûdîd*, 23, 25 [23]
- Mohammad -Mustâ'lî, *Hammûdîd*,
- Mohammad, *Hasanî Sharîf*, 61
- Mohammad, *Idrisid*, 35
- Mohammad, *Ikhshîdid*, 69
- Mohammad, *Il-Khân*, 220
- Mohammad Abû-l-Walîd, *Jah-warid*, 25
- Mohammad Shâh, *Jaunpur*, 309
- Mohammad, *Kâjär*, 260 ; 258

- Mohammad 'Alā-al-dawla Abū-
Ja'far, *Kakwayhid*, 145
- Mohammad Amin, *Kazan*, 234
- Mohammad, Ulugh, *Kazan*, 234-5
- Mohammad Mirān, *Khāndesh*, 313,
315
- Mohammad 'Ali, *Khedive*, 84, 85 ;
67 [279]
- Mohammad Rahīm, *Khiva*, 275,
- Mohammad 'Ali, *Khokand*, 280
- Mohammad 'Omar, *Khokand*, 280
- Mohammad 'Alā-al-dīn, *Khwārizm
Shāh*, 177 ; 176, 179
- Mohammad Kuṭb-al-dīn, *Khwārizm
Shāh*, 177
- Mohammad Girāy, *Krim*, 236
- Mohammad Ghulāgh Khāns, 179
- Mohammad Ghazni, *Mālwa*, 311
- Mohammad, *Mamlik*, 81, 83
- Mohammad, *Marinids*, 57-8
- Mohammad, *Mazyarid*, 119
- Mohammad Akbar II, *Mogul*, 328
- Mohammad Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Mogul*, 328
- Mohammad, *Muzaffarid*, 250 ; 249
- Mohammad, *Nasrids*, 28
- Mohammad, *'Okaylid*, 116
- Mohammad, *Omayyad* (*Cordova*), 21
- Mohammad, *Oriukid*, 168
- Mohammad, *Othmānlis*, 195 ; 185-7
- Mohammad, *Rasūlid*, 99
- Mohammad, *Salgharids*, 173 [259]
- Mohammad Khudabanda, *Safavid*,
- Mohammad Ghiyath-al-dīn, *Seljūk*,
153 ; 166
- Mohammad Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūk
of Kirmān*, 153
- Mohammad, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154
- Mohammad, *Shaybānid*, 271 ; 239
- Mohammad Kāsim, *Sind*, 283
- Mohammad, *Tūhirid*, 128
- Mohammad, *Wat'asids*, 58
- Mohammad, *Ya'furids*, 91
- Mohammad 'Ali, *Zand*, 260
- Mohammad, *Zangid*, 163
- Mohammad, *Ziyādid*, 91
- Mohammad, *Zuray'ids*, 97
- Mohammad, Abū-, *Khiva*, 279
- Molon, *Mongol*, 215
- MONGOLS, 199-242 ; 3, 7, 77, 155,
172, 174, 177, 179, 183, 296;
see MOGULS
- Mu'ayyad Shihāb-al-dīn Ahmad,
Mamlūk, 83
- Mu'ayyad Shaykh, *Mamlūk*, 83
- Mu'ayyad Najāh, *Najāhid*, 92
- Mu'ayyad, *Omayyad* (*Cordova*), 21
- Mu'ayyad Dāwūd, *Rasūlid*, 99
- Ma'ayyad -Hosayn, *Rasūlid*, 99
- Mu'ayyad Mohammad, *San'a*, 103
- Mu'ayyad, *Surbadārid*, 251
- Mu'ayyid-al-dawla Abū-Mansūr,
Buwayhid, 142
- Mu'azzam Sharaf-al-dīn 'Isā,
Ayyūbi, 78
- Mu'azzam Tūrān-Shāh, *Ayyūbid*,
77, 78, 98
- Mubārak Khāja, *Golden Horde*, 231
- Mubārak Mirān, *Khāndesh*, 315
- Mubārak Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
- Mubārak Shāh, *Chagatay*, 242
- Mubārak Shāh, *Dehlī*, 299, 300
- Mubārak Shāh, *Jamīlūr*, 309
- Mubārak-al-dīn, *Muzaffarid*, 250
- Mufaddal Mohammad, *Rasūlid*, 99
- Mufīh, 126
- MUGHAL, *see* MOGUL
- Mughith-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*,
154 ; of *Kirmān*, 153 [306]
- Mughith-al-dīn Tughril, *Bengal*,
Muhassīn, *Hammādīd*, 40
- Muhitādī, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Muhyī-al-dīn, *Seljūk Kirmān*, 153
- Mu'in-al-dawla Sūkmānu, *Ortukid*,
168 ; 166
- Mu'in-al-dīn, *Seljūk of -'Irāk*, 154
- Mu'izz Abū-Tamīm Ma'add,
Fātimid, 71
- Mu'izz 'Izz-al-dīn Aybak, *Mam-
lūk*, 81
- Mu'izz, *Zayrid*, 40
- Mu'izz-al-dawla Khusrū Shāh,
Ghaznavid, 289

- Mu'izz-al-dawla Abū-'Ulwān Tamāl, *Mirdāsid*, 115
- Mu'izz-al-dawla Abu-l-Hosayn Ahmād, *Buwayhid*, 141; 139-40
- Mu'izz-al-din Ismā'il, *Ayyubid*, 98
- Mu'izz-al-din Bahrām, *Dehlī*, 299
- Mu'izz-al-din K. Kubād, *Dehlī*, 299
- Mu'izz-al-din b. Sām, *Ghōrid*, 292-4
- Mu'izz-al-din, *Kart*, 252
- Mu'izz-al-din Jahandār, *Mogul*, 328
- Mu'izz-al-din Sinjar, *Seljuk*, 153; 152, 292
- Mu'izz-al-din Maḥmūd, *Zangid*, 163
- Mu'izz-al-din Sinjār Shāh, *Zangid*, 163
- Mujāhid Shāh, *Bahmanid*, 318
- Mujāhid, *Denia*, 26
- Mujāhid 'Alī, *Rasūlid*, 99
- Mujāhid Shams-al-din 'Alī, *Tashkirid* (Yaman), 101
- Mujāhid-al-din 'Alī Zayn-al-'Abidin, *Muzaffarid*, 250
- Mujāhid-al-din Kā'imāz, 165
- Mujir-al-din Abāk, *Būrid*, 161
- Mukallad, *Okaylid*, 117
- Mukarram Ahmād, *Sulayhid*, 94
- Muqtadi, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Muqtadir, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Muktafir, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Muktafi, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Mumahhid-al-dawla Abū-Manṣūr, *Mawānid*, 118
- Mundhir, *Omayyad (Cordova)*, 21
- Mundhir, *Tajibids*, 26
- Muntafiq, Banū-, 116, 119
- Muntasir, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Muntasir, *Marinid*, 58
- Muntasir Dāwūd, *Rassid*, 102
- MURĀBĪTS, 41-3; 20, 27, 39, 45
- Murād, Ak-Kuyunlı, 254
- Murād, Khāns of Khokand, 280
- Murād (Amurath), 'Othmānlīs, 195; 185, 187, 192, 256
- Murād-Bakhsh, *Mogul*, 328
- Murād Girāy, *Krim*, 237
- Murād Shāh Ma'sūm, *Mangit*, 277
- Murid Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
- Murtadā, *Golden Horde*, 232
- Murtadā, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
- Murtadā Mohammad, *Rassid*, 102
- Müsā, *Ayyubids*, 77, 78
- Müsā, *İlk Khān*, 135
- Müsā, *İl-Khān of Persia*, 220
- Müsā, *Marinid*, 58
- Müsā Abū-Ḥammū, *Ziyānid*, 51
- Musharrif-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
- Muslim, *Ökaylid*, 117
- Mustadī, *'Abbāsid*, 18
- Muṣṭafā, 'Othmānlīs, 195
- Muṣṭa'in, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Muṣṭa'in, *'Abbāsid of Egypt*, 83
- Muṣṭa'in, *Hūdīds*, 26
- Muṣṭa'in, *Omayyad (Cordova)*, 21
- Muṣṭakfī, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Muṣṭakfī, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
- Muṣṭalī, Abū-l-Ḳāsim Ahmād, *Fatimid*, 71
- Muṣṭalī, *Hammūdīd*, 23
- Muṣtanjīd, *'Abbāsid*, 13, 119
- Muṣtanṣır, *'Abbāsid*, 13
- Muṣtanṣır, *Almohad*, 47
- Muṣtanṣır Abū-Tamīm Ma'add, *Fatimid*, 71
- Muṣtanṣır, *Hafṣids*, 50
- Muṣtanṣır, *Hammūdīd*, 23
- Muṣtanṣır, *Marinid*, 58
- Muṣtanṣır, *Omayyad (Cordova)*, 21
- Muṣtarshīd, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Muṣta'sim, *'Abbāsid*, 13
- Muṣtażhir, *'Abbāsid*, 12
- Muṣtażhir, *Omayyad (Cordova)*, 21
- Mu'tayyad, *Hammūdīd*, 23
- Mu'taddī, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
- Mu'tadīd, *'Abbādid*, 25
- Mu'tadīd, *'Abbāsid*, 12, 111
- Mu'talī, *Hammūdīd*, 21, 23
- Mu'tamār, *Hūdīd*, 26
- Mu'tamāşik, *Naṣrid*, 28
- Mu'tamīd, *'Abbādid*, 25

- Mu'tamid, *Abbāsid*, 12, 129
 Mu'tamid-al-dawla Kirwāsh, *Oğay-iid*, 117
 -Mu'tasim, *Abbāsid*, 12
 -Mu'tasim, *Almohad*, 47
 -Mutawakkil, *Abbāsid*, 12
 -Mutawakkil, *Imāms of Ṣan'a*, 103
 -Mutawakkil, *Marinid*, 58
 -Mutawakkil, *Rassid Imāms*, 102
 -Mu'tazz, *Abbāsid*, 12
 -Mutī', *Abbāsid*, 12
 -Muttaki, *Abbāsid*, 12
 -Muwaffak, *Abbāsid*, 129
 -Muwaffak, *Hammūdid*, 23
MUWAHIDS, 49-7 ; 27, 39, 43, 49
 -Muzaffar, *Āmirid*, 26
 -Muzaffar Ghāzi, *Ayyābid*, 78
 -Muzaffar 'Omar, *Ayyābid*, 79, 165
 -Muzaffar Sulaymān, *Ayyābid*, 98
 Muzaffar Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
 Muzaffar Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Muzaffar Ahmad, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Muzaffar Rukn-al-dīn Baybars
 -Jāshankir, *Mamlūk*, 81
 -Muzaffar Sayf - al - dīn - Hājjī,
 Mamlūk, 81
 -Muzaffar Sayf - al - dīn Kuṭuz,
 Mamlūk, 81
 -Muzaffar Dāwūd, *Ortukid*, 168
 -Muzaffar Yūsuf, *Rasūlid*, 99
 -Muzaffar, *Tajibid*, 26
 Muzaffar-al-dīn Uzbeg, *Atābeg of
 Adharbijān*, 171
 Muzaffar-al-dīn Mūsā, *Ayyābid*, 78
 Muzaffar-al-dīn Kükburī, *Beg-
 tigīrid*, 165
 Muzaffar-al-dīn, *Mangit*, 277
MUZAFFARIDS, 249-50 ; 179, 219,
 245
 NĀPIR, *Afshārid*, 259 ; 257-8,
 278, 326, 330
 Nādir Mohammad, *Jānid*, 275
 Nafīs, 91
 Najah, 90, 92
NĀJĀHIDS, 92, 93
 Najm-al-dīn, *Ayyābid*, 77, 78
 Najm-al-dīn Alpi, *Ortukid*, 168
 Najm - al - dīn Ghāzi 1 - Sa'īd,
 Ortukid, 168
 Najm-al-dīn II-Ghāzi, *Ortukid*,
 166-8
 Najm, Abū-l Badr, *Hasanwayhid*,
 138
 Narbuta, *Khokānd*, 280
 Nāṣir, *Abbāsid*, 13 ; 7
 Nāṣir Hasan, *Ātid*, 127
 Nāṣir, *Almohad*, 47
 Nāṣir Ayyūb, *Ayyābid*, 98
 Nāṣir Salāḥ - al - dīn Dāwūd,
 Ayyābid, 78
 Nāṣir Salāḥ-al-dīn, 77; *see* Saladin
 Nāṣir, *Hammūdid*, 40
 Nāṣir, *Hammūdid*, 21, 23
 Nāṣir, *Omāyyad of Cordova*, 21
 Nāṣir Ahmad, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Nāṣir Faraj, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Nāṣir Hasan, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Nāṣir Mohammad, *Mamlūks*, 81-3
 Nāṣir, *Nayrid*, 28
 Nāṣir Ahmad, *Rassid Imām*, 102
 Nāṣir - Daylami, *Rassid*, 102
 Nāṣir Mohammad, *Rassid*, 102
 Nāṣir 'Abd-Allāh, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Nāṣir Ahmad, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Nāṣir Mohammad, *Ṣan'a*, 103
NĀṢIR-AL-DAWLA Abū - Mohammad
 -Hasan, *Hamdānid*, 111, 112
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Armeniān*, 170
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Bengal*, 306
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Kājār*, 260
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, *Khoṭānd*, 280
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Badr, *Hasanwayhid*,
 138
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Bughrā, *Bengal*, 306
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Humāyūn, *Mogul*,
 329
 Nāṣir-al-dīn Khusrū, *Dehli*, 299
 Nāṣir-al-dīn, Kubācha, *Sind*, 294-5
 Nāṣir - al - dīn Maḥmūd, *Bengal*,
 307-8

- Nâşir-al-dîn Maḥmûd Shâh, *Dehli*, 299
 Nâşir-al-dîn Maḥmûd, *Ortukîd*, 168
 Nâşir-al-dîn Maḥmûd, *Seljûk*, 153
 Nâşir-al-dîn Maḥmûd, *Zangîd*, 163
 Nâşir-al-dîn Mohammad, *Mogul*, 328
 Nâşir-al-dîn Naşrat, *Bengal*, 308
 Nâşir-al-dîn Ortûk-Arslân -Maṣûr *Ortukîd*, 168
 Nâşir-dîn-Allâh Maṣ'ûd, *Ghazna-wid*, 289
 Nâşir Khân Maḥmûd, *Gujarât*, 313
 Nâşir Khân, *Khândesh*, 315
 Nâşir Shâh, *Mâliwa*, 311
 Naṣr, *İlk Khâns*, 135
 Naṣr, *Marwânîd*, 118
 Naṣr, *Mirdâsîds*, 115
 Naṣr, Abû-l-Juyûsh, *Nâṣrid*, 28
 Naṣr, *Sâmânîds*, 132
 Naṣr, Abû-, *Marwânîd*, 118
 Naṣr-al-dawla Abû Naṣr Alḥmad, *Marwânîd*, 118
 Naṣr-Allâh, *Mangit*, 277
 Naṣrat Shâh, *Bengal*, 308
 Naṣrat Shâh, *Dehli*, 300
 NASRIDS, 27-29; 46
 Nazâr, *Fâtimid*, 71
 Nikpây, *Chagatây*, 242
 Nikû-siyar, *Mogul*, 328 [118]
 Nizâm-âl-dawla Naṣr, *Marwânîd*,
 Nizâm-a'l-mulk, 318
 Nizâm Shâh, *Bahmanîd*, 318
 NIZAM SHÂHS, 320; 318
 Normans, 36, 40, 41, 71, 75
 Nouredin, 163
 Nûh, *Sâmânîds*, 132; 286
 Nûr-al-dawla, *İlk Khân*, 135
 Nûr-al-dawla Dubays, *Mazyad*. 119
 Nûr-dawlat, *Krim*, 236
 Nûr-al-dîn 'Ali, *Ayyûbid*, 78
 Nûr-al-dîn 'Ali, *Mamlûk*, 81
 Nûr-al-dîn Arslân, *Zangîd*, 163
 Nûr-al-dîn Maḥmûd (Nouredin), *Zangîd*, 163; 74-5
 Nûr-al-dîn Mohammad, *O-tuȝid*, 168
 Nûr-al-Ward, *Hazâraspid*, 175
 Nûshîrvân, *İl-Khân of Persia*, 220
 Nûrûz Ahmâd, *Shaybânîd*, 271
 Nûrûz-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230
 'OBAYD-ALLÂH, *Fâtimid*, 70, 71
 'Obayd-Allâh, *Jânîds*, 275
 'Obayd-Allâh, *Shaybânîd*, 271
 Ochiali, *Corsair*, 56
 Ogotây, *Mongol*, 215; 172, 179,
 205, 207-10, 241
 'OKAXLIDS, 116-117; 115
 'Omar Abû-Hâfs -Murtâda,
Almohad, 47 [165]
 'Omar, Tâki-al-dîn, *Ayyûbid*, 79
 'Omar Shâh, *Dehli*, 299
 'Omar, *Dulaſîd*, 125
 'Omar Abû-Hâfs, *Hâfiṣids*, 50
 'Omar, *Mangit*, 277
 'Omar, *Omâyŷad*, 9
 'Omar, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 9
 'Omar, *Rasûlîds*, 99
 'Omar, *Zangîd*, 163
 'Omar, Abû-, *Marînid*, 57
 Omayya, 3
 OMAYYAD CALIPHS, 3-6, 9, 10,
 11, 67
 OMAYYADS OF CORDOVA, 19-22; 6
 Orda, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Orgâna Khâtûn, *Chagatây*, 242
 Orkhân, 'Othmânî, 195
 ORTHODOX CALIPHS, 3, 9
 Ortuk, 160, 166
 Ortûk-Arslân, *Ortukîd*, 168
 ORTUKİDS, 166-169
 'Othmân -Kâdi, *Amîrid*, 26
 'Othmân, Atâbeg Adharbijân, 171
 'Othmân -Azîz, *Ayyûbid*, 77
 'Othmân Abû-'Amr, *Hâfiṣid*, 50
 'Othmân, *Mamlûk*, 83
 'Othmân, *Masînid*, 57
 'Othmân, *Orthodox Caliph*, 3, 9
 'Othmân, 'Othmânîs, 195
 'Othmân, *Ziyânid*, 51

OTHMANLĪ or Ottoman SULTĀNS, 186–197; 4, 49, 55, 56, 67, 84, 101, 103, 108, 152, 183, 256, 266
Oways, *Jalayrs*, 246–8

PAHLAWĀN JAHĀN, *Atābeg of Adharbīyān*, 171
PERSIA, SHĀHS OF, 258–62
Persians, 123, 245
Pir ‘Ali, *Kart*, 252
Pir Mohammad, *Shaybānis*, 271
Piri, *Ghaznawid*,
Prithvi Rāja, 293
Pūlād, *Golden Horde*, 232
Pūlād Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230

RABI‘, Abū-l-*I*, *Morinid*, 57
Rādi, *Abbāsid*, 12
Rafī‘-al-darajāt, *Mogul*, 323
Rafī‘-al-dawla Shāh-Jahān II,
Mogul, 328
•Rahim Khusrū Firuz, *Buwayhid*,
141
Rahīm, *Khoqand*, 280
Rahīm Kuli, *Khiva*, 279
Rāja Kāns, *Bengal*, 307
Rajipeka, *Mongol*, 215
•Rashid, *Abbāsid*, 12
•Rashid, *Abbāsid*, 12
•Rashid, *Almohad*, 47
•Rashid, *Filali Shayif*, 61
Rashid-al-dawla Mahmūd, *Mirdāsid*, 115
•Rashidūn, *Khalīfs*, 3
RASSID IMAMS, 102
RASŪLIDS, 99–100; 77
REYES DE TAIFAS, 23–27; 20
Rhodes, Knights of, 56, 188
Ridiyya, *Dehlī*, 299; 296
Ridwān, *Seljuk of Syria*, 154
Rintshenpal, *Mongol*, 215
Roger of Sicily, 40
Rukh, Shāh, *Afshārid*, 259
Rukh, Shāh, *Khoqand*, 280
Rukh, Shāh, *Timurid*, 267–8

Rukn-al-dawla Abū-‘Alī Hasan,
Buwayhid, 142
Rukn-al-dawla Dāwūd, *Ortuķid*,
168
Rukn-al-dīn K-Kāwus, *Bengal*, 306
Rukn-al-dīn Bārbak, *Bengal*, 307
Rukn-al-dīn Firuz, *Dehlī*, 299
Rukn-al-dīn Ibrāhim, *Dehlī*, 299
Rukn-al-dīn, *Īlak Khān*, 135
Rukn-al-dīn, *Kart*, 252
Rukn-al-dīn Khōjat-al-Hakk,
Kutlugh Khān, 179
Rukn-al-dīn Baybars, *Mamlūk*, 81
Rukn-al-dīn Mōdūd, *Ortuķid*, 168
Rukn-al-dīn Bargiyāruķ, *Seljūk*,
153
Rukn-al-dīn Tughril Beg, *Seljūk*,
153; 145, 151, 172
Rukn-al-dīn Sultan Shāh, *Seljūk*
of Kirmān, 153
Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljūks of -Rām*, 155
Rushd (vezir), *Ziyādīd*, 91
Rustam, *Āk-Kuyunbī*, 254
Rustam, *Buwayhid*, 142

SA‘IDAT GİRLĀY, *Krim*, 236, 237
Sabā, *Sulayhid*, 94
Sabā, *Zuray‘id*, 97
Sabaktigin, *Ghaznawid*, 289; 285–6
Sābiķ Abū-l-Fadā-il, *Mirdāsid*,
115
Sa‘d-Musta‘in, *Nasrid*, 28
Sa‘d, *Salgharid*, 173; 172
Sa‘d-al-dawla Abū-l-Ma‘āli Sharif,
Hamdānid, 112
SA‘DA, IMAMS OF, 102
Sadaqa Sayf-al-dawla, *Mazyadids*,
119
Sādīk, *Zind*, 260
Sāfā Girāy, *Krim*, 237
SAFAVIDS (SHĀHS OF PERSIA), 259;
245, 254, 255–7, 268
Saffah, *Abbāsid*, 12
SAFFARIDS, 129, 130; 7, 284
Safī, *Safavid*, 259
Safwat-al-dīn, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179

- Şaghir, Nasrid, 28
 -Şahib Giray, Krim, 236, 237
 -Şa'id, Altoghad, 47
 Sa'id, Handidānid, 111, 112
 Sa'id, Khedive, 85
 -Sa'id Baraka Khān, Mamlūk, 81
 -Sa'id Marīnid, 57, 58
 Sa'id -Ahwal, Nājānid, 92
 -Sa'id Ghāzi, Ḥartukid, 168
 Sa'id Sultān, Shaybānid, 273
 -Sa'id Shaykh Wat'as, Wat'asid, 58
 Sa'id-a/-dawla, Handidānid, 112
 Sa'id, Abū-, Hazāraspid, 175
 Sa'id, Abū-, Īl-Khān of Persia,
 220; 218, 249, 251
 Sa'id, Abū-, Marīnid, 58
 Sa'id, Abū-, Shaybānid, 271
 Sa'id, Abū-, Timurid, 268
 Saladin, 77; 46, 67, 71, 74-5,
 165
 Salāh-al-din Dāwūd, Ayyūbid, 78
 Salāh-al-din Yūsuf-Nāṣir, Ayyūb-
 id, 77; see Saladin
 Salāh-al-din Yūsuf, Ayyūbid, 78
 Salāmat Giray, Krim, 236-7
 Salāmish, Mamlūk, 81
 Salghar, 160, 172
 SALGHARIDS, 172, 173
 -Sālih Najm-al-din Ayyūb,
 Ayyūbid, 77, 78, 80
 -Sālih Ismā'il, Ayyūbid, 78
 -Sālih Hajjī, Mamlūk, 81
 -Sālih Ismā'il, Mamlūk, 81
 -Sālih Mohammad, Mamlūk, 83
 -Sālih Sālih, Mamlūk, 81
 Sālih, Mirdasid, 115
 Sālih, Ḥartukid, 168
 Sālih, Ismā'il, Zangid, 163
 Sālim, Abū-, Marīnid, 57
 Samā-al-dawla Abū-l-Hasan, Bu-
 wayhid, 142
 SĀMĀNIDS, 131-133; 7, 127, 129
 -Samīn, Filālī Sharīf, 61
 Samsām-al-dawla Abū-Kālinjār
 -Marzubān, Buwayhid, 141
 Şamşām-al-dawla, Mirdasid, 115
 ŞAN'Ā, IMĀMS OF, 103
 Sanad-al-dawla, Mazyadid, 119
 Sanhāja Berbers, 39
 Saphadin, 76-78
 SARBADĀRID, 250; 219, 245
 Sartak, Golden Horde, 230
 ŞARŪ-KHĀN AMĪRS, 184-5
 Sasaktu, Mongol, 216
 Sāsānids, 4, 5
 Sāsibūka, Golden Horde, 231
 Sāti-Beg, Īl-Khān, 220; 219
 Sattūn, Buwayhid, 141
 Sayf-al-dawla Abū-l-Ḥasan 'Alī,
 Handidānid, 111, 112
 Sayf-al-dawla, Hūdīd, 26
 Sayf-al-dīn, Ayyūbids, 77, 78
 Sayf-al-dīn Begtimur, Armen., 170
 Sayf-al-dīn Aybak, Bengal, 306
 Sayf-al-dīn Firuz, Bengal, 306
 Sayf-al-dīn Hamza, Bengal, 308
 Sayf-al-dīn Sūri, Ghōrid, 291
 Sayf-al-dīn Ghāzi, Zangids, 163
 Sayf-al-Islām Tughtigin, Ayyūbid,
 79, 98
 Sayf-al-Islām Tughtigin, Būrid,
 161; 160
 Sayyid Ahmad, Golden Horde, 232
 Sayyid Mohammad, Khiva, 279
 Sayyid Sultān, Khokand, 280
 SAYYIDS, 300, 303
 Selim, 'Othmānīs, 195; 3, 84, 188,
 256
 Selim Giray, Krim, 236, 237
 Seljuk Shāh, Salgharid, 173
 SELJUKS, 149-155; 134, 140, 145,
 156, 158-62, 166, 167, 170-2,
 176, 183-6, 287-8, 292
 Setzen, Mongol, 216
 Sha'bān, Mamlūks, 81
 Shādi Beg, Golden Horde, 232
 Shādīd, Hafsid, 50
 Shāhānshāh, Zangid, 163
 Shāh-'Alam Bahādur Shāh, Mogul,
 328
 Shāh-'Alam, Jalal-al-din, Mogul,
 328

- Shāh-Jahān, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Shāh-Jahān, *Moguls*, 328
 Shāh Rukh, *Afshārid*, 259
 Shāh Rukh, *Khokand*, 280
 Shāh Rukh, *Timurid*, 268
 Shāh Shujā', *Afghān*, 334
 Shāh Shujā', *Muzaffarīa*, 250
 Shāhīn Girāy, *Krim*, 237
SHĀHS OF ARMENIA, 170
SHĀHS OF PERSIA, 258-262
 Shajar-al-durr, *Mamlūk*, 81
 Shams-al-dawla Abū-Tāhir, *Buwayhid*, 142
 Shams-al-dīn Ildigiz, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171
 Shams-al-dīn, *Bahmanīz*, 318
 Shams-al-dīn, *Bengal*, 307
 Shams-al-dīn Alīmad, *Bengal*, 307
 Shams-al-dīn Firuz, *Bengal*, 306
 Shams-al-dīn Ilyās, *Bengal*, 307
 Shams - al - dīn Mohammad Sūr Ghāzi Shāh, *Bengal*, 308
 Shams-al-dīn Muzaffar, *Bengal*, 308
 Shams-al-dīn Yūsuf, *Bengal*, 307
 Shams-al-dīn Altamish, *Dehlī*, 299
 Shams-al-dīn Kart, 252
 Shams-al-dīn Salīh, *Ortakid*, 168
 Shams-al-dīn, *Rassid Imām*, 102
 Shams-al-dīn 'Alī, *Surbadārid*, 251
 Shams-al-na'ālī, *Ziyārid*, 137
 Shams-al-mulk, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Shams-al-muluk Ismā'il, *Būrid*, 161
 Sharaf - al - dawla Shir Zayd, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Sharaf-al-dawla, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Sharaf-al-dawla Abū-l-Makārim Muslim, '*Okaylid*', 117
 Sharaf-al-dīn Isā, *Ayyubid*, 78
 Sharaf-al-dīn, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Sharif Abū-l-Ma'ālī, *Hanūdānid*, 112
 Sharif, *Morūnid*, 58
SHARIFS OF MOROCCO, 60-63
SHARKI KINGS OF JAUNPŪR, 309
 Shaybān, *Mongol*, 222-3, 225, 230, 232, 238-240
 Shaybān, *Talūnid*, 68
SHAYBĀNIDS, 269-273; 239, 268, 278, 322
 Shaykh, *Hasanī Sharīf*, 61
 Shaykh, *Mamlūk*, 83
SHEEP, TURKOMĀNS OF THE BLACK AND WHITE, 252-4
 Shībl-al-dawla Abū-Kāmil Nasr, *Mirdāsid*, 115
 Shihāb-al-dawla Mōdūd, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Shihāb-al-dawla, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Shihāb - al - dīn Bāyzād, *Bengal*, 307
 Shihāb-al-dīn Bughrā, *Bengal*, 306
 Shihāb-al-dīn Maḥmūd, *Būrid*, 161
 Shihāb-al-dīn 'Omar, *Dehlī*, 299
 Shihāb-al-dīn Mohammad, *Ghōrid*, 292-4
 Shi'ites, 37, 70, 102, 112, 124, 140, 149, 256
 Shir 'Alī, *Afghān*, 333-4
 Shir 'Alī, *Khān of Khokand*, 280
 Shir Ghāzi, *Khān of Khiva*, 279
 Shir Khān, *Bengal*, 306
 Shir Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300; 294, 305, 322
 Shirzād, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Shir Zayd, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Shirān, *Bengal*, 306
 Shujā' - al - mulk, *Afghān*, 334; 331-3
 Shujā', *Mogul*, 328
 Sikandar Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Sikandar Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300
 Sikandar Shāh, *Gujarāt*, 313
 Sinjar, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Sinjar Mu'izz-al-dīn, *Seljuk*, 153; 152, 292
 Sinjār Shāh, *Zangid*, 163
SLAVE KINGS OF DEHLI, 299, 301; 294-6
 Subhān Kuli, *Jānid*, 275
 Sufyān, *Khīra*, 278
 Sukmān - Kutbī, *Armenia*, 170

- Sukmān Nāṣir-al dīn, *Armenia*, 170
 Sukmān, *Ortūkīds*, 168 ; 166
SULAYMĀIDS, 94
 Sulaymān, *Ayyūbīds*, 98
 Sulaymān Karārānī, *Bengal*, 308
 Sulaymān, *Filalī Sharīf*, 61
 Sulaymān - Musta'īn, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Sulaymān, *Īl-Khān of Persia*, 220
 Sulaymān, *Khoqānd*, 280
 Sulaymān Abū-l-Rabī', *Marinid*, 57
 Sulaymān, *Omayyad*, 9
 Sulaymān - Musta'īn, *Omayyad of Cordova*, 21
 Sulaymān, 'Othmānlīs, 195 ; 188-9
 Sulaymān, *Šafāvid*, 259
 Sulaymān, *Seljūk of -Irāk*, 154
 Sulaymān, *Seljūks of -Rūm*, 155
 Sultān, 140, 286n
 Sultān-al-dawla, *Buwayhid*, 141
 Sultān - al - dawla, Arslān, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Sultān Hājjī, *Khiva*, 278
 Sultān Sa'īd, *Shaybānid*, 272
 Sultān Shāh Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 153
 Sultān Shāh, *Seljūk of Syria*, 154
 Sunkur, *Salgharid*, 173 ; 172
 Sūrī, Sayf-al-dīn, *Ghorīd*, 291
 Su'ūd, Abū-, *Zurayīids*, 97
 Suyūrghātmish, *Kutlugh Khān*, 179
 Suyūrghātmish, *Mongol*, 268 ; 210, 265

TAFKĀJ Khān, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Taghlaq Shāh, *Dehlī*, 300
TAGHILAQĪDS, 300, 302
 Taghlib, Abū-, *Hamdānid*, 112
 Tagir, *Khiva*, 279
 Tāhir, Abū-, *Hazāraspid*, 175
 Tāhir, *Saffārid*, 130
 Tāhir Dhū-l-Yamīnayn, *Tāhirid*, 128 ; 7
TĀHIRĪDS, 128, 129
 Tāmirīds of the Yaman, 101
 Tāhir, Abū-, *Buwayhid*, 142

 Tāhir, Abū-, *Hamdānid*, 112
 Tahmāsp, *Sīfāvids*, 259
 Tā'i, 'Abbāsid, 12
 Taifas, Reyes de, 23-7
 Taisong, *Mongol*, 215
 Tāj-al-dawla Khusrū Malik, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Tāj-al-mulūk Būrī, *Būrid*, 161
 Taki-al-dīn 'Omar, *Ayyūbid*, 79, 165
TAKKA AMĪRS, 184-5
 Takla, *Hazāraspid*, 175
 Takla, *Salgharid*, 173
 Tālib, Abū-, *Buwayhid*, 142
 Talha, *Tāhirid*, 128
 Tālikū, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Tamāl, *Mirdāsid*, 115
 Tamar Khān-Kirān, *Bengal*, 306
 Tamerlane, *see* Timūr
 Tamim, *Ziyrid*, 25
 Tamim, *Zayrid*, 40
 Tamim, Abū-, *Fātimids*, 71
 Tandū, *Jalayr*, 247
 Tarjumān-al-dīn, *Rassid*, 102
 Tāshfīn, *Almoravid*, 43
 Tāshfīn, Abū-'Omar, *Marinid*, 57
 Tāshfīn, Abū-, *Ziyānid*s, 51
 Tatar Khān, *Bengal*,
 Tatār, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Tawfiq, *Khedive*, 85
 Thābit, Abū-, *Marinid*, 57
 Thābit, Abū-, *Ziyānid*s, 51
 Thā'ir, 'Alīd, 127
 Temujin (Chingiz), 202
 Teval, *Mongol*, 222, 240
 Timūr (Tamerlane), 265-8 ; 185,
 227-8, 242, 247-53, 297, 322
 Timurbughā, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Timūr, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Timūrids, 265-268 ; 175, 255, 330
 Timūr Khōja, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Timūr Kutlugh, *Golden Horde*, 232
 Timūr Malik, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Timūr Shāh, *Afghān*, 334
 Timurtash, *Ortūkīd*, 168
 Timī-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230

Tirmasharīn, *Chagatāy*, 242
 TIUMEN, CZARS OF, 239
 TOJIRIDS, 26
 Töktakya, *Golden Horde*, 231
 Töktamish Ghiyāth-al-dīn, *Golden Horde*, 231; 225, 227-9, 265
 Töktü, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Torghūd (Dragut), *Corsair*, 56
 Tüde-Mangū, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Tuğhāj, İmād-al-dawla İbrāhīm, *İlak Khān*, 135
 Tuğhā-Timür, *İl-Khān*, 220, 265
 Tughān Khān, *Bengal*, 306
 Tughān Sharaf-al-dīn, *İlak*, 135
 Tughān-Timür, *Mongol*, 215; 218
 Tughril, *Ghaznavid*, 289
 Tughril Khān, *İlak Khān*, 135
 Tughj, *İkhshidid*, 69
 Tughril, *Bengal*, 306
 Tughril, *Seljuks of - İrāk*, 154
 Tughril Beg, Rukn-al-dīn, *Seljūk*, 153; 145, 151, 172, 287
 Tughril Shah Muhyī-al-dīn, *Seljūk of Kirmān*, 153
 Tughītgīn, *Ayyābid*, 79, 98
 Tughītgīn Sayf-al-Islām Zahūr-al-dīn, *Būrid*, 161
 Tūka-Timür, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Tūka-Timür, *Mongol*, 222-3, 225, 230, 232, 233 ff.
 Tukush, *Khitirim Shāh*, 177
 Tūla-Bugha, *Golden Horde*, 230
 Tūlūn-Beg, *Golden Horde*, 230
 TÜLÜNIDS, 68; 6
 Tulūy, *Mongol*, 205, 211-217
 Tūmān-Bey, *Mamluk*, 83
 Turakina, *Mongol*, 215
 Tūrān-Shāh, *Ayyābid*, 74, 77, 78, 98
 Tūrān Shāh, *Seljūks of Kirmān*, 153
 TURKISTĀN, KHĀNS OF, 134-5
 Turkomāns, 245-7, 253-4
 Turks, 7, 49, 150 ff., 159
 Tutush, *Seljūk of Syria*, 154; 160, 162, 166

'UDDAT - al-dawla Abū - Taghlib - Ghadanfir, *Hamānīd*, 112
 Ukektu, *Mongol*, 216
 'Ulā, Abū-l-, *Almohad*, 47
 Uljai-Timür, *Mongol*, 215
 Uljai-tū, *Mongol*, 215
 Uljai-tū, *İl-Khān of Persia*, 220
 Ulugh Beg, *Timūrid*, 268
 Ulugh Mohammad, *Kazan*, 334-5
 Ulū 'Alī (Ochiali), *Corsair*, 56
 Üngür Abū-l-Kāsim, *Ikhshidid*, 69
 Urang Timür, *Krim*, 233
 Urūj Barbarossa, 55
 Urūs, *Golden Horde*, 231; 227, 229
 Ussukhal, *Mongol*, 215
 Uzbeg, Muzaffar-al-dīn, *Atābeg of Adharbījān*, 171
 Uzbeg, *Golden Horde*, 230; 238
 Uzun Hasan, *Āk-Kuyunkē*, 253-5
 WAJĪH-al-dīn Mas'ūd, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 Walad, Shāh, *Jalayr*, 247-8
 Wali-Allāh Shāh, *Bahmanīd*, 318
 Wālī Muhammad, *Jānid*, 275
 Walid, *Husāni Sharif*, 61
 Walid, *Omayyads*, 9
 Washmagir Zahir-al-dawla, *Zī-yārid*, 137
 WAT'ASIDS, 55
 Wāthīk, *Abbāsid*, 12
 Wāthīk Abū-l-'Ulā, *Almohad*, 47
 Wāthīk, *Hamānīd*, 25
 Wāthīk, *Mamīnid*, 58
 White Horde, 231; 226
 YADIGHĀR, *Khiva*, 279
 YA'FURIDS, 90, 91
 Yaghī (or Ya'kūb) Arslān, *Dānish-mānid*, 156
 Yagmorasan, *Zūnīd*, 51
 Yahyā - Mu'tasim, *Almohad*, 47
 Yahyā - Kādir, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25, 26
 Yahyā - Ma'mūn, *Dhū-l-Nūnid*, 25, 26

- Yahyā Abū-Zakaryā, *Hafṣids*, 50
 Yahyā, Hammādīd, 40
 Yahya-Mu'tali, *Hammādīd*, 21, 23
 Yahyā, *Idrisids*, 35
 Yahyā Shāh, *Muẓaffarid*, 248
 Yahyā, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Yahyā, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 Yahyā -Muẓaffar, *Tajibid*, 26
 Yahyā, *Zayrid*, 40
 Yahya, Abū-, *Hafṣids*, 50
 Yahyā, Abū-, *Marīnid*, 57
 Ya'kūb, *Afghān*, 334
 Ya'kūb, *Āk-Kuyūnlī*, 254
 Ya'kūb Abū -Yūsuf -Mansūr,
 Almohad, 47
 Ya'kūb, Abū-, *Almohad*, 47
 Yamin-al-dawla, see Mahmūd and
 Bahrām, *Ghaznawids* [274]
 Yār Mohammad, *Shaybānid*, 272;
 Yazid, *Filali Sharif*, 61
 Yazid, *Omayyads*, 9
 Yāzid b. Hātim, 34, 36
 Yıldız, 294-5
 Yissugāy, 202
 Yisūnbughā, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Yisū Mangū, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Yisūn-Timūr, *Chagatāy*, 242
 Yisūn-Timūr, *Mongol*, 215
 YUEN, 213
 Yuluğ-Ārslān, *Ortūkid*, 168
 Yūsuf, *'Adil Shāh*, 317, 321
 Yūsuf Abū-Ya'kūb, *Almohad*, 47
 Yūsuf b. Tāshfīn, *Almoravid*, 42,
 43
 Yūsuf, *Ayyūbids*, 77, 78, 98
 Yūsuf Zayn-al-dīn, *Begtiginid*, 165
 Yūsuf Shāh, *Bengal*, 307
 Yūsuf Shāh, *Hazāraspids*, 175
 Yūsuf -Mu'taman, *Hūdīd*, 26
 Yūsuf, *Īlak Khān*, 135
 Yūsuf, *Mamlūk*, 83
 Yūsuf Abū-Ya'kūb, *Marīnid*, 57
 Yūsuf -Nāsir, *Nasrids*, 28
 -Yūsuf-Dā'i, *Rassid*, 102, 103
 Yūsuf, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Yūsuf Bulukkin, *Zayrid*, 40
 Yūsuf, Abū-, *Almohad*, 47
 Yūsuf, Abū, *Marīnid*, 57
 Yūzbek, *Bengal*, 306
 ZAFAR KHĀN, *Bahmanid*, 318
 Zafar Khān, *Gujarāt*, 313
 -Zāfir, *Dhu-l-Nūnid*, 25
 -Zāfir Abū-l-Mansūr Ismā'il, *Fāti-*
 mid, 71
 -Zāfir Ṣalāḥ-al-dīn 'Āmir, *Ta-*
 hirids (Yaman), 101
 Zaghal, *Nasrid*, 28
 -Zāhir, *Abbāsid*, 13
 -Zāhir Ghiyāth-al-dīn Ghāzi, *Ay-*
 yūbid, 78
 -Zāhir Abū-l-Hasan 'Alī, *Fātimid*,
 71
 Zāhir, *Hasanwayhid*, 138
 -Zāhir Barķuk, *Mamlūk*, 81, 83
 -Zāhir Baybars -Bundukdārī, *Mam-*
 lūk, 81
 -Zāhir Bilbey, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Zāhir Jakmaķ, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Zāhir Kānsūh, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Zāhir Khushkadam, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Zāhir Taṭār, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Zāhir Timurbughā, *Mamlūk*, 83
 -Zāhir, *Ortūkid*, 168
 -Zāhir, Yahyā, *Rasūlid*, 99
 Zāhir-al-dawla, *Ghaznawid*, 289
 Zāhir-al-dawla, *Ziyārid*, 137
 Zāhir-al-dīn Ibrahim, *Armenia*,
 170
 Zāhir-al-dīn, *Kākwayhid*, 145
 Zāhir-al-dīn see Bābar,
 Zāhir-al-dīn, *Sarbadārid*, 251
 -Zāim Abū-Thābit, *Ziyānid*, 51
 Za'im - al - dawla Abū - Kāmil
 Baraka, *'Okaylid*, 117
 Zakaryā Abū-Yahyā, *Hafṣid*, 50
 Zakaryā, Abū-, *Hafṣids*, 50
 Zāman Shāh, *Afghān*, 334; 331

INDEX TO RULERS

361

ZANDS (SHĀHS OF PERSIA), 260; 258
Zangi, Salgharid, 173
Zangi, Zangids, 163
ZANGIDS, Atābegs, 162-4; 74-5,
 160, 165
Zāwi, Zayrid, 25
Zaydān, Hasanī Sharīf,
Zaydites, 102, 127
Zayn-al-'Abidin, Muẓaffarid, 250
Zayn-al-din 'Ali Küchuk, Beg-
 ligīnid, 165

Zayn-al-din Yūsuf, Begtiginid, 165
ZAYRIDIS (Granada), 25
ZAYRIDIS (Tunis), 39, 40, 41, 43
Ziyād, Ziyādid, 91
Ziyādat-Allāh, Aghlabids, 37
ZIYĀDIDS, 89, 90, 91
Ziyān, Abū-, Marinid, 57
Ziyān, Abū-, Ziyānid, 51
ZIYĀNIDS, 51; 46, 57
ZIYĀRIDIS, 136, 137
ZURAY'IDS, 97

THE END

BY STANLEY LANE-POOLE

- The Life of Edward William Lane. 8vo, pp. 138. Williams and Norgate. 1877.
- The People of Turkey. By a Consul's Daughter. Edited. Two vols. 8vo, pp. xxxi, 281; x, 352. Murray. 1878.
- Lane's Selections from the Kuran. Edited with Introduction. 8vo. Frontispiece. pp. cxii, 173, 2. Trübner's Oriental Series. 1879.
- Egypt. Illustrated. Fcp. 8vo, pp. xii, 200. Sampson Low. 1881.
- The Speeches and Table-Talk of the Prophet Mohammad. 18mo, pp. lxiii, 196. Macmillan's Golden Treasury Series. 1882; reissue, 1893.
- Le Koran, sa Poesie et ses Lois. 24mo, pp. vi, 112. Leroux. 1882.
- Studies in a Mosque. 1883. *Second Edition.* 8vo, pp. viii, 326. Remington. 1893.
- Arabian Society in the Middle Ages. Edited. 8vo, pp. xvi, 283. Chatto. 1883.
- Picturesque Palestine, Sinai, and Egypt. Vol. IV.—Egypt. 4to, pp. 121-234. Illustrated. Virtue. 1883.
- Social Life in Egypt: a Description of the Country and its People. (Supplement to Picturesque Palestine.) 4to. Illustrated. pp. vi, 138. Virtue. 1883.
- Selections from the Prose Writings of Jonathan Swift. Portrait. Preface, and Notes. 8vo, pp. xxx, 284. Paul and Trench's Parchment Library. 1884.
- Notes for a Bibliography of Swift. 8vo, pp. 36. Elliot Stock. 1884.
- Letters and Journals of Jonathan Swift. With Commentary and Notes. 8vo, pp. xv, 292. Paul and Trench's Parchment Library. 1885.
- The Life of General F. R. Chesney, R.A. By his Wife and Daughter. Edited, with Preface. Portrait. 8vo, pp. xxiii, 279. Allen. 1885; reissue, 1893.
- The Art of the Saracens in Egypt. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xviii, 264. Published for the Committee of Council on Education by Chapman and Hall. 1886.
- The Moors in Spain. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xx, 285. Unwin. 1887.
- Turkey. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xix, 373. Unwin. 1888.
- The Life of the Rt. Hon. Stratford Canning, Viscount Stratford de Redcliffe, K.G. From his Memoirs and Papers. Three Portraits. Library Edition. 2 vols. 8vo, pp. xxix, 519; xviii, 475. Longmans. 1888.
- Popular Edition. pp. xx, 377. Longmans. 1890.
- Thirty Years of Colonial Government. From Papers of the Rt. Hon. Sir G. F. BOWEN, G.C.M.G. Portrait. 2 vols. pp. viii, 460; viii, 467. Longmans. 1889.
- The Barbary Corsairs. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. xviii, 316. Unwin. 1890.
- Sir Richard Church, C.B., G.C.H. Commander-in-Chief of the Greeks in the War of Independence. With two Plans. 8vo, pp. iv, 73. Longmans. 1890.
- Stories from the Arabian Nights. 16mo. 3 vols. pp. vii, 338, 331, 346. Six illustrations. Putnam. 1891.
- The History of the Moghul Emperors illustrated by their Coins. pp. clxxvii. Constable. 1892.

BY STANLEY LANE-POOLE

- Cairo: Sketches of its History, Monuments, and Social Life. Numerous Illustrations. 8vo, pp. xiv, 320. Virtue. 1892.
- Aurangzib. Rulers of India Series. 8vo, pp. 222. Clarendon Press. 1893.
- The Mohammadan Dynasties: Chronological and Genealogical Tables. 8vo, pp. xxviii, 361. Constable. 1893.
- The Life of Sir Harry Parkes, K.C.B., late H.M. Minister in Japan and China. 2 vols. 8vo. Macmillan. In the Press.
- The Life of Saladin. Putnam. In preparation.
- Lane's Arabic-English Lexicon. Vols. 6-8. Imp. 4to, pp. xxxix, 2221-3064. Edited. Williams and Norgate. 1877-1893.

NUMISMATIC WORKS

- Catalogue of the Guthrie Collection of Oriental Coins. pp. viii, 38. Five Autotype Plates. Austin. 1874.
- International Numismata Orientalia. Part II.—Coins of the Turkumans. 4to, pp. xii, 44. Six Plates. Trübner. 1873.
- Essays in Oriental Numismatics. First, Second, and Third Series. Plates. 8vo. 3 vols. 1874, 1877, 1892.
- Catalogue of Oriental Coins in the British Museum. Printed by order of the Trustees. 8vo. 10 vols. (Ouvrage couronné par l'Institut de France, 1881.)
- Vol. I. THE KHALIFS. pp. xx, 263. Eight Autotype Plates. 1875.
II. MOHAMMADAN DYNASTIES. pp. xii, 279. Eight Autotype Plates. 1876.
III. THE TURKUMANS. pp. xxvi, 305. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1877.
IV. EGYPT. pp. xxx, 279. Eight Autotype Plates. 1879.
V. The MOORS and ARABIA. pp. lii, 175. Seven Autotype Plates. 1880.
VI. The MONGOLS. pp. lxxv, 300. Nine Autotype Plates. 1881.
VII. BUKHARA. pp. xlviii, 131. Five Autotype Plates. 1882.
VIII. The TURKS. pp. li, 431. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1883.
IX., X. ADDITIONS: 1875—1889. 2 vols. pp. 420, 460. Twenty Autotype Plates, and General Index. 1889, 1890.
- Catalogue of Indian Coins in the British Museum. Printed by order of the Trustees. 8vo. 3 vols.
- Vol. I. SULTANS of DEHLI. pp. xiv, 199. Nine Autotype Plates. 1884.
II. MOHAMMADAN STATES. pp. lxxx, 239. Twelve Autotype Plates. 1885.
III. MOGHUL EMPERORS. pp. cliii, 401. Thirty-three Autotype Plates. 1892.
- Catalogue of Arabic Glass Weights in the British Museum. 8vo, pp. xxxv, 127. Nine Autotype Plates. Printed by order of the Trustees. 1891.
- Coins and Medals: their Place in History and Art. By the Authors of the British Museum Official Catalogues. Edited. Illustrated. 8vo, pp. x, 286. Elliot Stock, 1885. Second Edition. 1892.
- Catalogue of the Mohammadan Coins in the Bodleian Library, Oxford. pp. xvi, 55. Four Plates. Clarendon Press. 1888.